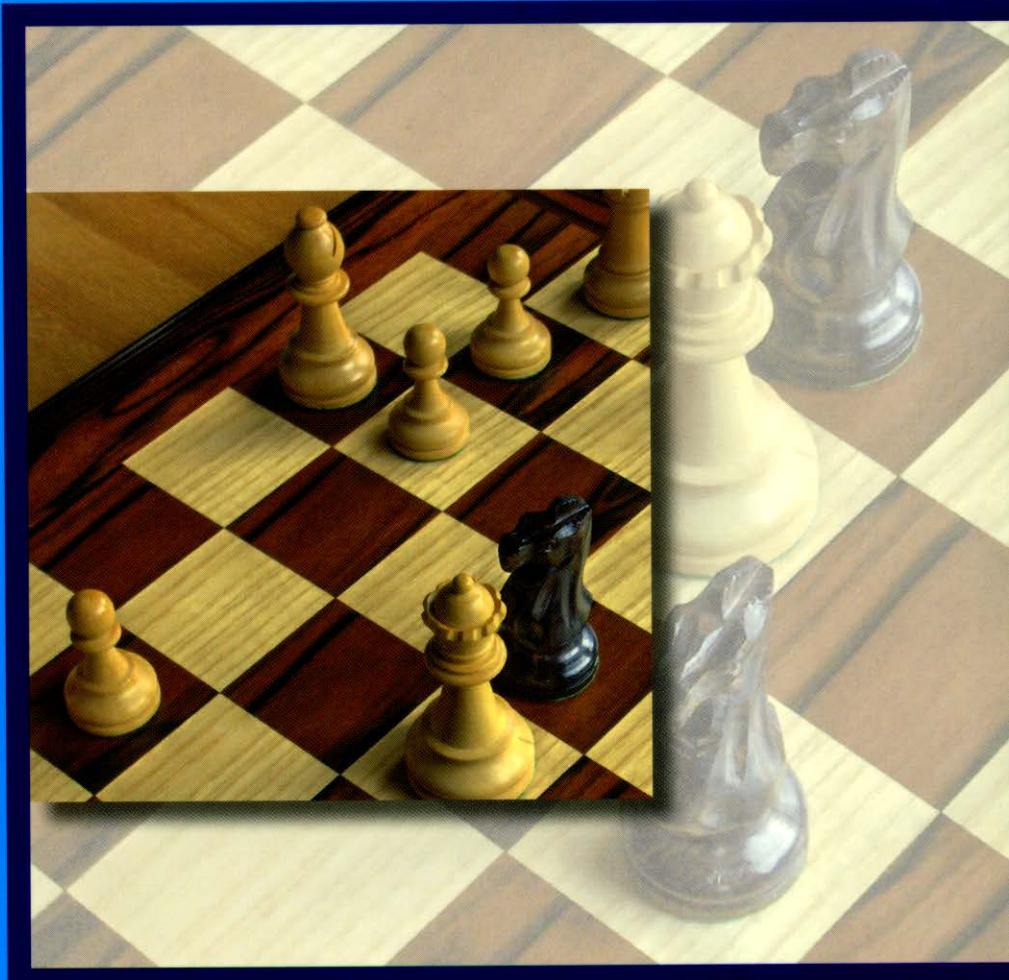


ARTUR YUSUPOV



**BOOST YOUR CHESS
BEYOND THE BASICS**

2

QUALITY CHESS

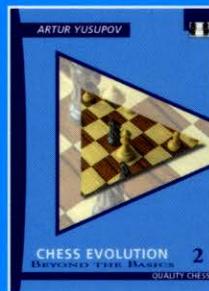
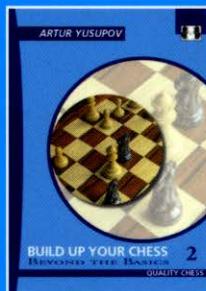
ARTUR YUSUPOV



Artur Yusupov was ranked No. 3 in the world from 1986 to 1992, just behind the legendary Karpov and Kasparov. He has won everything there is to win in chess except for the World Championship. In recent years he has mainly worked as a chess trainer with players ranging from current World Champion Anand to local amateurs in Germany, where he resides.

BOOST YOUR CHESS BEYOND THE BASICS

Boost Your Chess 2 continues Yusupov's Beyond the Basics series. The Fundamentals series shows players the basic ideas they should know, then the Beyond the Basics series sets off on the road to mastery. Yusupov guides the reader towards a higher level of chess understanding using carefully selected positions and advice. This new understanding is then tested by a series of puzzles.



€ 23.99

\$ 29.95

ISBN 978-1-906552-43-5



5 2 9 9 5

9 781906 552435



QUALITY CHESS

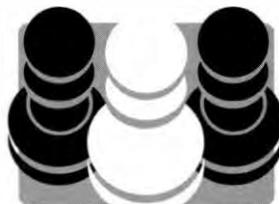
www.qualitychess.co.uk

Boost Your Chess 2

Beyond the Basics

By

Artur Yusupov



Quality Chess
www.qualitychess.co.uk

First English edition 2010 by Quality Chess UK Ltd
Translated from the German edition *igersprung auf DWZ 1800 II*

Copyright © 2010 Artur Yusupov

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, electrosraric, magnetic rape, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission of the publisher.

ISBN 978-1-906552-43-5

All sales or enquiries should be directed to Quality Chess UK Ltd,
20 Balvie Road, Milngavie, Glasgow G62 7TA, United Kingdom

Phone: +44 141 227 6771

e-mail: info@qualitychess.co.uk

website: www.qualitychess.co.uk

Distributed in US and Canada by SCB Distributors, Gardena, California
www.scbdistributors.com

Distributed in Rest of the World by Quality Chess UK Ltd through
Sunrise Handicrafts, Smyczkowa 4/98, 20-844 Lublin, Poland

Translated by Ian Adams

Edited and typeset by Colin McNab

Additional editing: Jacob Aagaard and John Shaw

Cover Photo: Nadja Jussupow

Cover design and generic typeset: Augusto Caruso of Caissa Italia

Printed in Estonia by Tallinna Raamatutükkikoja LLC

CONTENTS

Key to symbols used	4
Preface	5
Introduction	6
1 Attacking the king	8
2 The open file	18
3 'Minor' tactics	32
4 Opening repertoire for White – the French Defence	42
5 Simple rook endings	54
6 Fighting against the pawn centre	64
7 Trapping pieces	74
8 Calculating short variations	82
9 Weak points	92
10 Line blocking	102
11 Opening repertoire for Black against 1.d4	110
12 Simple rook endings 2	122
13 Blocking combinations	134
14 The bishop pair	142
15 Typical mistakes in calculating variations	156
16 Removing the defence	166
17 Good and bad bishops	176
18 Closed openings	190
19 Line clearing	202
20 Endgame technique	212
21 Blockade	224
22 Dragging the king out	236
23 Reti/English Opening	246
24 Typical mistakes in the endgame	258
Final test	268
Index of composers	277
Index of games	278

Key to symbols used

△	White to move
▼	Black to move
±	White is slightly better
≠	Black is slightly better
±	White is better
+	Black is better
+−	White has a decisive advantage
−+	Black has a decisive advantage
=	equality
≈	with compensation
⇄	with counterplay
?	unclear
○	zugzwang
□	better is
Δ	intending
?	a weak move
??	a blunder
!	a good move
!!	an excellent move
!?	a move worth considering
?!	a move of doubtful value
#	mate

Preface

It was a pleasure to have Artur Yusupov working as my second, both personally and professionally. It is therefore an honour for me to write the preface to the new manual Boost Your Chess.

This new book was created by expanding and improving the original online lessons from the Chess Tigers University. As an honorary member of the Chess Tigers, it has given me great pleasure to see this logical follow-up take concrete form and meet the twin challenges of being both a valuable textbook and a bedside book.

It was in 1994 that I met Artur Yusupov in the semi-finals of the Candidates' cycle in Wijk aan Zee. I managed to come out ahead by 4.5–2.5, but I recognized that Artur harboured great potential, both in his chess knowledge and extensive match experience.

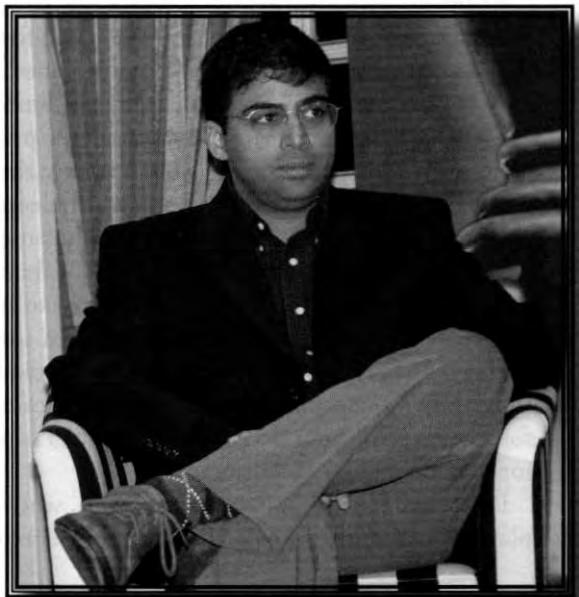
Artur's systematic and professional approach to analysing games was the decisive factor in having him as my second in the World Championship Finals in New York 1995 and Lausanne 1998. His mastery of the methods of the Russian chess school was very helpful in the preparation for the matches, as well as during the matches themselves. It was his idea that I should play the Trompovsky in the last game in Lausanne. I was 3–2 down, but was able to level the match at 3–3 and thus force a play-off.

I am still very grateful for everything that Artur did for me.

Artur's vast experience as a trainer convinced him that there is a considerable need for better tuition for amateurs. Matching the level to the needs of the student is perhaps not too difficult, but the masterstroke is structuring the information in such a way that makes it immediately useful for amateurs. I am naturally enthusiastic about the rich variety of material in this series, which can help beginners become top amateurs.

I wish Artur Yusupov all the best with the publication of the first book in the series Boost Your Chess. Making this work available in English means that even more people who are keen to learn can enjoy it to the full.

World Champion, Viswanathan Anand



Introduction

During my many years of work as a chess trainer, I have noticed that there are only a few books which are really suitable for most amateur players. Some good books treat individual aspects of the game (middlegame or endgame, tactics or positional play) without paying any real heed to the reader's playing level. This brought about the idea of working out a teaching programme aimed specifically at a certain playing strength. Such teaching programmes, in a brief form and intended as systematic help for trainers, are common only in Russia, where they are very popular. One very well known and much valued example is a publication by Golenischev, which inspired some aspects of my methodology.

In 2003 I began a 3-year training programme in my chess academy. Three groups were set up according to playing strength: under Elo 1500, under Elo 1800 and under Elo 2100. Each annual stage consisted of 24 teaching modules and 24 tests, plus a final test at the end of the course.

This programme was later taken over, in a different form, by the Chess Tigers University and is still being used there.

The overwhelmingly positive comments of my students encouraged me to rework this programme in the form of a series of books. In doing so, I was able to make use of many evaluations, corrections and suggestions from my students. While I was redrafting, especially the explanations in the solutions, that feedback from my students was very valuable.

This book is the first volume in a series of manuals designed for players who are building the foundations of their chess knowledge. The reader will receive the necessary basic knowledge in six areas of the game – tactics, positional play, strategy, the calculation of variations, the opening and the endgame.

The reader will benefit from the methodical build-up in this book, even if some of the material is familiar, as it will close any possible gaps in his chess knowledge and thus construct solid foundations for future success. To make the book entertaining and varied, I have mixed up these different areas, but you can always see from the header to which area any particular chapter belongs.

At this point I must emphasize that just working with this book does not guarantee a rise in your rating. It simply gives you a solid basis for a leap forward in chess ability. You should also play in tournaments, analyse your own games, play through well-annotated games of stronger players and read books on chess (I have included some suggestions at the end of this book).

I have also been concerned with another problem area since I moved to Germany: the role of trainers in chess education. In Germany there are unfortunately too few qualified trainers. There is also a widespread opinion that a talented chess player does not need a trainer. I do not share that opinion. I believe that many talented chess players could develop much further, if they had support at the correct time and if they had not left gaps in their learning.

Chess is a complicated sport, which has to be studied for many years. It is hard to imagine any other sport without coaches. (Is there a single athletics club or football club that does not have a trainer?) This manual is intended for the many club players who unfortunately receive no support in attempting to master our complicated sport. In this way it is intended as a substitute for a trainer for those that have none (and a support for trainers), but not an equal replacement for a trainer.

I further believe that many chess lovers, who show great commitment to working with young players in chess clubs, will gain with this series of books (as well as with the programme of the

Chess Tigers University) important methodological support and high quality training material for their chess lessons. The students will certainly profit from the supplementary explanations given by trainers and from lively discussions about the themes in the books.

How to work with this book

First read through the lessons. **You absolutely must play through all the examples and all the variations on a chessboard.**

First think about every diagram position (for at least 5 minutes) and try to find the solutions on your own. On average, you will need 1 to 2 hours per lesson. However, there is no time limit; some students may need more time for specific lessons.

It is important to have a good understanding of the subject.

The second part of the lesson is a test with 12 positions. The stars near the number of each exercise indicate the level of difficulty and, at the same time, the maximum number of points which you can earn for the correct solution with all necessary variations ($\star = 1$ point). Try to solve the positions without moving the pieces! If you cannot solve the position straight away, you must try for a second time for approximately 10 minutes. This time you may move the pieces. You must look for new ideas.

On absolutely no account may you get help from a computer!

Normally you will also need 1 to 2 hours for each test. Try to solve all the exercises. Consider each position as though it were appearing in one of your own games and look for the best possible continuation. You do not always have to mate or win quickly. It is sometimes enough to suggest a good move. Especially in the lessons on the opening, it is more important for you to reflect on the position, take a decision and then carefully play through the solutions. This will help you better understand the ideas of the opening. Mistakes are part of the learning process!

It is very important to write down all the necessary variations. If you do this you will be able to compare your solution with the one given in the book and you can also see how well you have understood the particular subject. If your score is too low, we recommend that you work through the chapter again. **We also recommend that you play through the solutions, including all the variations, on a chessboard.**

You will find an explanation of the standard chess symbols used in this book on page 4.

At this point I should like to express my gratitude to a large number of people who have supported my work in various ways. There is firstly my wife Nadja for the design of the German edition book and her help in working through the solutions, my daughter Katja for many corrections to my German, my chess trainer Mark Dvoretsky, from whose training methods I have learned so much, the Chess Tigers and Hans-Walter Schmitt for their constructive and productive cooperation, Mike Rosa for correcting some mistakes, Reinhold from Schwerin for his proofreading, and finally to Semen Oxman and Oleg Aizman, who gave valuable advice concerning the design of the book.

I would also like to thank Augusto Caruso for his elaboration of Nadja's design for the English edition and Ian Adams for translating the book.

GM Artur Yusupov

Contents

- ✓ Significance of the attack on the king
- ✓ Preconditions for a successful attack on the king
- ✓ Removing a defender
- ✓ Exploiting the open king position
- ✓ Sacrifices
- ✓ Forced moves

Attacking the king

The attack on the king has the highest priority of all in chess. For a successful attack on the king, you can sacrifice almost the whole army. But attacks do not always work. Before Steinitz, many players believed that it was only the player's tactical abilities that had any part to play. Steinitz established that a successful attack can only be mounted if based on positional advantages – such as the initiative, better development, control over important central squares, etc.

But whoever has the chance to attack must do so in the most energetic manner!

In the following examples, look for the most active continuation! **Bring your pieces closer to the opposing king, open up the position for your rooks and bishops, break up your opponent's castled position, create specific threats!**

But you must also remain realistic: sometimes our attack on the king is 'only enough to win material'!

W.Steinitz – C.von Bardeleben

Hastings 1895

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗c4 ♗c5 4.c3 ♘f6 5.d4 exd4 6.cxd4 ♘b4† 7.♘c3?!

An old gambit line. 7.♘d2 is the safer way.

7...d5?!

A better option is 7...♘xe4 8.0–0 ♘xc3, as in the game Steinitz – Schlechter in the same tournament.

8.exd5 ♘xd5 9.0–0 ♘e6

Diagram 1-1



It is risky for Black to take the pawn as White's lead in development would be too great. After 9...♘xc3 10.bxc3 ♘xc3 comes 11.♗xf7† ♘f8 12.♗b3! ♘xa1 13.♗a3† ♘e7 14.♗el+–; while if 9...♘xc3 10.bxc3 ♘xc3, then 11.♗b3 gives White a strong attack.

10.♗g5!

White brings his bishop into the game with tempo, thus increasing his lead in development.

10...♘e7?!

For his part, Black loses a tempo. However, it is very difficult to correctly evaluate the attack which ensues.

Attacking the king

Kasparov gives the better defence: 10... $\mathbb{W}d7$

11. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 12. $\mathbb{E}e1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8\pm$

11. $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$

12. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ is not so good, because after 12... $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 13. $\mathbb{E}el$ 0–0 14. $\mathbb{E}xe7?$ Black has the intermediate move 14... $\mathbb{Q}xf3!=$.

12... $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$

Diagram 1-2

14. $\mathbb{E}el$

A typical idea to prevent the opponent castling.

14... $f6$ 15. $\mathbb{W}e2$

Later Zaitsev suggested another, even better, way to pursue the attack with 15. $\mathbb{W}a4\#!$ and now:

- a) Perhaps Black should surrender a pawn: 15... $\mathbb{W}d7$ 16. $\mathbb{W}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ (16... $c6?$ 17. $\mathbb{E}xe7\#$) 17. $\mathbb{W}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5\pm$
- b) 15... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e5\#!$ $fxe5$ 17. $\mathbb{E}xe5$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 18. $\mathbb{W}c4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 19. $\mathbb{E}ae1$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ (19... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 20. $\mathbb{E}f5\#$) 20. $\mathbb{E}d5$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 21. $\mathbb{W}b4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 22. $\mathbb{E}c5$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 23. $\mathbb{W}c4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 24. $\mathbb{E}xc7\#$ (Geller)

15... $\mathbb{W}d7$

15... $\mathbb{W}d6?$ would be bad: 16. $\mathbb{W}b5\#$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 17. $\mathbb{W}b4$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 18. $\mathbb{W}xb7\#$

16. $\mathbb{E}ac1$

Steinitz brings his final reserves into the game; it can be very useful to attack with all available forces!

16. $\mathbb{E}ad1?$ (Zaitsev) would also be very strong.

16... $c6$

The immediate 16... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ is correct, in order to bring the knight to d5 more rapidly, e.g. 17. $\mathbb{W}c4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ is fine for Black. The exchange sacrifice 17... $\mathbb{W}xe7\#?$ is not dangerous: 17... $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 18. $\mathbb{E}xe7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 19. $\mathbb{E}xc7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 20. $\mathbb{E}xg7$ $\mathbb{E}ac8$ 21. $g3$ $\mathbb{E}c7!$ (Kasparov)

Steinitz developed the principle: '**The player with the advantage must attack!**' White has brought all his pieces into the game. If he now hesitates, his opponent will also bring his reserves into play and the initiative will disappear. So Steinitz sacrifices a pawn, opens files and puts his opponent under pressure.

Diagram 1-3

17. $d5!!$ $cxd5$

17... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ is objectively better: 18. $dxc6$ $bxcc6\pm$ (Kasparov)

18. $\mathbb{Q}d4$

This superb square is only a staging-post for the knight, who is aiming to get even closer to the

Diagram 1-2

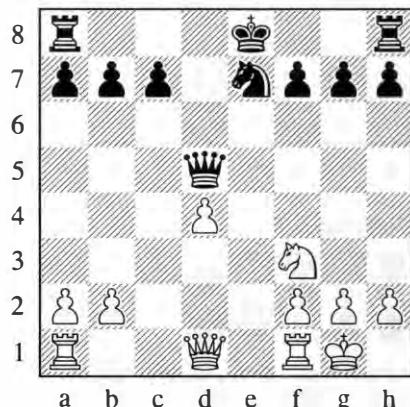


Diagram 1-3

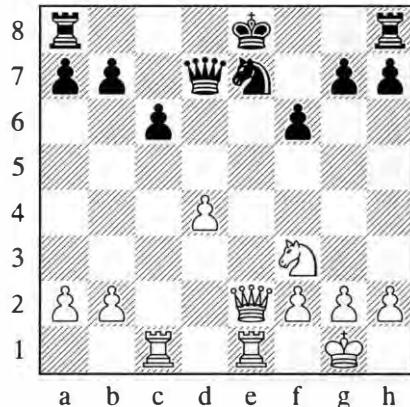
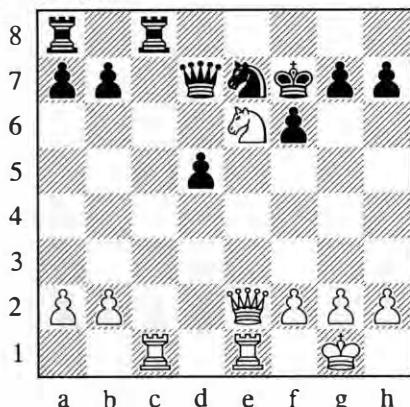
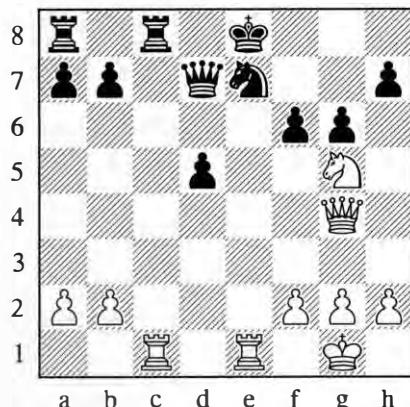
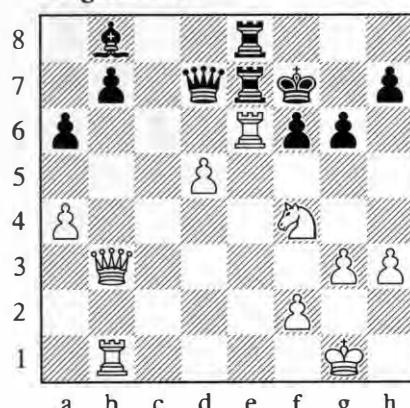


Diagram 1-4**Diagram 1-5****Diagram 1-6**

opposing king!

18...♝f7 19.♛e6

The threat is now 20.♜c7.

19...♝hc8

19...♝ac8 is likewise met by 20.♝g4.

Nor is 19...♝c6 any better; White wins with 20.♝c5 ♜c8 21.♝h5† (Kasparov).

Diagram 1-4

20.♝g4!

The attacking side cannot afford to waste time! The threat is mate in two moves.

20...g6 21.♛g5† ♜e8

Diagram 1-5

Steinitz now ends the game with a fantastic combination.

22.♜xe7† ♜f8!

The most stubborn reply. If 22...♝xe7, then 23.♜xc8† ♜xc8 24.♝xc8† is a simple win.

After 22...♝xe7 then 23.♜e1† wins. (23.♝b4† is also good, but you can only win a game once! The important thing is to calculate your winning line carefully.) 23...♝d6 24.♝b4† ♜c5 (24...♝c6 25.♝c1#; 24...♝c7 25.♛e6† ♜b8 26.♝f4†+ – Steinitz) 25.♜e6† ♜xe6 26.♜xe6+–

23.♜f7†!

But not 23.♝xd7?? ♜xc1†+–.

23...♝g8!

23...♝x7 24.♜xc8† ♜xc8 25.♝xc8† ♜e8 26.♛xh7† is hopeless.

24.♝g7†! ♜h8!

Or 24...♝f8 25.♛xh7† ♜xg7 26.♝xd7†+–.

25.♛xh7†!

After this move von Bardeleben simply left the tournament hall! Steinitz demonstrated the following forced variation for the benefit of the spectators: 25...♝g8 26.♝g7†! ♜h8 27.♝h4† ♜xg7 28.♝h7† ♜f8 29.♝h8† ♜e7 30.♝g7† ♜e8 31.♝g8† ♜e7 32.♝f7† ♜d8 33.♝f8† ♜e8 34.♝f7† ♜d7 35.♝d6#

Diagram 1-6

J.Capablanca – N.Zubarev

Moscow 1925

Capablanca finds an elegant and forcing way to win.

1.♜xe7† ♜xe7

Otherwise White wins with the discovered check d5-d6.

2. $\mathbb{W}xb7 \mathbb{Q}xf4$ 3. $\mathbb{E}e1\ddagger$

An important intermediate check, which leads to the following forced line.

3... $\mathbb{Q}e5$

3... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ loses to 4. $\mathbb{W}b6\ddagger$, as does 3... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ to 4. $\mathbb{W}a8\ddagger$.

4. $d6\ddagger! \mathbb{Q}e6$

4... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ is met by 5. $\mathbb{W}b6\ddagger+-$.

5. $\mathbb{W}b3\ddagger \mathbb{Q}f5$

5... $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ loses the queen after 6. $\mathbb{E}d1\ddagger$.

6. $\mathbb{W}d3\ddagger \mathbb{Q}g5$ 7. $\mathbb{W}e3\ddagger \mathbb{Q}f5$

If 7... $\mathbb{Q}h5$, then 8. $g4\ddagger+-$.

8. $\mathbb{W}e4\ddagger \mathbb{Q}e6$

8... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 9. $\mathbb{W}h4\ddagger \mathbb{Q}f5$ 10. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$

9. $\mathbb{W}c4\ddagger \mathbb{Q}xd6$

Forced, since 9... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ runs into 10. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$.

10. $\mathbb{E}d1\ddagger \mathbb{Q}e7$ 11. $\mathbb{W}xd7\ddagger \mathbb{Q}xd7$ 12. $\mathbb{W}xa6$

The attack has secured White a decisive material advantage.

1-0

Diagram 1-7

J.Capablanca – H.Steiner

Los Angeles 1933

1. $f4!$

The black king is already rather exposed. White opens further lines for the attack.

1... $\mathbb{E}g8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h5\ddagger \mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $fxe5$ $dxe5$

Diagram 1-8

4. $\mathbb{E}xf6!$

A very natural continuation of the attack. White loses no time getting on with the decisive onslaught.

4... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 5. $\mathbb{E}f1\ddagger \mathbb{Q}f5$

5... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{E}f7\ddagger \mathbb{Q}h8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$

6. $\mathbb{E}xf5!$

Here Capablanca had certainly calculated all the way to the end.

6... $exf5$ 7. $\mathbb{E}xf5\ddagger \mathbb{Q}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}f7\ddagger \mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{E}f6\ddagger \mathbb{Q}c5$

10. $\mathbb{W}xb7!$

A difficult move, but one which contains several mating threats.

10... $\mathbb{W}b6$

Diagram 1-7

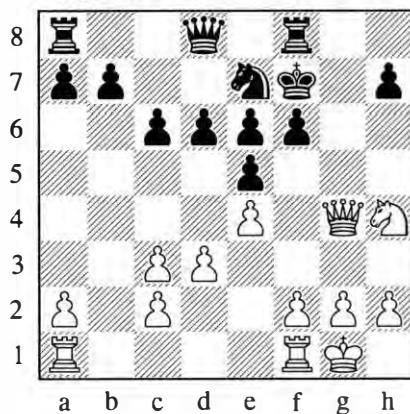


Diagram 1-8

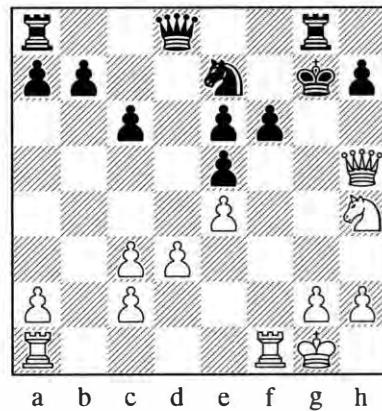
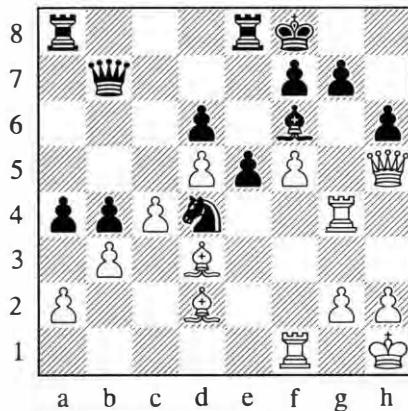


Diagram 1-9



Or 10... $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 11. $\mathbb{W}b4\#$.

11. $\mathbb{B}xc6\!\dagger!$ $\mathbb{W}xc6$

11... $\mathbb{Q}b5\!\dagger$ 12. $\mathbb{B}xb6\!\dagger$ $axb6$ 13. $\mathbb{W}xh7\!+-$ would lead to a prospectless ending.

12. $\mathbb{W}b4\#$

Diagram 1-9

E.Vasiukov – M.Taimanov

USSR Ch, Kharkov 1967

The black king wants to escape to the centre. To prevent that happening, White must act immediately.

1. $\mathbb{B}xg7\!\dagger$

A correct sacrifice.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$

As the following variations show, other moves are no better:

a) 1... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 2.f6 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 3. $\mathbb{B}xf6$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xh6\!\dagger$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 5. $\mathbb{B}xd6$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{W}h8\!\dagger$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}xe5\!+-$

b) 1... $axb3$ 2. $\mathbb{B}xh6$ ($\Delta\mathbb{B}xf7\!\dagger$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 3.f6+–

c) 1... $\mathbb{B}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{B}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xh6$ $axb3$ 4.axb3 $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 5. $\mathbb{B}g8\!\dagger$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{B}xa8$ $\mathbb{W}xa8$ 7. $\mathbb{B}xb4\!+-$

White was faced with an interesting problem at this point in the game. Which is more important here, material ($\mathbb{W}xh6\!\dagger$ and then $\mathbb{W}xf6$) or the attack ($\mathbb{Q}xh6\!\dagger$)?

2. $\mathbb{W}xh6\!\dagger$?

White decides on material and wins the bishop. However, in doing so he loses a tempo for the attack. The correct choice is 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh6\!\dagger$! $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}g4\!\dagger$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5\!\dagger$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ (4... $\mathbb{W}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}h4\!+-$) 5.f6! $\mathbb{Q}h6$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 6. $\mathbb{B}xf6\!+-$) 6. $\mathbb{W}h5\!+-$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xf6$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}h6$ f6 5. $\mathbb{B}xb4$ $axb3$

The position is now anything but clear, since the black rooks can become active via the open queenside. White takes an unfortunate decision and leaves the dangerous black pawn on the board.

6.a3?! $\mathbb{B}ac8$ 7.h3?!

7. $\mathbb{B}e1\!?$

7... $\mathbb{W}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}h4$ e4!?

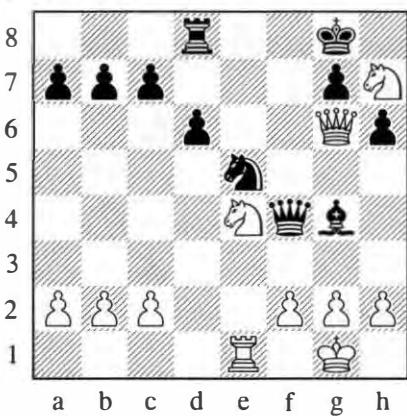
Now it is Black who wants to open lines. He takes the initiative and even goes on to win the game.

9. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$! 10. $\mathbb{B}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g3\!\dagger$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{B}e3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{B}ce8$ 14. $\mathbb{W}f4$

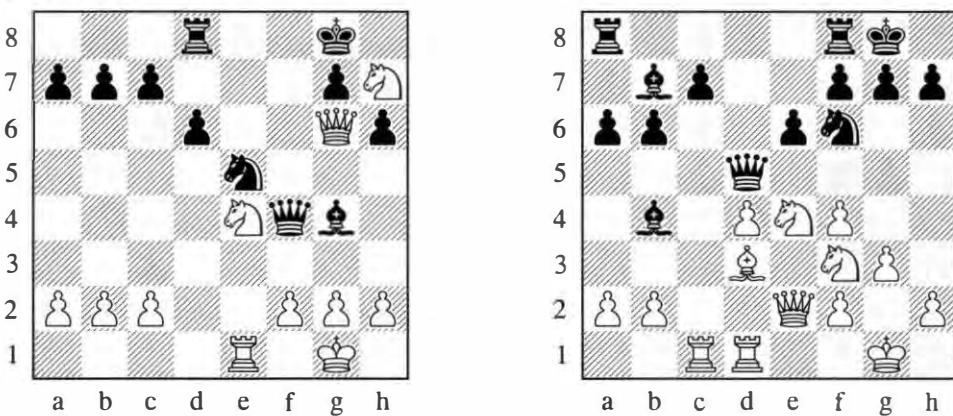
And White resigned.

Exercises

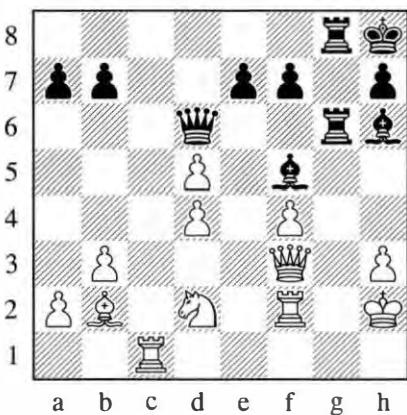
► Ex. 1-1 ◀ ★★ ▲



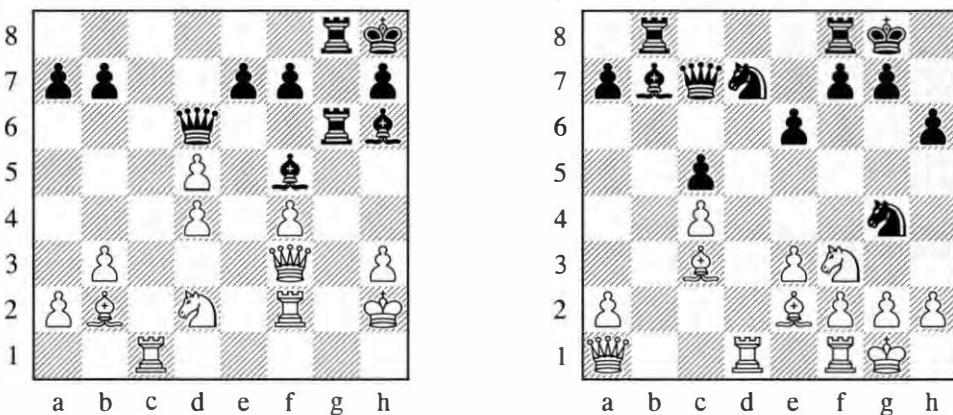
► Ex. 1-4 ◀ ★ ▲



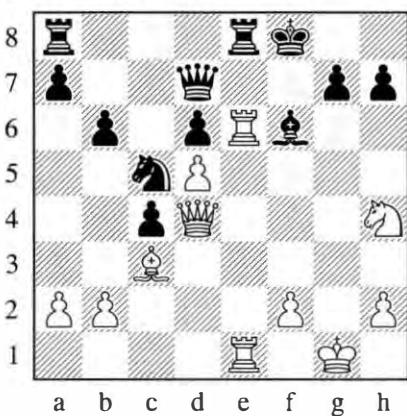
► Ex. 1-2 ◀ ★ ▼



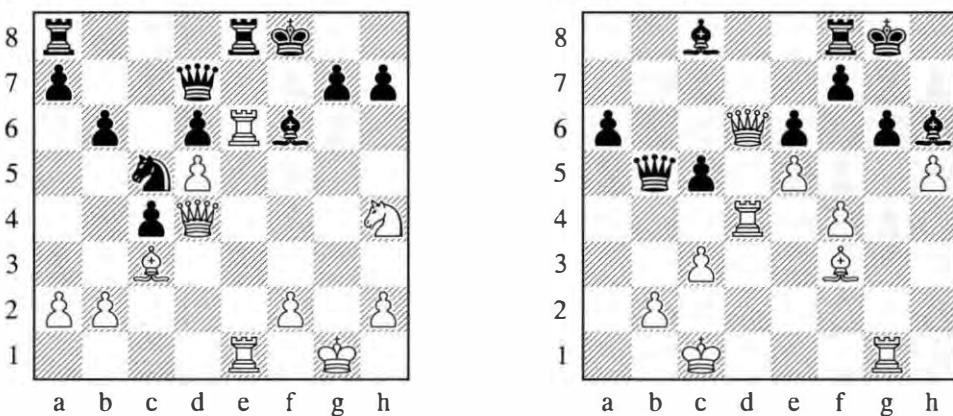
► Ex. 1-5 ◀ ★ ▲



► Ex. 1-3 ◀ ★★ ▲

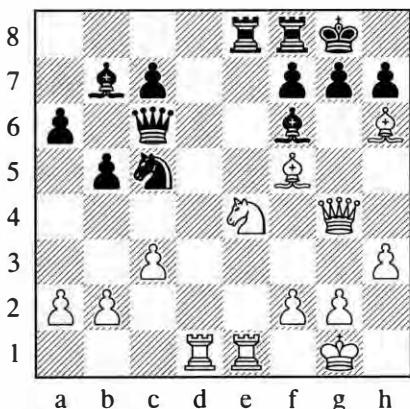


► Ex. 1-6 ◀ ★★ ▲

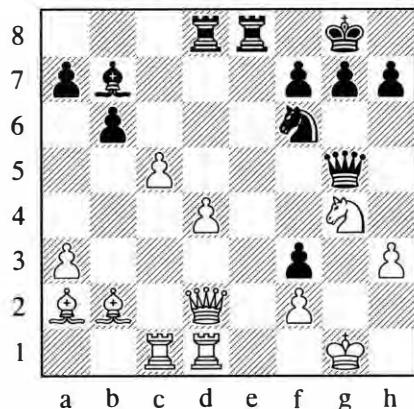


Exercises

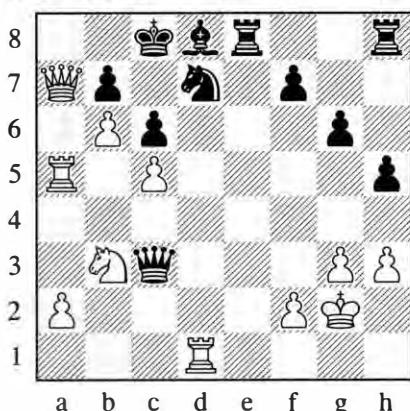
► Ex. 1-7 ◀ ★★



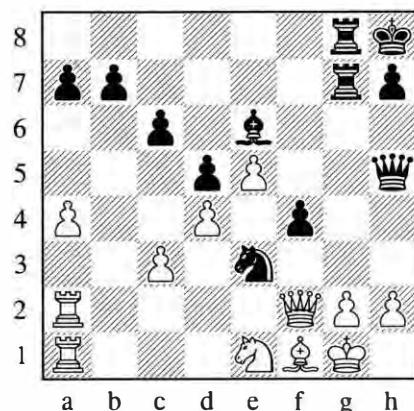
► Ex. 1-10 ◀ ★



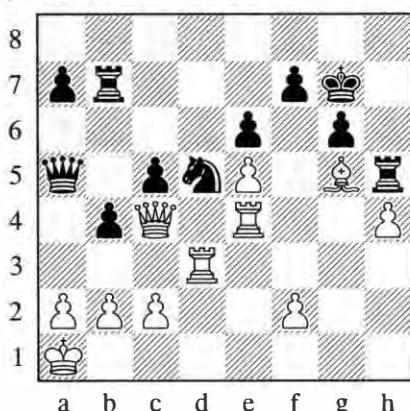
► Ex. 1-8 ◀ ★★



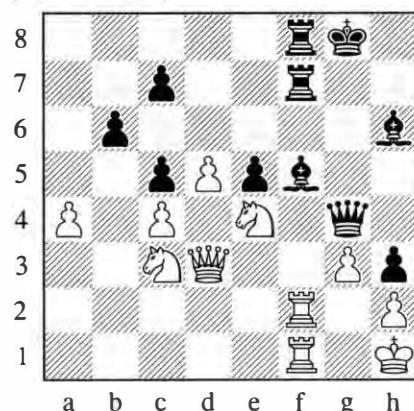
► Ex. 1-11 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 1-9 ◀ ★



► Ex. 1-12 ◀ ★★★



Solutions

Ex. 1-1

Based on the correspondence game

Morse – Bashein

1. ♜e6†! ♜h8

Of course 1...♝xf6 would also be hopeless.

2. ♜g5!

(1 point)

The threat is 3.♝h7#.

2...♝f5

Or 2...♜f5 3.♝e8† ♜xe8 4.♝f7† ♜xf7

5.♝xe8#.

3. ♜e8†!!

Decoying.

3...♝xe8 4.♝f7† ♜xf7 5.♝xe8#

(another 1 point for these variations)

Ex. 1-2

L.Rellstab – V.Petrovs

Kemerri 1937

1...♜xf4†! 2. ♜xf4 ♜g3!

(1 point)

2...♝h6 is just as good, since 3.♝c3 ♜g6! wins for Black.

White resigned, in view of 3.♝xd6 ♜xh3# or 3.♝xf5 ♜g2† 4.♝h1 ♜h2# or 3.♝h1 ♜xf4+.

Ex. 1-3

Tomas – Markwell

Corrcspondence game

1. ♜xf6†!

(1 point)

1...gxsf6 2. ♜xf6† ♜f7

2...♝g8 3. ♜h8†+-

3. ♜g6†!

Or 3. ♜h8† ♜g8† 4. ♜g6†!+-.

3...hxgf6 4. ♜h8† ♜g8 5. ♜h6†! ♜f7 6. ♜f4#

(another 1 point)

Ex. 1-4

J.Capablanca – A.Becker

Karlsbad 1929

1. ♜fg5!

(1 point)

White threatens ♜xf6† followed by ♜e4.

The immediate 1. ♜xf6†? only leads to a draw: 1...gxsf6 2. ♜xc7 ♜xf3 3. ♜xb7! ♜xb7 4. ♜g4† ♜h8 5. ♜h4 f5 6. ♜f6†=

1... ♜e4

No better are 1...♜xd4 2. ♜b1+-or 1...♜xe4

2. ♜xe4+-.

2. ♜xh7! f5 3. ♜hg5!

3. ♜xf8 also wins after 3...♜xf8 4. f3.

Black resigned, as 3...fxe4 is simply met by 4. ♜xe4+-.

Other moves also lose, e.g. 3...♜f6 4. ♜c4 ♜d8 5. ♜xe6†+- or 3...♜d7 4. ♜h5 ♜f6 5. ♜xf6† gxsf6 6. ♜g6† ♜h8 7. ♜xe6 ♜xe6 8. ♜xc7 ♜e7 9. ♜c4+-.

Ex. 1-5

J.Capablanca – E.Colle

Hastings 1930/1

1. ♜xd7!

(1 point)

1. ♜xg7?? would be bad, due to 1...♜xf3 2. g3 ♜xe2+-.

1... ♜xd7 2. ♜xg7 ♜c7

2...♜fc8 3. ♜e5 ♜xe5 4. ♜xe5 f5 5. ♜xh6†

3. ♜xf8 ♜xf8 4. g3±

Ex. 1-6

Kofman – S.Zhukhovitsky

Moscow 1936

1. hxg6!

Not the only way, but the quickest route to victory.

1...cxsd4 2. gxsf7† ♜h8

2...♝xf7 3. ♜h5#

2.. ♜h7 3. ♜e4† ♜h8 4. ♜xf8† ♜xf8 5. ♜g8#

Solutions

3. $\mathbb{W}xf8\#!$

(1 point)

3... $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 4. $\mathbb{B}g8\# \mathbb{Q}h7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4\# \mathbb{Q}h6$ 6. $\mathbb{B}h8\# \mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{B}h7\#$

(another 1 point)

Ex. 1-7

E.Vasiukov – R.Kholmov

Moscow 1964

1. $\mathbb{Q}xc5!$

(1 point)

1. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ (1 consolation point) is less precise, on account of 2... $\mathbb{Q}xe1\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ h6 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{W}xb7\pm$.

1... $\mathbb{W}xc5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$

Black resigned, in view of 2... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe1\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ h6 5. $\mathbb{Q}h7\#$.

(another 1 point for finding this idea)

Ex. 1-8

Mumelter – N.N.

Vienna 1896

1. $\mathbb{W}a8\#!$

(1 point)

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ also wins, but is more complicated: 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xb7\# \mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xc6\#$ (1 consolation point) 3... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. c6# $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d4\# \mathbb{Q}e4$ 7. f3# $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4\# \mathbb{Q}e4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a4\#$ –

1... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd8\# \mathbb{Q}xd8$

Or 2... $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xb8\# \mathbb{Q}d7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d6\# \mathbb{Q}c8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a8\#$.

3. $\mathbb{W}xb7\# \mathbb{Q}xb7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a7\# \mathbb{Q}c8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$

(another 1 point for the whole variation)

Ex. 1-9

A.Suetin – G.Kasparian

USSR Ch, Moscow 1952

The game saw 1... $\mathbb{Q}b6??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ and Black resigned, because 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ is coming next.

The correct continuation would have been:

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg5!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}b3$ c4 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xc4$ b3 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{W}e1\#$

(1 point)

Ex. 1-10

Variation from the game

S.Bromberger – S.Löffler

Bundesliga 2002

1... $\mathbb{Q}el\#!!$

By this deflection, Black gains the time needed for the capture on g4.

2. $\mathbb{W}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h1$

3. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\# \mathbb{Q}xf7\#$

3... $\mathbb{W}h4$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}f4\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}g3\#$

(1 point)

Ex. 1-11

G.Stahlberg – A.Alekhine

Prague Olympiad 1931

1... $\mathbb{Q}g4!$

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{W}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$

White resigned, on account of 3. $\mathbb{W}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ (or 3... $\mathbb{Q}xf1\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2\#$) 4. $\mathbb{W}xh2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1\#$.

(another 1 point for this variation)

Ex. 1-12

Trubnikov – Radchenko

Novosibirsk 1965

1... $\mathbb{Q}d2!$

(1 point)

The defending white pieces are overloaded. This deflecting sacrifice ruins the coordination of the opposing pieces.

Of course 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe4\#?$ would be bad: 2. $\mathbb{W}xe4$ $\mathbb{W}xe4\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$

If 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$, then 3... $\mathbb{Q}xf1\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ e4 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{W}xe4\#$.

Solutions

2. $\mathbb{B}xd2$ is simply met by 2... $\mathbb{Q}xe4\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{B}xf1\#$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}xe4\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$

Or 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{W}xe4\#$ (3... $\mathbb{B}xf2$ is also good:

4. $\mathbb{B}xf2$ $\mathbb{W}xe4\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}b1\#$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}g2\#$

5. $\mathbb{B}xg2$ $\mathbb{B}xf1\#$.

(1 point for this variation)

3... $\mathbb{W}xg3\#$ 4. $\mathbb{h}xg3$ $\mathbb{h}2\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ $\mathbb{B}h7\#$

(another 1 point for this variation)

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 20

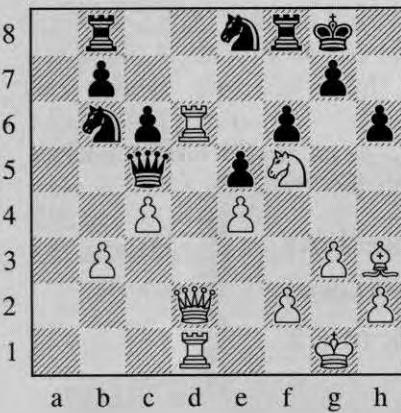
- **18** points and above ➤ **Excellent**
- **14** points and above ➤ **Good**
- **10** points ➤ **Pass mark**

If you scored less than 10 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ The significance of the open file
- ✓ Penetration to the 7th or 8th rank
- ✓ Typical ideas in the struggle for the open file

Diagram 2-1



The open file

The open file is an important positional factor. We have already underlined the significance of the open file in *Build Up Your Chess 2*, Chapter 13 – ‘Evaluating the position’; and also in *Build Up Your Chess 1*, Chapter 14 – ‘Open files’. In this lesson we shall extend our knowledge.

Major pieces require an open file in order to come into play. It is very important to occupy an open file or at least to control it. It is often the struggle for a single open file which determines the whole strategic course of a game.

Why is it so advantageous to control an open file?

The aim is to penetrate to the 7th or 8th rank with the major pieces! From there the rooks or the queen can attack from the side, either the opponent’s king or his defenceless pawns and other pieces.

If this is not possible – if, for example, all the squares are well protected by the defending side – then the control of the open file serves no useful purpose.

Diagram 2-1

M. Janata – S. Bojkovic

Vrnjacka Banja 1963

White has achieved control of the important central file and now exploits this opportunity to mount a quick attack.

1. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#!$

1.b4! $\mathbb{W}xc4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$ with the additional motif $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ was a nice alternative (M.Rosa).

1... $\mathbb{Q}f7$

1... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ would be no better, due to 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ and then $\mathbb{Q}g6$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}d7!!$

The penetration to the 7th rank decides the game on the spot.

2... $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xd7$

Black resigned, on account of 3... $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xe7\#$ (or 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#+-$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$.

The open file

In the struggle for the open file, you can make use of the following elements:

- 1) the simple doubling of the rooks;
- 2) the use of an outpost;
- 3) control over the penetration squares on the 7th or 8th rank;
- 4) a timely opening of the file – doubling behind a pawn before exchanging it;
- 5) the creation of a battery (queen behind the rooks);
- 6) exchanging the major pieces in order to neutralize your opponent's activity on the file.

In the examples which follow and in the test you should employ these elements in the struggle for the open file.

Diagram 2-2

J.Capablanca – K.Treybal

Karlsbad 1929

If White now opens the h-file, he does not obtain any immediate advantages on the kingside, since Black is pretty well prepared there. For that reason Capablanca opens a different file.

1.b5! axb5 2.h6†?!

An important intermediate check. The black pieces now have less room and become disorganized. Capablanca sees that he can gain control over the a-file. This advantage will play a decisive part in the game.

2...♝f8 3.axb5 ♜e7 4.b6!

White now has an important outpost on the 7th rank.

4...♛b8 5.♜a1 ♜c8

5...♛a8 is simply met by 6.♛c3.

6.♜b4 ♜hd8 7.♜a7

Capablanca places his pieces on optimal squares.

7...♝f8 8.♜h1 ♜e8 9.♜hal ♜g8 10.♜a4 ♜f8

11.♜a3

A typical rook-queen battery has been set up.

11...♜g8 12.♜g3 ♜d7 13.♜h4 ♜h8 14.♜a1 ♜g8

15.♜g3 ♜f8 16.♜g2 ♜e8

Diagram 2-3

Diagram 2-2

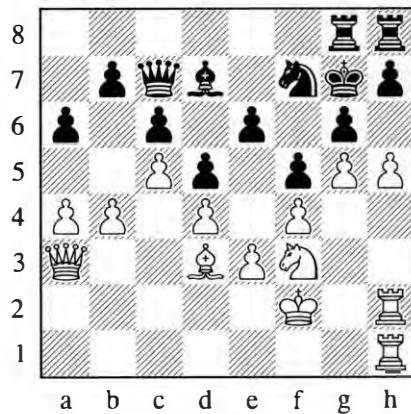


Diagram 2-3

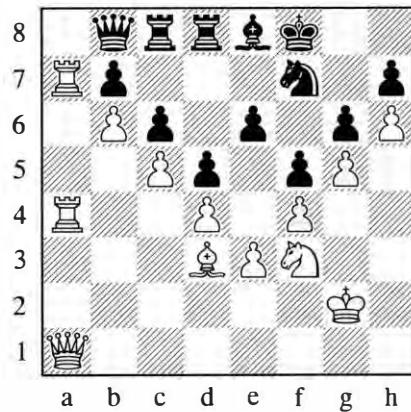


Diagram 2-4

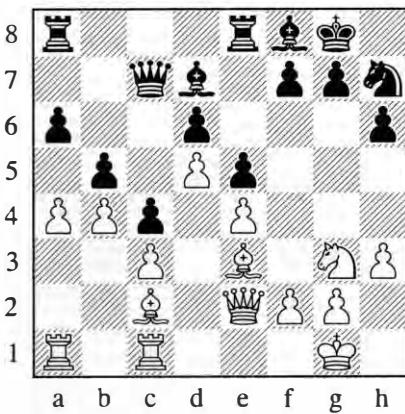
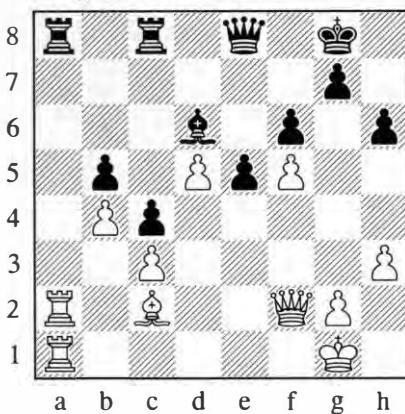


Diagram 2-5



The preparations have all been made. Capablanca now attacks the b7-pawn.

17.♕d2! ♜d7 18.♕b3 ♜e8

Or 18...♜e8 19.♕a5 ♜d7 20.♕xb7 ♜xb7 21.♕xb7 ♜xb7 22.♕a6 ♜b8 23.♕xc8 ♜xc8 24.♕a8 ♜b7 25.♕a7+–.

19.♕a5 ♕d8 20.♕a6! bxa6 21.♕xd7

The black pawn chain has been broken up. The position rapidly collapses.

21...♜e7 22.♕xd8†! ♜xd8 23.♕xc6

1–0

Diagram 2-4

Computer Deep Blue – G.Kasparov

New York match(2) 1997

1.♖a3!

White first doubles the rooks behind the a-pawn, so as to open the file at a favourable moment.

1...♝ec8 2.♜ca1 ♜d8 3.f4?

3.axb5 axb5 4.♕a7? is one of Karpov's favourite ideas. In this way White prevents the exchange of major pieces on the a-file. But the computer probably does not know the classic games!

3...♝f6 4.fxe5 dxe5 5.♗f1?

Very accurate play. 5.♗f2 is followed by 5...a5! 6.axb5 (6.♗b6 ♜e8! 7.♕xa5?? ♜xa5 8.bxa5 ♜c5+–) axb4 7.♕xa8 ♜xa8 8.♕xa8 ♜xa8 9.cxb4 ♜xb5=.

5...♝e8

If now 5...a5, then 6.axb5 axb4 7.♕xa8 ♜xa8 8.♕xa8 ♜xa8 9.♕xc4±.

6.♗f2! ♜d6

Now 6...a5 is bad in view of 7.♗b6± and the black queen cannot go to e8.

7.♗b6 ♜e8 8.♗3a2 ♜e7 9.♕c5 ♜f8

Black is very passive and must always be aware of the possible opening of the file.

9...♜f8 is met by 10.♕h5± (Deep Blue).

10.♕f5! ♜xf5

Deep Blue prefers 10...♝xf5 11.exf5 bxa4±.

11.exf5 f6

If 11...♜d8, then 12.f6+–.

12.♕xd6 ♜xd6 13.axb5 axb5

Diagram 2-5

14.♕e4!

This is how White maintains control over the open file. Apparently even the computer understands this concept!

14...♝xa2 15.♛xa2 ♜d7 16.♛a7±

In spite of the bishops of opposite colours, White has a clearly superior position.

16...♝c7 17.♝b6 ♜b7 18.♝a8† ♜f7 19.♛a6

A good redeployment of the major pieces.

19...♜c7 20.♝c6 ♜b6†

Diagram 2-6

21.♝f1?

This move is inaccurate and allows Kasparov counterplay.

Instead, the computer should have played 21.♝h1!. Then comes 21...♝b8 22.♝a6 and if Black tries 22...♝e3 23.♛xd6 ♜e8, then 24.♝a1! wins. The point is that the bishop on e4 is now taboo, as after 24...♝xe4 25.♝a7†! ♜g8 26.♛d7+— there is no perpetual check.

21...♝b8 22.♝a6

But Kasparov resigned here! He did not exploit the chance he had been offered: 22...♝e3!! 23.♛xd6 ♜e8!! and if 24.♝f3, then 24...♝c1† 25.♝f2 ♜d2† with perpetual check.

Diagram 2-7

P.Keres – M.Botvinnik

Moscow 1947

Black is ready for the struggle for the open c-file. So White should immediately prepare to exchange the major pieces. The next, natural looking, move is a positional error.

1.e3?

1.♝a2! was necessary, to meet 1...♝b5 with the exchange of rooks: 2.♝xc7 ♜xc7 3.♝c1!=

1...♝b5! 2.♝fe1 ♜g8

The immediate 2...♝c4!! is also possible.

If 2...♝e4, then 3.♝xe4 fxe4 4.♝g2 ♜g8 5.f3??.

3.f3

The struggle for the open file is lost. If 3.♝f1, then 3...♝xf1 4.♝xf1 ♜e4 5.♝a2 ♜c2??.

3.♝a2?? is not answered by 3...♝c2 4.♝c3!! intending 4...♝xb2? 5.♝xd5!, but simply by 3...♝c4! with an advantage for Black.

Diagram 2-6

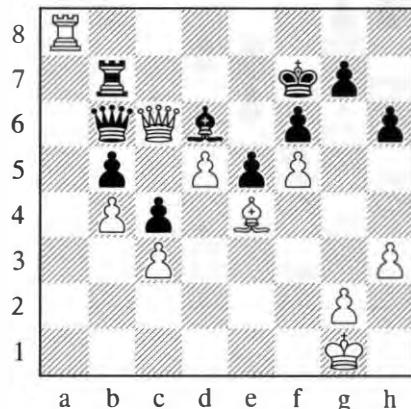


Diagram 2-7

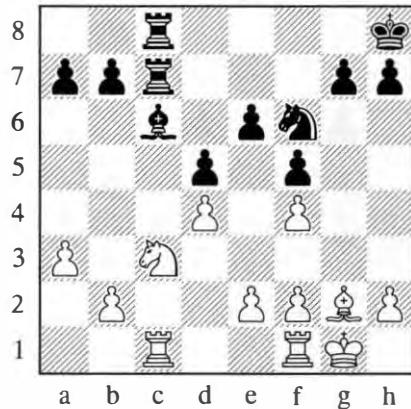
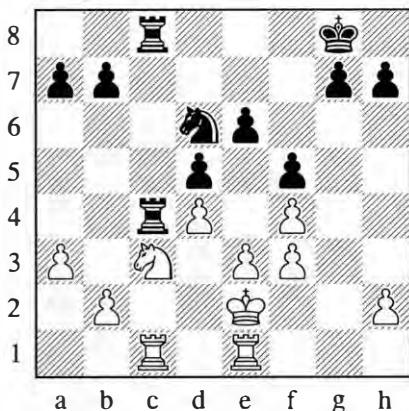
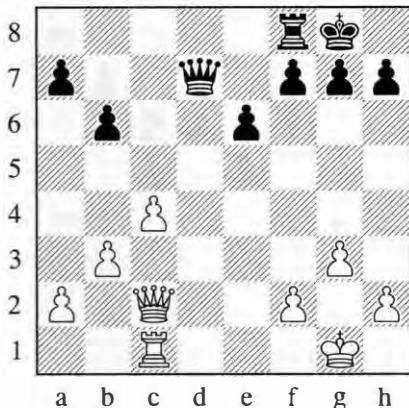


Diagram 2-8**Diagram 2-9**

3...Qc4† 4.Qf1

4.e4? would be bad, due to 4...Qh5†.

4...Qe8!

Heading for d6.

5.Qxc4 Bxc4 6.Qf2 Qd6 7.Qe2??

Instead, 7.Qe2?! Bc2 8.b3† deserves consideration, although Black has the initiative here too.

Diagram 2-8

7...b5†

Black must make haste with active operations on the queenside.

8.Qd3

White would only need one more move and then he could equalize with b2-b3.

8...b4! 9.Qa2

9.axb4 is followed by 9...Bxb4 10.Bb1 Bcb8 11.Qc2 Qc4†.

9.Qe2 would be somewhat more stubborn: 9...bxa3 10.bxa3 Bxcl 11.Qxc1 (11.Bxcl loses the a-pawn after 11...Bxcl 12.Qxcl Qc4†) 11...Bb8†

9...bxa3 10.bxa3 Ba4 11.Bxc8† Qxc8 12.Qc3 Bxa3

Black has won a pawn and went on to win the ending.

Diagram 2-9

A.Yusupov – H.Beitar

Thessaloniki Olympiad 1988

White takes control of the open file.

1.Qd1 Be7

1...Bc6?! 2.Bd3±

2.Bd3 g6

Operations on the queenside bring Black no relief: 2...Ba3 3.Qd2 a5 4.Qg2 a4 5.Bd6±

3.Qd6

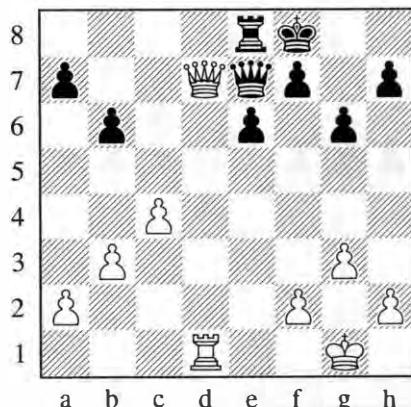
After 3.Qd7 Black could reply 3...Wa3.

3...Be8 4.Qd7

The exchange of queens does not promise much: 4.Qxe7 Bxe7 5.Qd8† Qg7 6.Qf1 Qf6 and Black will continue with e5, Qe6 and Bd7 with near equality.

4...Qf8?!

Black intends 5...Bxd7 6.Qxd7 Be7, but he is defending very passively. He should look for counterplay in the centre with 4...e5!±.

Diagram 2-10**Diagram 2-10****5. $\mathbb{W}a4!?$** White prepares $\mathbb{B}d7$.**5... $a5!?$** 5... $\mathbb{W}b7$ would be better: after 6. $\mathbb{B}d7$ $\mathbb{W}e4$ Black has chances of a perpetual check.**6. $\mathbb{B}d7!$** This is stronger than 6. $\mathbb{W}c6$ $\mathbb{B}d8!$ 7. $\mathbb{B}xd8\#$ $\mathbb{W}xd8$.**6... $\mathbb{W}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{W}b5!$**

The rook ending offers White a considerable advantage, because his rook is the more active. The deterioration of his pawn structure on the queenside, on the other hand, is not so important.

7... $\mathbb{W}xb5$ 8. $cxb5$ $\mathbb{B}c8?!$ This move loses by force, but other moves do not seem to bring salvation either: 8... $a4!?$ 9. $b4!?\pm$ or 8... $\mathbb{B}e7$ 9. $\mathbb{B}d6$ $\mathbb{B}b7$ 10. $a4\pm$.But appearances can be deceptive, and in the variation 8... $e5$ 9. $\mathbb{B}d6$ $\mathbb{B}e6!!$ Dr Fritz finds, after a long period of calculation, a saving grace. The black king marches quickly to the queenside and the sharp pawn ending ends in a draw!**9. $\mathbb{B}b7$ $a4$** Or 9... $\mathbb{B}c2$ 10. $a4!$ and White wins both pawns on the queenside.**10. $bxa4$ $\mathbb{B}c4$ 11. $\mathbb{B}xb6$ $\mathbb{B}xa4$ 12. $\mathbb{B}a6$** **1-0****Diagram 2-11****M.Botvinnik – I.Boleslavsky**

USSR Ch, Moscow 1945

1. $b4!?$

White has doubled his rooks nicely. But he cannot achieve much in the centre alone, since Black still controls all the squares on the 7th and 8th ranks. So White begins some action on the queenside, with the aim of forcing back the black pieces and thus gaining control of some squares (d7, d6) on the d-file.

1... $\mathbb{B}e6$ 2. $\mathbb{B}b3$ The threat is general exchanges on d8 and then $\mathbb{B}xe6$, which would lead to a noticeable weakening of the black pawn structure.**2... $\mathbb{B}xd2$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xd2$**

Now White has control over the open file.

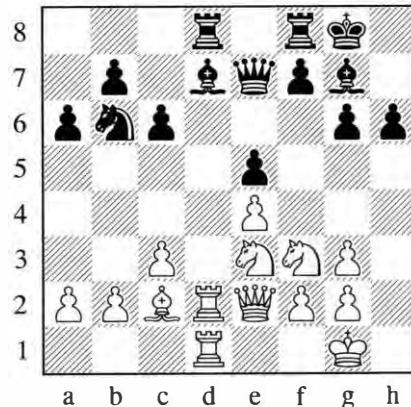
Diagram 2-11

Diagram 2-12

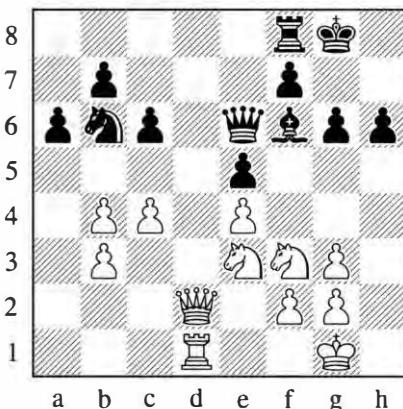


Diagram 2-13

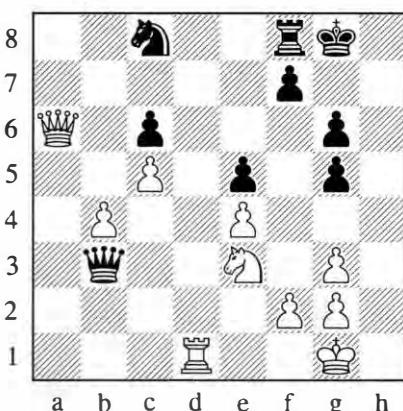
3... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 4. $a xb3$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 5. $c 4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$

Diagram 2-12

6. $c 5$!

This hinders ... $\mathbb{E}d8$ and achieves the desired control over the d7-square.

6... $\mathbb{Q}c8$

6... $\mathbb{E}d8$ is bad, in view of 7. $\mathbb{W}xd8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 8. $\mathbb{E}xd8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9. $cxb6+-$.

7. $\mathbb{W}d7!$ $\mathbb{W}xb3$

7... $\mathbb{E}d8$ is followed by 8. $\mathbb{W}xe6$ $\mathbb{E}xd1\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $fxe6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ and Black will lose the e5-pawn.

8. $\mathbb{W}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$

Or 8... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 9. $\mathbb{E}d6+-$.

9. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $hxg5$ 10. $\mathbb{W}xa6+-$

White has an advantage in material. The rest of the game is relatively simple.

Diagram 2-13

10... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 11. $\mathbb{W}b7$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 12. $\mathbb{W}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 13. $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{W}xb4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ $\mathbb{E}a8$ 14... $\mathbb{W}xe4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$ 15. $\mathbb{W}xe5$

15. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ would be simpler: 15... $\mathbb{W}xe4$ 16. $\mathbb{W}f6$ $\mathbb{W}f5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$ +

15... $\mathbb{W}b3$ 16. $\mathbb{E}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 17. $\mathbb{W}d6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 18. $\mathbb{W}d4\#$!

But not 18. $\mathbb{Q}e5?$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 19. $\mathbb{E}xf7\#?$ on account of 19... $\mathbb{W}xf7$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{E}a1\#$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{E}h1\#$.

18... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 20. $\mathbb{W}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 22. $\mathbb{W}xc6!$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$

22... $\mathbb{W}b2$ is refuted by 23. $\mathbb{W}d6!$ $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ (23... $\mathbb{W}xf2$ 24. $c6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 25. $\mathbb{W}xf8\#!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 26. $c7+-$) 27. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}a1\#$ 28. $\mathbb{W}d1$.

23. $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{W}b1$

Or 23... $\mathbb{E}h8\#$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}b1\#$ 25. $\mathbb{W}d1$ $\mathbb{W}xe4$ 26. $\mathbb{W}a1\#+-$.

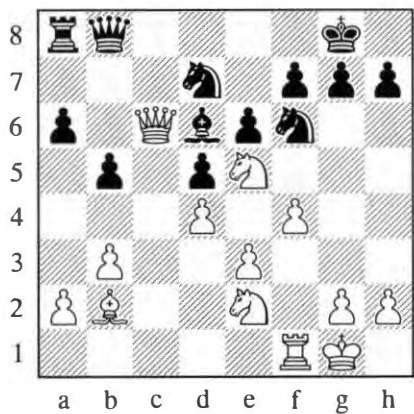
24. $\mathbb{W}d4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 25. $c6$

If 25... $\mathbb{E}h8$ then 26. $\mathbb{W}xh8\#$ followed by $c7$ wins (Botvinnik).

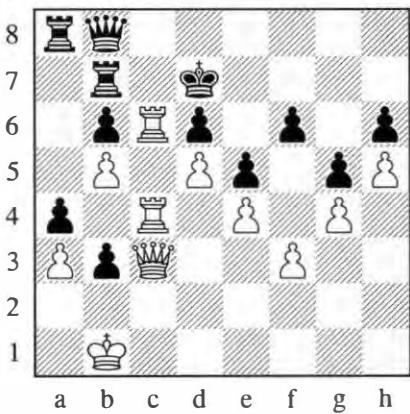
1-0

Exercises

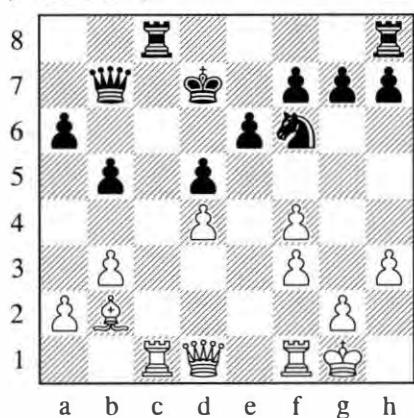
► Ex. 2-1 ◀ ★ ▼



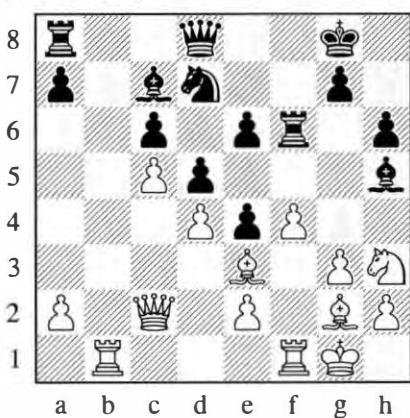
► Ex. 2-4 ◀ ★ ▲



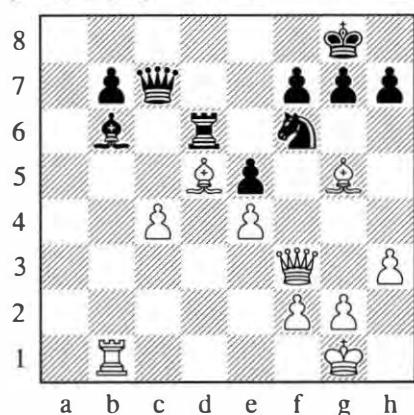
► Ex. 2-2 ◀ ★★ ▲



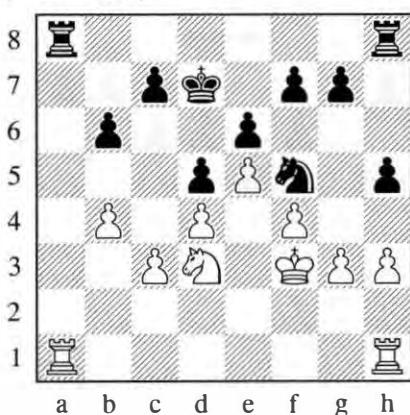
► Ex. 2-5 ◀ ★★ ▼



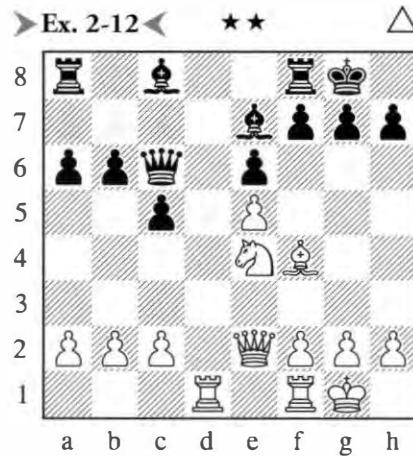
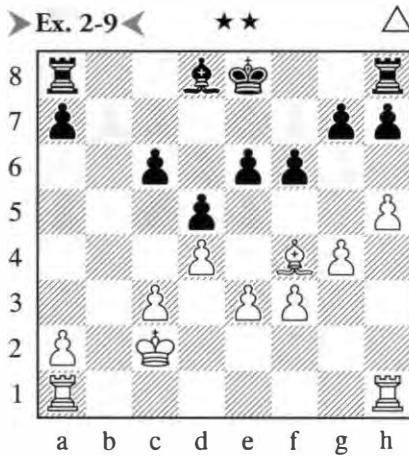
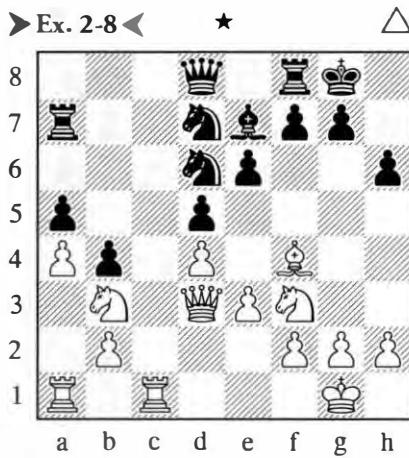
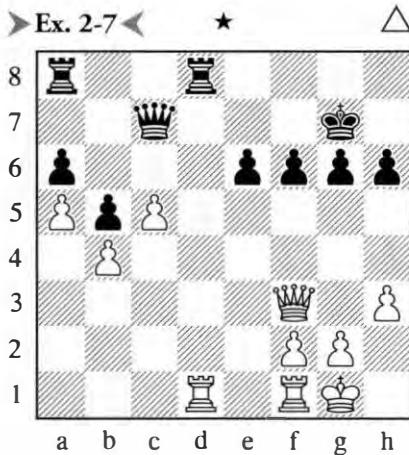
► Ex. 2-3 ◀ ★★ ▲



► Ex. 2-6 ◀ ★ ▼



Exercises



Solutions

Ex. 2-1

B.Avrukh – R.Dautov

Istanbul Olympiad 2000

1... $\mathbb{Q}a7!?$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}b6!?$ is equally good. White may try 2.f5 (2. $\mathbb{B}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ transposes back into the game) 2...exf5 and now:

a) 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ g6 4. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xc5$ $\mathbb{W}d6\#$

b) 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{W}c8!?$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xd6?$ $\mathbb{W}xf5$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xb6$ $\mathbb{W}c2$ 6. $\mathbb{W}c6$ $\mathbb{W}d1\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$

2. $\mathbb{B}c1$

2.f5!? would be interesting: 2...exf5 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (Δ ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ gxf6 5. $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$

After 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ there comes simply 2...g6 \bar{f} rather than 2... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 3.f5 $\bar{?}$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}b6$

By threatening ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ Black neutralizes the open c-file.

3. $\mathbb{W}c2$

But not 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2??$ on account of 3... $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$ followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$.

3... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d1$ $\mathbb{W}c8\bar{f}$

Black is better, because of the weakness on e4.

Ex. 2-2

S.Ovsejevitsch – A.Braun

Budapest 2003

1. $\mathbb{B}c5!$

(2 points)

In this way White exploits his outpost on c5. If Black now exchanges the rooks, White gets a protected passed pawn and in addition opens the long diagonal for the bishop.

1 consolation point for the positional sacrifice 1.f5!? exf5 (1... $\mathbb{B}xc1$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xc1$) 2. $\mathbb{W}d2\bar{\infty}$ or 2. $\mathbb{W}d3$. White employed this idea a little later.

1... $\mathbb{W}b8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}d2$ g6 3. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{B}he8$ 4. $\mathbb{B}fc1$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5.f5!? gx5 6. $\mathbb{W}g5$ $\mathbb{B}xc5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{B}c2\pm$

Ex. 2-3

A.Lilienthal – L.Aronin

Moscow 1948

1.c5!

(1 point)

White opens the c-file.

1... $\mathbb{W}xc5$

If 1... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$, then 2. $\mathbb{B}xb7\#$.

2. $\mathbb{B}c1$ $\mathbb{W}a5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$

(another 1 point)

First playing 3. $\mathbb{B}c8\#$ will come to the same thing, since 3... $\mathbb{B}d8?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{B}xc8$ loses to 5. $\mathbb{W}g4$.

3... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$

3...gx $f6$ loses more quickly: 4. $\mathbb{B}c8\#$ $\mathbb{B}d8$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 5. $\mathbb{W}h5$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$) 5. $\mathbb{W}h5$ (also winning is 5. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}d7$ or 5. $\mathbb{W}xf6$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 6.exd5) 5... $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 6.exd5 $\mathbb{B}xc8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$ (Lilienthal)

4. $\mathbb{B}c8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c3?$

5. $\mathbb{W}d1!$ would have been even better: 5... $\mathbb{B}d6$ (5... $\mathbb{B}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$

5... $\mathbb{W}b6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}b2!$

6. $\mathbb{W}xe5$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}g3\pm$

6... $\mathbb{W}d6$

6... $\mathbb{W}a5$ is met by 7. $\mathbb{W}d2\#$.

7.f4!?

The alternatives 7. $\mathbb{W}xb7$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 8. $\mathbb{W}a8$ $\mathbb{B}e7\pm$ and 7. $\mathbb{W}xe5$ $\mathbb{B}f8\pm$ are not bad either.

7... $\mathbb{Q}xf4!$

7... $\mathbb{Q}xf4?$ loses to 8. $\mathbb{W}xe5$ $\mathbb{W}b6\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h2$.

The most stubborn defence was 7... $\mathbb{W}d7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}xb7$ $\mathbb{B}d6\pm$.

8.e5 $\mathbb{W}d7$

8... $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 9.exf6 gxf6 (9... $\mathbb{W}d7$ 10. $\mathbb{W}b5\#$) 10. $\mathbb{W}b6\#$

9. $\mathbb{W}xb7\#$ $\mathbb{W}e8$ 10. $\mathbb{W}b8$ $\mathbb{B}d6$ 11. $\mathbb{W}xd6$

11.exd6?? $\mathbb{W}e1\#$

11... $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$ 12. $\mathbb{W}xb6$ $\mathbb{W}xc8$ 13.e6 g5 14.e7 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c6$

1-0

Solutions

Ex. 2-4

N.Rossolimo – G.Wood

Southsea 1949

1.f4!

(1 point)

The time is ripe for an immediate breakthrough on the kingside!

1...♝ba7

1...gx f 4? would be hopeless: 2.g5! fxg5 3.♗h3† ♖d8 4.♗e6 ♖d7 5.♗xh6+–

2.♗h3 ♖d8

If 2...exf4? then 3.e5! fxe5 4.♗d3+–.

3.fxg5 fxg5

Now there is a struggle for two open files. This means that the defence will be overloaded.

4.♝c1?

4.♝c3! is better: 4...♝e8 5.♗f1 ♝f7 6.♗c1! (Δ♝c8+–)

4...♝e7?!

4...♝e8 is more stubborn: 5.♗f1 ♝f7 6.♗f5+–

5.♗c3?!

Simply 5.♗xb6† would be stronger.

5...♛d8?

Passive defence does not offer any hope. Black should attempt to activate his queen with 5...♛f6!.

6.♗f1!

The control of the second open file brings White a rapid victory.

6...♝e7

6...♝e8 7.♗f3 ♛e7 8.♗f5 ♛f7 9.♗c8†+–

7.♗f5 ♖d7

This allows an elegant finish. 7...♛e8 is followed by 8.♗f3 ♖b8 9.♗xe5†! dx e 5 10.♗f6† ♖d7 11.♗d6#.

8.♗xe5†!!

1–0

Ex. 2-5

V.Chekhov – A.Yusupov

German Cup 1993

First Black activates the queen and brings it to a6. Then he can neutralize the pressure on the b-file and equalize.

1...♛c8!

(2 points)

1...♝b8 (1 point) would be less accurate, in view of 2.♗f2 ♛c8 3.♗xb8 ♗xb8 4.♗b1 ♛a6 5.♗f1 ♗d7 6.♗c1 ♗f8 7.e3±.

2.♗b2 ♛a6 3.♗fb1 ♗ff8 4.♗f1

Now Black exchanges all the rooks and thus draws the teeth from White's initiative on the b-file.

If 4.♗b7?! then 4...♝fc8 5.♗f1 ♗ab8 6.♗b2 ♗a5=.

4...♝ab8 5.♗c1

5.♗f2!=

5...♜xb2 6.♜xb2 ♗b8 7.e3 ♛c8 8.♗f2 ♗f6=

Ex. 2-6

Variation from the game

A.Vajda – A.Nimzowitsch

Kecskemet 1927

After activating his knight, Black will also win the struggle for the open a-file.

1...h4!

(1 point)

2.g4 ♗g3 3.♗hc1 ♗e4

The weakness of c3 means that Black is threatening ♗xa1.

4.♗xa8 ♗xa8†

Ex. 2-7

D.Bronstein – N.Cortlever

Amsterdam Olympiad 1954

1.♗d6!

(1 point)

White exploits his outpost on the d-file.

Solutions

1... $\mathbb{E}e8$

Or 1... $\mathbb{E}xd6$ 2.cxd6 $\mathbb{W}c8$ 3.d7+–.

2. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$ $\mathbb{E}ad8$

2... $\mathbb{E}a7$ is no better, on account of 3. $\mathbb{E}d7\#$ $\mathbb{W}xd7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}xd7\#$ $\mathbb{E}xd7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c6+–$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$

1–0

Ex. 2-8

T.Petrosian – W.Unzicker

Hamburg 1960

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd6!$?

(1 point)

White has another equally good solution:
1. $\mathbb{Q}c2!$? $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$ $\mathbb{Q}db6$ 3.b3±

1... $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 2. $\mathbb{E}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$

2... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ would be a bit better: 3. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$ $\mathbb{E}a8$

4. $\mathbb{W}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 5. $\mathbb{E}c2$ $\mathbb{W}e8\pm$

3. $\mathbb{E}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$

3... $\mathbb{E}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}ac1\pm$

4. $\mathbb{E}ac1$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{W}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}fd2$ $\mathbb{Q}xd2$

7. $\mathbb{E}xd2$ $\mathbb{W}a8!?$

Better is 7... $\mathbb{W}b8\pm$.

8. $\mathbb{E}dc2$ $\mathbb{E}d8$ 9. $\mathbb{E}c6$ $g6$ 10.g3±

His complete control of the c-file gives White an easy game.

Ex. 2-9

V.Makogonov – Makienko

USSR 1964

1. $\mathbb{E}hb1!$

(2 points)

1 consolation point for 1. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ or 1. $\mathbb{E}ab1$. We shall soon see why the rook should remain on a1.

1... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 2.a4! $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3.a5 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{E}b7\pm$ $\mathbb{E}hc8$ 5.a6 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{E}ab1$ e5 7.dxe5 fxe5 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 9.e4!+– $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 10. $\mathbb{E}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$

10...dxe4 11. $\mathbb{E}d7$ +–

11.exd5 cxd5 12. $\mathbb{E}xd5$ $\mathbb{E}c6$ 13. $\mathbb{E}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$

14. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}c8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$

15. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ would not be so accurate, because of 15... $\mathbb{E}xa6$.

15... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ h6

If 16... $\mathbb{E}xa6$, then 17. $\mathbb{E}c5$ +–.

17. $\mathbb{E}e7$

1–0

Ex. 2-10

F.Thorbergsson – M.Tal

Reykjavik 1964

1... $\mathbb{E}a7!$

(2 points)

Black brings his queen's rook to the e-file. If you planned this redeployment after the preparatory 1... $\mathbb{E}e8$, you also earn 2 points. For 1... $\mathbb{E}e8$ without this continuation you only get 1 point.

2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{E}fe8$ 4. $\mathbb{E}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}df6\#$

All the black pieces are in play.

Ex. 2-11

B.Larsen – A.Suetin

Copenhagen 1965

1. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$

(1 point)

The knight was only blocking the e-file.

1... $\mathbb{W}xd6$

1... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ is followed by 2.gxf4 g6 3. $\mathbb{W}g5$ $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{B}b8$ 5. $\mathbb{E}e7\pm$ and 5... $\mathbb{W}b6$ can be met by 6. $\mathbb{Q}d5$.

White is also better after 1...g6 2. $\mathbb{W}f3$ $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$.

2. $\mathbb{W}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{B}b8$ 4. $\mathbb{E}e7$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{W}xb2$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xc5$ $\mathbb{B}bc8$ 7. $\mathbb{E}c7$

7. $\mathbb{W}xa7$ is also possible: 7... $\mathbb{E}xc2$ 8. $\mathbb{E}b7$ $\mathbb{W}xa2$ 9. $\mathbb{W}xd4\pm$
7... $\mathbb{E}xc7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}xc7$ $\mathbb{W}xa2$ 9. $\mathbb{E}e5\pm$

Solutions

Ex. 2-12

P.Biyiasas – W.Hug

Petropolis 1973

1... ♕g5!

(1 point)

White secures the key outpost on d6 by exchanging the black defender.

1... ♕xg5 2. ♘d6!

(another 1 point)

This is an important intermediate move. 2. ♘xg5 would be less accurate: 2... ♕b7 3.f3 ♘ad8±

2... ♘c7

Or 2... ♘a4 3.b3+–.

3. ♔xg5

Threatening ♘e4.

3... ♕b7 4. ♘d3 g6 5. ♘d1 ♕d5 6.c4 ♕c6

7. ♘h3 h5 8. ♔xe6!

1–0

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 18

16 points and above..... ➤ Excellent

12 points and above..... ➤ Good

9 points..... ➤ Pass mark

If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ The importance of 'minor' tactics
- ✓ Various tactical operations

'Minor' tactics

It is not only in the attack on the king and in defence that tactics play an important role; and tactical operations do not always have major aims as their object. In this section we shall consider tactical operations which involve no immediate threat to the opposing king. Such tactical motifs are often employed simply to secure some positional advantage. **Tactics are the engine of the game of chess** and often bring many a strategic plan to life.

This lesson is based on the games and annotations of Grandmaster Ratmir Kholmov. In the following example he takes the first available opportunity to seize the initiative.

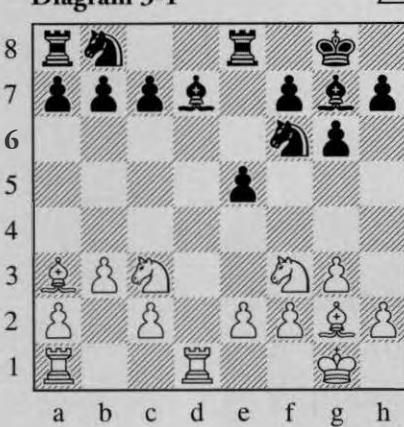
R.Kholmov – A.Khasin

USSR Ch, Moscow 1957

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ g6 3.g3 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 0-0 5.0-0 d6 6.b3 e5 7.dxe5 dxe5 8. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{W}xd1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7?$

Black should prefer 10...e4 ∞ .

Diagram 3-1



11. $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$

White starts a combination.

11... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xe8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d5\pm$

Although White has no clear material advantage (a rook and two pawns are not always stronger than two minor pieces), he is much more actively placed. His rook can use the open file and his pawns form a compact whole and are mobile.

17... $\mathbb{Q}f8$

17...f5 followed by $\mathbb{Q}f7$ would be better, to bring the king into the game.

On the other hand, 17... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ would be bad: 18. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2\#$ (or 19... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}xa7\#$) 20. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$

18. $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 19.c4 $\mathbb{Q}a5?$

Diagram 3-2

This anti-positional move allows a new tactical blow.

19...f5± was necessary.

20.♕xc7!+– ♕xc7 21.♗d7 ♕a6 22.♗xa7

22.♗d8† ♕e7 23.♗xa8 would also be good.

22...♗b7 23.b4!

White recovers a minor piece and remains with a material advantage.

23...♗xb4

If 23...♔e8 24.bxa5 ♔c5, then 25.♗xb7! ♗xb7 26.a6+–.

24.♗xa5 ♕c6 25.♗b5 ♕d8 26.a4 ♕c6 27.♗b8

White's material advantage decides the struggle.

27...♔e7 28.a5 ♕e6 29.a6 ♕d6 30.a7 ♕c7

Black has stopped the dangerous pawns on the queenside, but now White will attack on the kingside.

31.h4 h5 32.f3 ♕a8 33.♗f2 ♕c5 34.♗f8

1–0

In the next game too, Kholmov exploits the slightly hanging position of the white pieces.

Diagram 3-3

G.Bastrikov – R.Kholmov

Jaroslavl 1947

Black is well placed in the centre. A tactical trick helps him to consolidate his position.

1...♕c6! 2.fxe5 ♕d7!

And Black wins back his pawn.

3.♗d4 dxe5 4.♗c5 ♕xc5 5.♗xc5

Diagram 3-4

A fresh tactical operation exploits the insecurity of the white pieces and brings Black an extra pawn.

5...♗xb2! 6.♗ab1 ♗a3 7.♗xc6 ♗ac8 8.♗d5

But not 8.♗b3? ♗xb3 9.♗xc8 due to 9...♗b6†+; nor 8.♗b5? due to 8...♗e3†+.

8...♗xc3 9.♗f3 ♗c5† 10.♗b3?

White hopes that in the position with bishops of opposite colours an exchange of queens will ease the defence. But he overlooks a tactical strike.

10...♗xd5 11.♗xc3

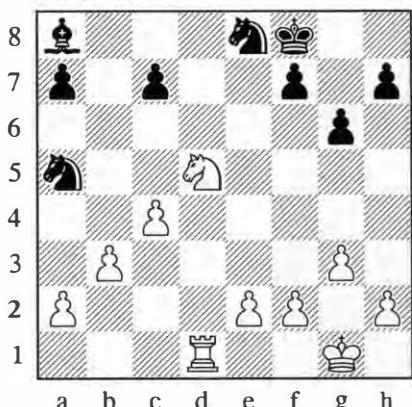
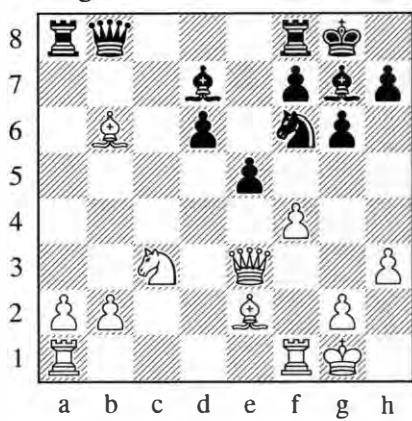
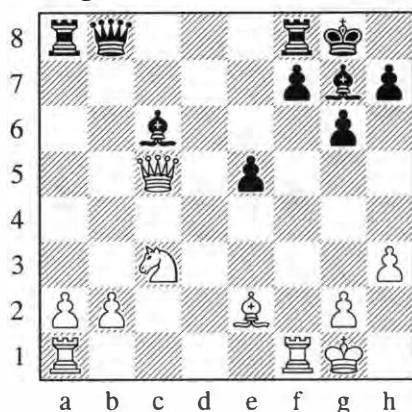
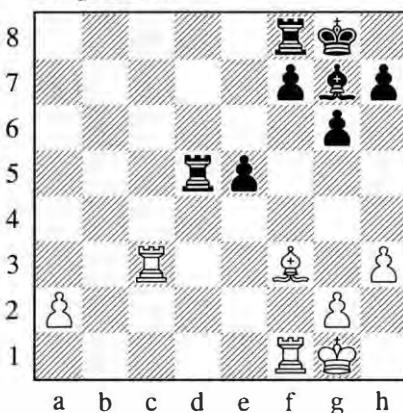
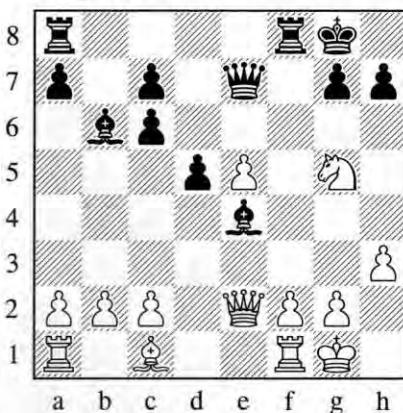
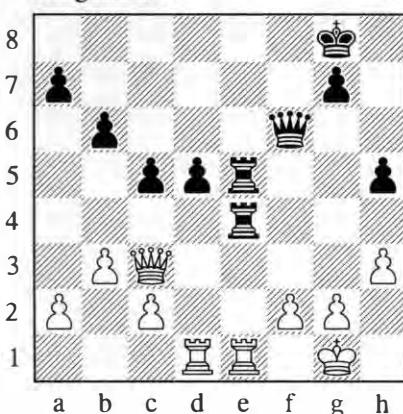
Diagram 3-2**Diagram 3-3****Diagram 3-4**

Diagram 3-5**Diagram 3-6****Diagram 3-7****Diagram 3-5****11...e4!**

This operation will bring Black a decisive material advantage.

12.Qxe4 Qd4†! 13.Qh1 Qe5

Now two white pieces are under attack.

14.Qc4 Qxe4

And White resigned, in view of the variation 15.Qd1 Qd8 16.a4 Qg7 17.a5 Qe5!—+ (or 17...Qf6!—+).

Diagram 3-6**V.Bagirov – R.Kholmov**

USSR Ch, Baku 1961

Black recovers the sacrificed pawn with a little tactical operation.

1...Qf5! 2.Qxe4 Qxe5 3.Qa6

The queen is not well placed here. 3.Qd3 would have been better: 3...Qxe4 4.Qd2†

3...Qxe4 4.Qe3 Qe8

Intending 5...Qxe3 6.fxe3 Qc5.

The immediate 4...Qxe3 was also good: 5.Qxc6 Qd8! 6.fxe3 Qc4! and Black is better.

5.Qxb6 cxb6 6.Qd3 Qf6 7.b3 h5 8.Qad1 Qe5!**9.Qc3 c5†**

Black has a clear positional advantage, because he controls the only open file. Any attempt by his opponent to exchange rooks will be refuted tactically.

10.Qfe1??**Diagram 3-7****10...Qxe1† 11.Qxe1 Qe2!!**

White resigned. 12.Qxf6 is answered by the intermediate check 12...Qxe1†!.

In grandmaster games, a tactical exchange is sometimes lurking in the wings, as the next example shows.

Diagram 3-8**R.Fischer – R.Kholmov**

Havana 1965

1...♝f5!

In order to be able to play this strong move, Kholmov had to take into account several tactical possibilities.

2.♝g7 ♜d8

With the threat of ...♝b6.

3.♝b7

A tricky alternative is 3.♝ag1; an unsuspecting opponent continuing with the planned 3...♝b6?? would find himself quickly mated after 4.♝1g5†!.

However, Black has an exchanging combination up his sleeve: 3...♝xe3†! 4.♝xe3 ♜b6† 5.♝f3 ♜xg1

6.♝xg1 ♜d8 and Black wins.

3...♝g8 4.♝b8

Or 4.♝f7† ♜g6 5.♝b7 ♜h5† and Black threatens ...♜h4.

4...♝g7 5.a4

If 5.♝a2, then 5...♝gd7 6.♝g2 ♜xa3 7.♝g8 ♜e7+.

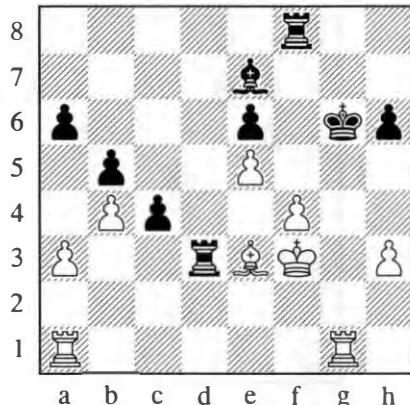
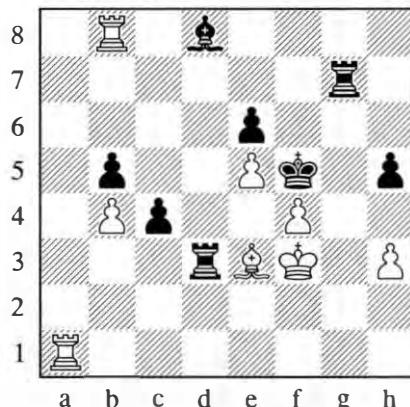
5...h5 6.axb5 axb5**Diagram 3-9****7.♝xb5?**

7.♝aa8 would be somewhat more stubborn: 7...h4 8.♝xd8 ♜g3† 9.♝f2, but here too Black should win after 9...♝gxe3. Kholmov pointed out a spectacular line: 10.♝xd3 ♜xd3 11.♝b8 ♜xf4 12.♝xb5 ♜xh3 13.♝c5 ♜c3 14.b5 h3 15.b6 ♜c1 (15...h2 is even simpler) 16.b7 h2 17.b8♛ ♜c2†! and then mate next move.

7...♜h4 8.♝e2 ♜g2† 9.♝f1 ♜h2 10.♝g1 ♜e2 11.♝b6 c3 12.♝f1 ♜h2**0-1**

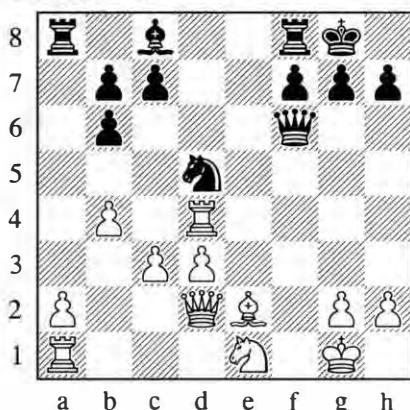
It was rare that the great Fischer was so outplayed that he had to resign although a pawn ahead! Here is the possible finish: 13.♝g1 ♜g3 14.♝c5 c2–+

In the test which follows, look for active moves and make use of the tactical possibilities in the positions.

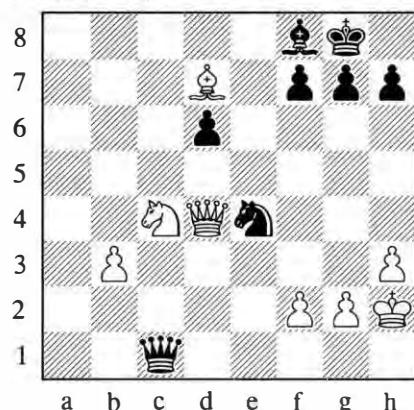
Diagram 3-8**Diagram 3-9**

Exercises

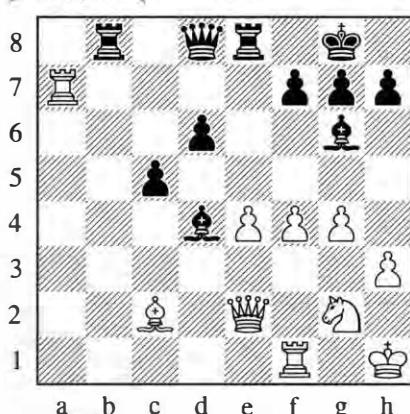
► Ex. 3-1 ◀ ★★



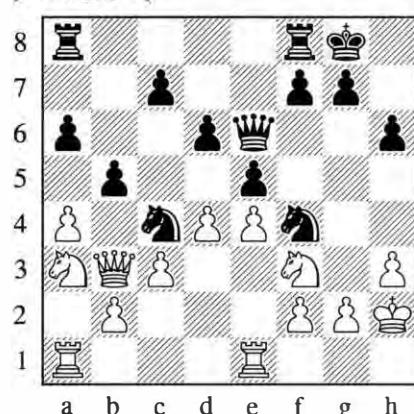
► Ex. 3-4 ◀ ★★



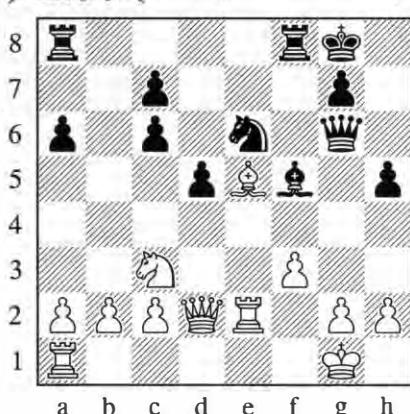
► Ex. 3-2 ◀ ★★



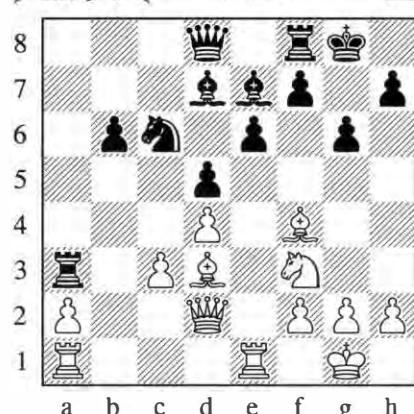
► Ex. 3-5 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 3-3 ◀ ★



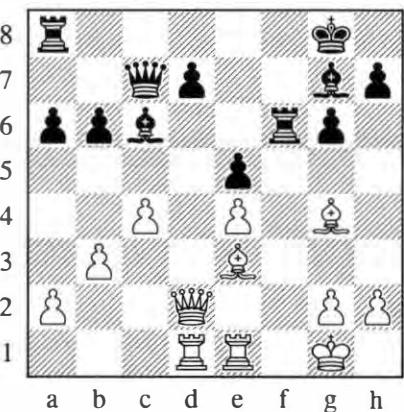
► Ex. 3-6 ◀ ★★★



Exercises

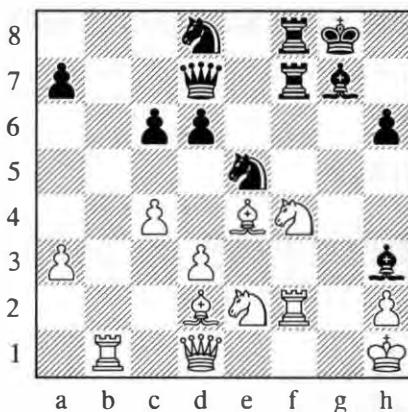
► Ex. 3-7 ◀

★★



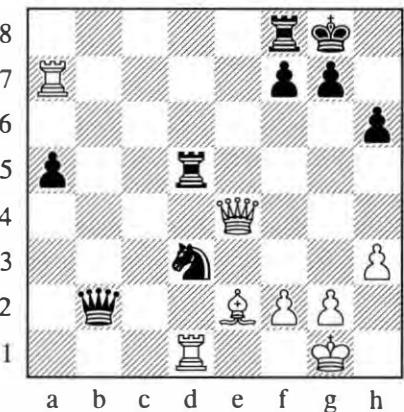
► Ex. 3-10 ◀

★★★



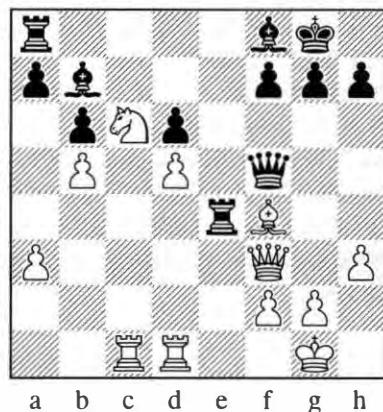
► Ex. 3-8 ◀

★★



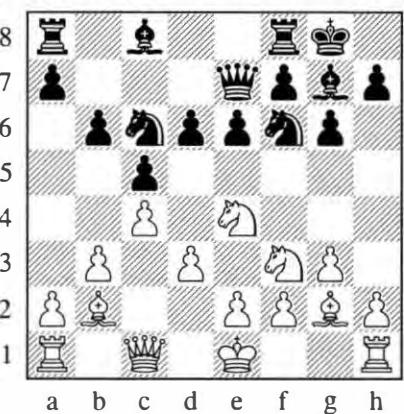
► Ex. 3-11 ◀

★



► Ex. 3-9 ◀

★★



► Ex. 3-12 ◀

★★★



Solutions

Ex. 3-1

K.Honfi – R.Kholmov

Bucharest 1962

1... $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{W}xc3 \mathbb{B}a3!!$

(another 1 point)

1... $\mathbb{W}e5?$ would be bad, on account of 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$
(or 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{B}a3 3.\mathbb{W}b2 c5 4.\mathbb{Q}f3+-$) 2... $\mathbb{W}xe2$
3. $\mathbb{B}e4+-.$

3. $\mathbb{W}b2$

3... $\mathbb{W}xa3 \mathbb{W}xd4\#-$

3...c5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{B}a6 5.b5??$

It was better to try 5.bxc5 bxc5 6. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{W}e5$
7. $\mathbb{W}b5$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ cxd4–; 7. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{W}xe2-$)
7... $\mathbb{W}xe2$ 8. $\mathbb{W}xc5 \mathbb{B}xa2$ 9. $\mathbb{B}e1 \mathbb{B}xc2!$ (9... $\mathbb{W}xc2??$
10. $\mathbb{W}xf8\#!!$) 10. $\mathbb{W}xf8\#$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e7$
12. $\mathbb{B}xe2\#$ 13. $\mathbb{B}xc8\#.$

5... $\mathbb{B}a5 6.\mathbb{B}b4$

6. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{W}e5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ cxd4–

6... $\mathbb{W}xb4$ 7. $\mathbb{W}xf6$ gxf6 8. $\mathbb{Q}xb4 \mathbb{B}xb5+-$ 9.a3
 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 10.d4 $\mathbb{B}a5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{B}fa8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$
 $\mathbb{B}xa3$ 13. $\mathbb{B}xa3$ 14.d5 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 15.d6 $\mathbb{B}a7$
16. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$
19. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ b5

0–1

Ex. 3-2

A.Lutikov – R.Kholmov

USSR Ch semi-final, Leningrad 1955

1... $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$

(1 point)

You also get 1 point for 1...c4 2. $\mathbb{B}a2 \mathbb{Q}xe4$,
after which 3. $\mathbb{W}xc4 \mathbb{W}h4$ gives Black a strong
attack.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ d5 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$
5. $\mathbb{W}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!$

(another 1 point)

6. $\mathbb{B}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}e2!+-$ 8. $\mathbb{B}e1$

8. $\mathbb{W}f3$ $\mathbb{B}b3!!$ 9. $\mathbb{W}xb3$ $\mathbb{W}xf1\#$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$
11. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{W}f2#$
8... $\mathbb{W}d3$ 9. $\mathbb{W}h5$

9. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g1\#!$

9... $\mathbb{B}b1!$ 10. $\mathbb{B}xb1$ $\mathbb{W}xb1\#$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$

White resigned, in view of 12. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$ or
12. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{W}d3\#$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ f6#.

Ex. 3-3

E.Jimenez Zerquera – R.Kholmov

Leningrad 1967

1... $d4!$

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{Q}e4?!$

White should have preferred either 2. $\mathbb{Q}a4\#$ or 2. $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$. The latter can be met by the
tempting 2... $\mathbb{Q}xc2??$ with the point 3. $\mathbb{W}xc2?$ d3
4. $\mathbb{W}b1$ dxe2! 5. $\mathbb{W}xg6$ e1 $\mathbb{W}\#$; however 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$
keeps White in the game.

If 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd4?$, then 2... $\mathbb{B}ad8\#.$

2... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 3. $fxe4$

3. $\mathbb{B}xe4?$ loses to 3... $\mathbb{Q}g5!.$

3...c5

3... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$ would be bad, due to
5. $\mathbb{W}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{W}xd3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf8\#+-.$

4. $\mathbb{W}d3$ $\mathbb{B}ae8$ 5. $\mathbb{W}g3$

If 5. $\mathbb{W}xa6?$, then 5... $\mathbb{W}g5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ h4 7.. $\mathbb{Q}el$
 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{B}xe4+-.$

5... $\mathbb{W}h6$ 6.h4

But not 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc7?$ because of 6...h4 7. $\mathbb{W}d6$
 $\mathbb{B}c8!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}f4!+-.$

6... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{B}xf4\#$

Ex. 3-4

M.Matulovic – R.Kholmov

Kislovodsk 1966

1... $d5!$

(2 points)

Only 1 consolation point for 1... $\mathbb{W}f4\#$ 2.g3!
 $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xf2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#.$

2. $\mathbb{W}xd5$

After 2. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ there follows 2... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 3. $\mathbb{g}3$ $\mathbb{W}c2$
4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3!$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xd5?$ $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}d1\#$
7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}h4\#.$

2... $\mathbb{W}f4\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$

3. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ would be more stubborn: 3... $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$
4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 5. $\mathbb{W}a8$ h5 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{W}f2\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h2$

Solutions

$\mathbb{Q}g3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $h4$ 9. $\mathbb{W}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ and the threat of ... $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$ is decisive.
 3... $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}f4\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$
 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ –
 5... $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{W}f1\#$
 0–1

Ex. 3-5

Y.Kots – R.Kholmov

Moscow 1961

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg2!$
 1... $\mathbb{W}g6$ would not be so strong: 2. $g3\#$
 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$
 2.d5 is met by 2... $\mathbb{W}f6$ (or, even better,
 2... $\mathbb{W}g6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}xe4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{W}xf3\#$ –)
 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{W}xf3\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$
 6. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $bxa4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ and Black is winning.
 (1 point for this variation)
 2... $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$
 (another 1 point)
 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{W}xb3\#$ – 4. $c4$ $\mathbb{W}xa4$ 5. $b3$ $\mathbb{W}a5$ 6. $dxe5$
 $dxe5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$
 7. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $b4\#$ –
 7... $\mathbb{W}b6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{W}fe8$ 9. $f4$ $\mathbb{W}ad8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$
 $\mathbb{Q}xe5\#$ 11. $fxe5$ $\mathbb{W}d3$
 0–1

Ex. 3-6

R.Kholmov – B.Milic

Belgrade 1967

1.h4!
 (2 points)
 1. $\mathbb{Q}ab1$ would not be so powerful after
 1... $\mathbb{W}a8\pm$; nor would 1. $\mathbb{Q}eb1$ $f6\pm$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$.
 Nevertheless, for these suggestions you get
 1 consolation point.
 1... $\mathbb{W}a8$
 1... $\mathbb{Q}xh4?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{W}xh4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ $\mathbb{W}g4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$
 $\mathbb{W}f5$ 5. $g4$ $\mathbb{W}e4$ 6. $f3\#$ –
 (another 1 point for this variation)
 2.h5 $\mathbb{W}a5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}ec1$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 4. $hxg6$ $\mathbb{W}xg6$
 After 4... $hxg6$ too, White would have a
 dangerous initiative, e.g. 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$

$\mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$
 $\mathbb{W}xg6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$ – and $\mathbb{Q}h1$ is
 coming.
 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$
 8. $\mathbb{W}h3\#?$
 White has a promising attack.

Ex. 3-7

R.Kholmov – L.Aronson

USSR Team Ch, Riga 1954

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$
 White simply wins a pawn, since 1... $\mathbb{Q}d8?$ is
 met by 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ –.
 (1 point)
 If 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$, then 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$ –.
 (another 1 point)
 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{W}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d6!$ $\mathbb{W}c5\#$
 3... $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $b5$ $c5\#$ –
 4. $\mathbb{W}xc5$ $bxc5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{W}f4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$
 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$
 1–0

Ex. 3-8

T.Petrosian – R.Kholmov

Vilnius 1951

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf2!!$
 (1 point)
 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7$
 If 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$, then 2... $\mathbb{Q}xd1\#$ –.
 After 2. $\mathbb{W}xd5$ comes 2... $\mathbb{Q}xd1\#$ –, threatening
 both $\mathbb{W}xe2$ and $\mathbb{W}b6\#$.
 (another 1 point for this variation)
 2... $\mathbb{Q}xd1\#$
 Weaker is 2... $\mathbb{W}xb7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}b6?$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d4$
 $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xd4\pm$.
 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{W}d2$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{W}xd1\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{W}xe2\#$
 6. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}a8\#$ – 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $a4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $a3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b1$
 $a2\#$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $g6$
 0–1

Solutions

Ex. 3-9

R.Kholmov – G.Borisenko

USSR Ch, Leningrad 1956

1. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$

(1 point)

This ‘just’ leads to a positional advantage.

1... $\mathbb{dxe5}$

If 1... $\mathbb{Qxe4}$, then 2. $\mathbb{Qxc6}\pm$.

1... $\mathbb{Qxe5?}$ is followed by 2. $\mathbb{Qxf6}\dagger \mathbb{Wxf6}$
 3. $\mathbb{Qxa8} \mathbb{Qxd3}\dagger$ 4. $\mathbb{exd3} \mathbb{Wxb2}$ 5. $\mathbb{Wxb2} \mathbb{Qxb2}$
 6. $\mathbb{Bb1} \mathbb{Qd4}\pm$.

(1 point for this variation)

2. $\mathbb{Qxf6}\dagger \mathbb{Qxf6}$ 3. $\mathbb{Qxc6} \mathbb{Qb7}$ 4. $\mathbb{Qxb7} \mathbb{Wxb7}$
 5.0–0 \pm

Ex. 3-10

W.Uhlmann – R.Kholmov

Moscow 1960

1... $d5!$

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{cx d5} \mathbb{cx d5}$ 3. $\mathbb{Qxd5} \mathbb{Wxd5}\dagger!$

(2 points)

The point behind the combination.

4. $\mathbb{Qxd5} \mathbb{Bxf2}\dagger\dashrightarrow$

White cannot meet all the various threats.

5. $\mathbb{Qf4}$

Or 5. $\mathbb{Qdf4} \mathbb{Qf3}$ and ... $\mathbb{Bxh2}\#$ is the threat.

5... $\mathbb{Qf3}$

And now ... $\mathbb{Qg2}\#$ is threatened.

0–1

Ex. 3-11

R.Kholmov – E.Chukaev

Vilnius 1960

1. $\mathbb{Qxd6!}$

White wins a pawn.

1... $\mathbb{Qc8}$

Or 1... $\mathbb{Wxf3} 2. \mathbb{gxf3}\dagger\dashrightarrow$.

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{Qxf8} \mathbb{Qxf8} 3. \mathbb{d6}\dagger\dashrightarrow \mathbb{Bf4} 4. \mathbb{Wg3} \mathbb{Qd7} 5. \mathbb{Qe7}$

$\mathbb{We4} 6. \mathbb{Qe1} \mathbb{Wa4} 7. \mathbb{Bc7} \mathbb{Bd8}$

If 7... $\mathbb{Qxb5}$, then 8. $\mathbb{d7}$ (or 8. $\mathbb{Qd5} \mathbb{Bc4}$
 9. $\mathbb{Qxf7}\dagger\dashrightarrow$) 8... $\mathbb{Qxd7}$ 9. $\mathbb{Qd5}\dagger\dashrightarrow$.

8. $\mathbb{Wc3}$

Threatening $\mathbb{Qg6}\dagger$.

8... $\mathbb{Qe6} 9. \mathbb{Qc6} \mathbb{Bc8}$

9... $\mathbb{Bxd6} 10. \mathbb{Bc8}\dagger\dashrightarrow$

10. $\mathbb{d7}! \mathbb{Qxd7} 11. \mathbb{Bxd7}$

1–0

Ex. 3-12

I.Vistanetskis – R.Kholmov

Vilnius 1953

1... $g5!$

(1 point)

The white bishop is coming under pressure.

2. $\mathbb{Qe3} \mathbb{d5}!!$

(another 1 point)

The threat is ... $d5-d4$.

3. $\mathbb{cx d5} \mathbb{exd5} 4. \mathbb{Qxd5} \mathbb{Qxd5} 5. \mathbb{Qxd5}\dagger \mathbb{Qh8}$

Now the other bishop is pinned and will be lost. Black threatens 6... $\mathbb{Qb4}$ or 6... $\mathbb{Bf5}$.

(another 1 point if you calculated this far)
 6. $\mathbb{Bac1} \mathbb{b6} 7. \mathbb{Qxg5}$

7. $\mathbb{Qxc6}$ would not offer any hope: 7... $\mathbb{Bxd2}$
 8. $\mathbb{Qxd2} \mathbb{Bd6}\dagger\dashrightarrow$

If 7. $a3$, then 7... $\mathbb{We5} 8. \mathbb{Bfd1} \mathbb{Qe7}\dagger\dashrightarrow$.

7... $\mathbb{hxg5} 8. e4 \mathbb{Qd4}\dagger\dashrightarrow 9. f4 \mathbb{gxf4} 10. \mathbb{gxf4}$
 $\mathbb{Bxd5}!!$

Black simplifies the position with the help of ‘minor’ tactics.

11. $\mathbb{exd5} \mathbb{Qe2}\dagger 12. \mathbb{Qg2} \mathbb{We4}\dagger 13. \mathbb{Bf3} \mathbb{Qxf4}\dagger$

0–1

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 25

- **22** points and above → **Excellent**
- **17** points and above → **Good**
- **12** points → **Pass mark**

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ How to study the opening
- ✓ ‘Follow my leader’
- ✓ The Advance Variation

Opening repertoire for White – the French Defence

How should you study an opening? In this chapter we shall use a method which I call ‘Follow my leader’. You choose yourself a ‘leader’, a strong chess player who plays the said opening very well and successfully, and you study his games. As you do so, it is more important to **understand the ideas behind the opening**, than simply to copy the opening moves of the top player.

The grandmaster Evgeny Sveshnikov is a very successful and strong opponent of the French Defence. He always chooses to play the Advance Variation against it (**1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5**).

In this variation White has an advantage in space, which normally means an initiative on the kingside. In rare cases White can also act on the queenside, though there he mostly restricts himself to purely defensive operations. Let us see how Sveshnikov pursues this strategy.

E.Sveshnikov – L.Psakhis

Sochi 1987

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3

Diagram 4-1

4... $\mathbb{Q}c6$

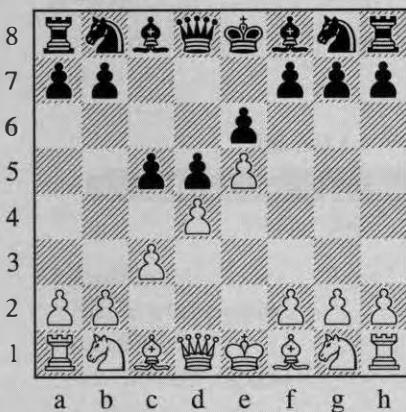
Another plan for Black is **4... $\mathbb{W}b6$** followed by **5... $\mathbb{Q}d7$** . Black then wants to exchange the light-squared bishops. An example from our leader: **4... $\mathbb{W}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 6.a3!?** $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 7.b4 (7.c4? $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $dxc4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$ $\mathbb{W}a6$ 10. $\mathbb{W}e2\pm$) 7... $cxd4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xb5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{W}xb5$ 9. $cxd4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ a5 12. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $axb4$ 13. $axb4$ $\mathbb{W}a6$ 14.b5! (White aims to exploit his lead in development) 14... $\mathbb{W}xb5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd1\uparrow$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ E.Sveshnikov – A.Grosar, Celje 2003. White has a dangerous initiative. See Ex. 4-2.

5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$

In this variation, White must defend the d4-pawn well.

5... $\mathbb{Q}ge7$

Diagram 4-1



This move is rarely employed. The main continuations are 5.... $\mathbb{W}b6$ and 5.... $\mathbb{Q}d7$.

6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

6. $\mathbb{Q}a3$, intending $\mathbb{Q}c2$, is an alternative.

6... $\mathbb{cxd4}$ 7. $\mathbb{cxd4}$ $\mathbb{Qf5}$

A standard strategy: Black puts pressure on d4. But here White can exchange the knight.

8. $\mathbb{Qxh5}$ $\mathbb{exf5}$ 9. $\mathbb{Qc3}$ $\mathbb{Qe6}$

Diagram 4-2

10. $\mathbb{Qe2}!$

White is still delaying castling. In many cases he needs the advance h2-h4 in order to be able to develop an initiative on the kingside.

If 10.0–0, then 10... $\mathbb{Qe7}$ plans ...g5 with level chances.

10... $\mathbb{Qe7}$

10...h6 is met by 11.h4.

If 10... $\mathbb{Wb6}$, then 11. $\mathbb{Qf4}$ h6 12.h4 g6 13. $\mathbb{Qf1}$ $\mathbb{Qe7}$ 14.g3 0–0–0 15. $\mathbb{Qg2}$ $\mathbb{Qb8}$ 16. $\mathbb{Qb1}\pm$ G.Sax – M.Gurevich, Bundesliga 1993.

11.h4! $\mathbb{W}a5\text{?}!$

Black just loses a tempo with this. The rook is so well posted on h1, that White will prefer artificial castling: $\mathbb{Qf1}$ and then either $\mathbb{Qg1}$ or g3 and $\mathbb{Qg2}$. Therefore 11... $\mathbb{Wb6}$ at once would have been more advisable.

12. $\mathbb{Qf1}$ h6 13. $\mathbb{Qf4}\pm$ $\mathbb{Qc8}$

Castling queenside would be safer.

14. $\mathbb{Qg1}$ $\mathbb{Wb6}$

Black could consider 14...g6?! followed by $\mathbb{Qf8-g7}$.

15.h5?! $\mathbb{Qb4}?$

Black tries to make use of the c-file for counterplay. But this strategy is based on a tactical oversight.

15...0–0 is answered by 16. $\mathbb{Qh3}$ intending $\mathbb{Qg3}$.

Diagram 4-3

16. $\mathbb{Qd2}!$ $\mathbb{Qc2}?$

It was better to retreat with 16... $\mathbb{Qc6}$, although after 17. $\mathbb{Qc3}\pm$ White would soon move his rook via h3 to g3 and obtain excellent attacking chances.

17. $\mathbb{Qxe6}!$ $\mathbb{fxe6}$ 18. $\mathbb{Qc1}\pm$

The knight is now pinned.

18... $\mathbb{Wxb2}$ 19. $\mathbb{Qe1}$ $\mathbb{Wxd4}$ 20. $\mathbb{Qxc2}$ 0–0

Black does not have sufficient compensation to show for the piece.

21. $\mathbb{Qh3}$ $\mathbb{Qxc2}$

Diagram 4-2

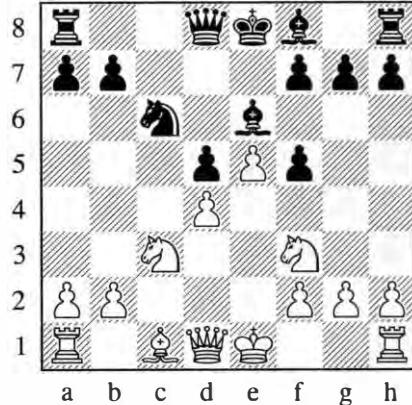
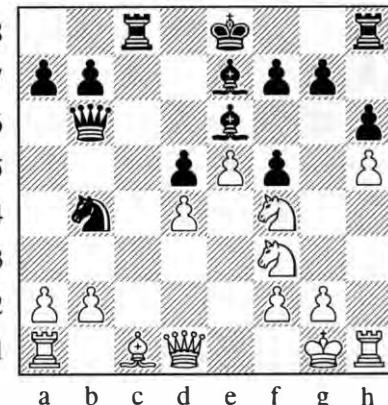


Diagram 4-3



Opening 1

After 21... $\mathbb{W}xe5$ White has a pleasant choice:

a) Simplest is 22. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}c3\pm$ (or 23. $\mathbb{W}e2\pm$) when the black pawns in the centre are blockaded and can be attacked.

b) More complicated, but also good for White is 22. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ e5 (23... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}f3+-$) 24. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ d4 25. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!?\pm$.

22. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{W}a4$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$

White coordinates his forces.

23... $\mathbb{W}xa2$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}d4!+-$

24. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ is also good.

24... $\mathbb{W}a6$

Or 24... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}c2+-$.

25. $\mathbb{Q}g3$

The threats are $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ and $\mathbb{Q}g6$. The black position collapses.

1–0

E.Sveshnikov – J.Timman

Tilburg 1992

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ 6.a3

White wants to play b4, because then he could also play on the queenside and extend his advantage in space. The d4-pawn can then also be protected by $\mathbb{Q}b2$.

After 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ the d4-pawn is hanging. The pawn sacrifice after 7.0–0 is very unclear according to theory.

6...c4

The alternatives are 6... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ and 6... $\mathbb{Q}d7$.

7. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7?!$

Diagram 4-4

This gives White extra possibilities. The correct way is 7... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 9.0–0 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b1!?$.

8.b3!

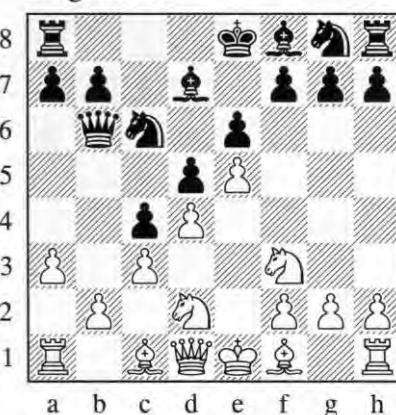
A surprise. White exploits his lead in development and starts play on the wing where he should actually be weaker. To spot such opportunities at the right time, you need to have outstanding feeling for the position.

8.g3! is a standard alternative.

8... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$

9... $\mathbb{Q}c8?!$

Diagram 4-4



10.♕xa5 ♕xa5 11.♗d2 ♕a4

The queen is not safe here; 11...♕c7 would be better.

12.♗b1!±

The white pawn structure is weakened on the queenside. So White absolutely must hang on to the queens and play for an attack.

12...♘c6

12...b5 is met by 13.♗d3, intending ♘c2 and a4±.

13.♗d3 ♔e7 14.0–0 h6

14...♗c8 15.♗xh7±

15.♗c1 ♔c8

Diagram 4-5

A typical problem in the Advance Variation; the black knight from g8 and the bishop on f8 are getting in each other's way.

Slightly better was 15...♗d8 16.♗a2±.

16.c4!

Otherwise Black could transfer his knight to b6 and bring the queenside under his control.

16...dxc4?!

Nor would 16...♗b6 be any better, on account of 17.cxd5 exd5 (17...♗xd5 18.♗c4 ♕b5 19.♗b4+–) 18.e6! with a strong attack.

17.♗xc4 ♕b5

If 17...♗a6, then 18.♗xc6 ♕xc6 19.♗b5+–.

18.♗xb5 ♕xb5 19.♗xc8† ♕xc8 20.♗xb5† ♕d8

21.♗f1+–

White has a decisive advantage in material. Sveshnikov continues to play very energetically.

21...♗c7 22.♗c1† ♕b8 23.♗xc8† ♕xc8 24.♗e8! f6

25.a4 ♕e7 26.♗f7 ♕d7

Diagram 4-6

27.d5! exd5 28.e6†

And Black has no defence against the strong manoeuvre ♘h4-f5(or g6), which led him to resign immediately.

Diagram 4-5

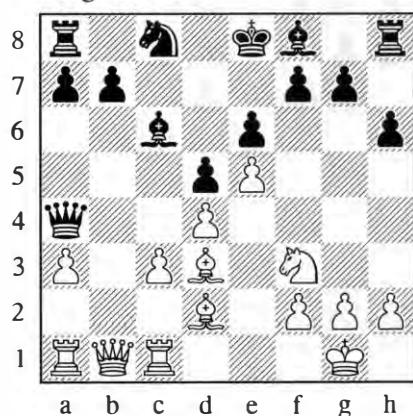
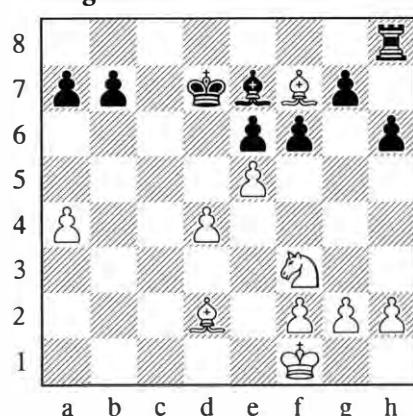


Diagram 4-6



E.Sveshnikov – E.Bareev

Russian Ch, Elista 1996

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♘c6 5.♗f3 ♕b6

After 5...♗d7 Sveshnikov prefers the variation 6.♗e2 ♘ge7 7.♗a3 ♘f5 8.♗c2; see the exercises.

6.a3 ♘h6

6... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 7.b4 cxd4 8.cxd4 $\mathbb{E}c8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ dxc4 12. $\mathbb{E}c1$ is another main variation.

7.b4 cxd4 8.cxd4 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$

9...a5 10.b5 a4 11.g4 $\mathbb{Q}fe7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 14.0-0 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 15. $\mathbb{E}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ and although Black has some compensation for the pawn, White stands slightly better, E.Sveshnikov – E.Bareev, Moscow 1995.

9... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 10.g4 $\mathbb{Q}h6$ is another alternative.

10.h4?!

Diagram 4-7

White wants to play g4 and chase away the knight. If he plays 10.g4 at once, then Black replies 10... $\mathbb{Q}h4$.

10...h5

10... $\mathbb{Q}d7$? was played in the game Sveshnikov – Doroshkevich; see Ex. 4-8.

11. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

Now the exchange on f5 gains in strength, because the g5-square has been weakened.

11...a5 12. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ exf5 13. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ axb4?

13... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ is correct: 14.b5 a4 ∞

14. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}a5$

14... $\mathbb{W}d8$ is followed by 15. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 16.d5 bxa3 17.0-0! \pm .

15. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ b3†

Black cannot profit from the discovered check, but other moves are no better either:

a) 15...bxa3?? 16. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ +–

b) 15... $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 16.0-0 \pm

c) 15... $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 16.0-0 $\mathbb{W}d5$ 17. $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 18.axb4± (Sveshnikov)

16. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 17. $\mathbb{W}xb3$

17.0-0!! would be simpler. Black must reply 17... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ and now not 18. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$?? $\mathbb{W}b6$ –+, but 18. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ ± (Sveshnikov).

17... $\mathbb{Q}h6$

Black could try 17... $\mathbb{Q}e6$?! 18. $\mathbb{W}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (Har Zvi), but he does not obtain sufficient counterplay.

18. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{W}d5$

Sveshnikov himself recommends 18... $\mathbb{W}a6$! here.

19.0-0 $\mathbb{W}xb3$

19... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 20.f3±

20. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$

Diagram 4-7

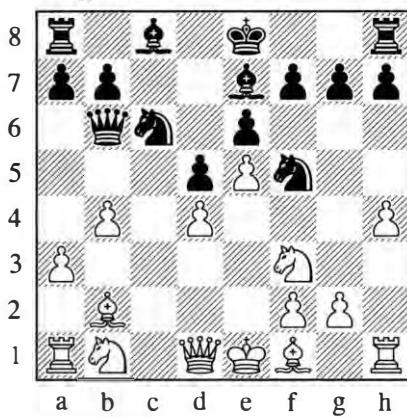
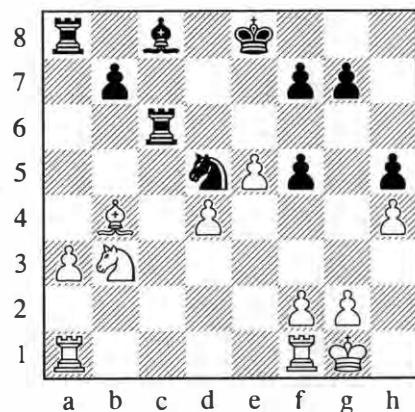


Diagram 4-8**22.Qa5!±**

White was later able to convert his advantage in material.

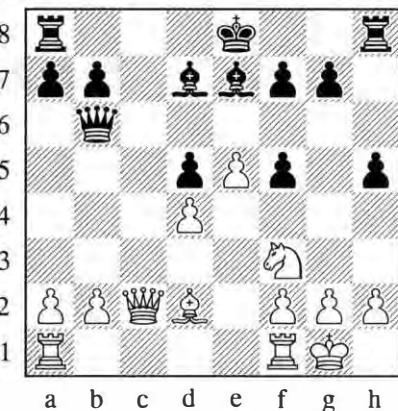
In the exercises which follow, many useful ideas will crop up too. Make your decisions and take a look at the solutions to see how well you are already mastering these sorts of positions.

Diagram 4-8

Exercises

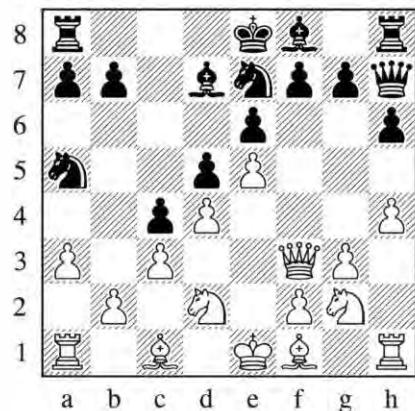
► Ex. 4-1 ◀

★★★



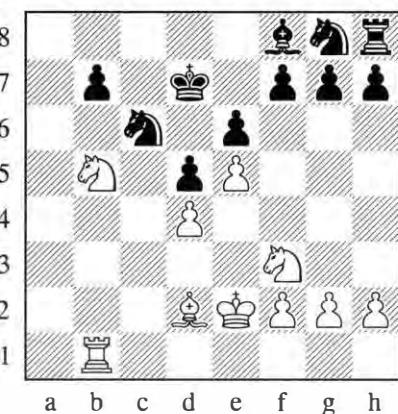
► Ex. 4-4 ◀

★★★



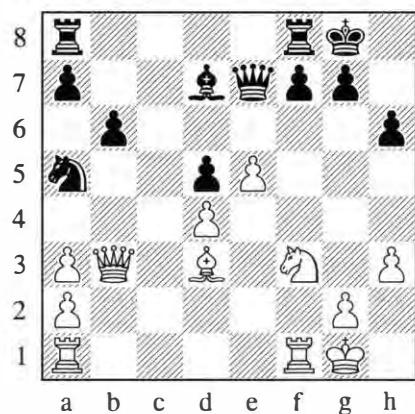
► Ex. 4-2 ◀

★★



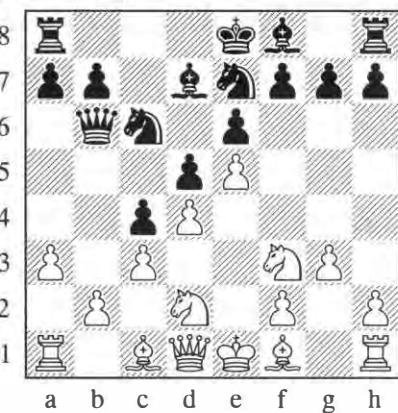
► Ex. 4-5 ◀

★★



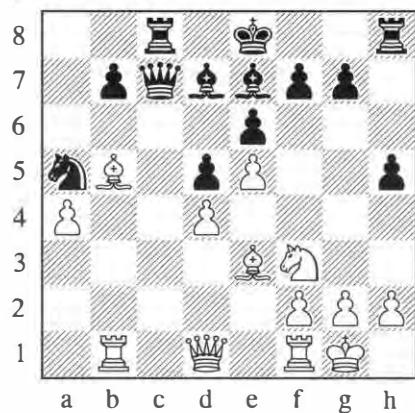
► Ex. 4-3 ◀

★★



► Ex. 4-6 ◀

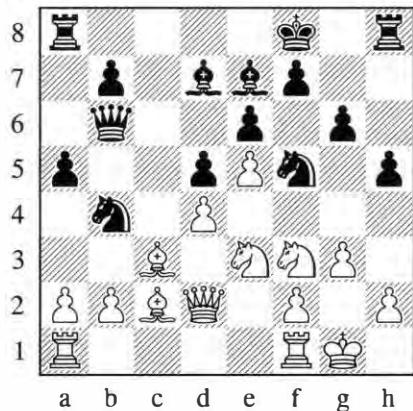
★★



Exercises

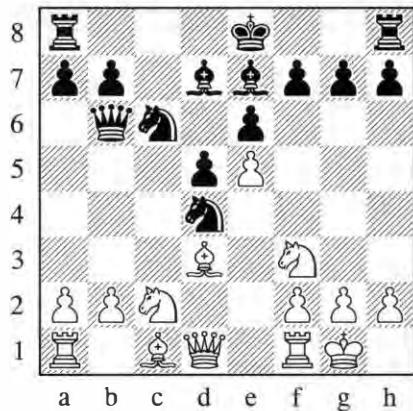
► Ex. 4-7 ◀

★★



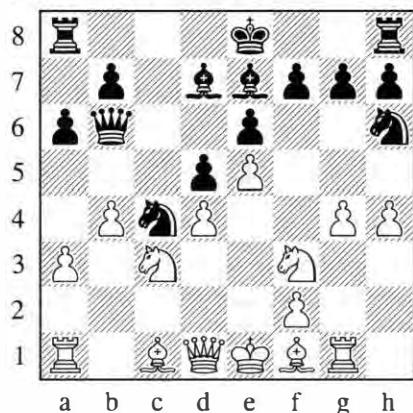
► Ex. 4-10 ◀

★



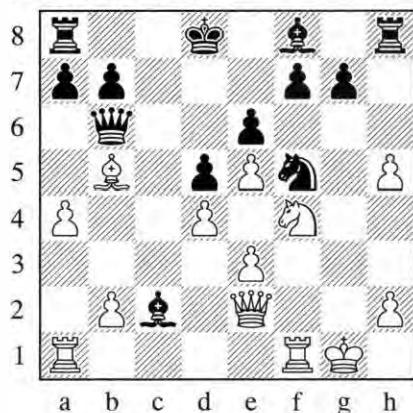
► Ex. 4-8 ◀

★★



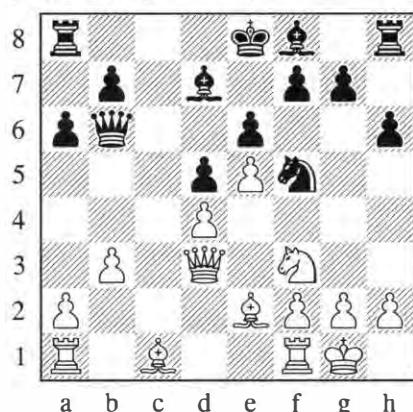
► Ex. 4-11 ◀

★★



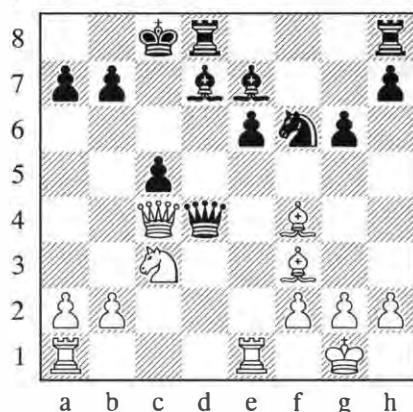
► Ex. 4-9 ◀

★★



► Ex. 4-12 ◀

★★★



Solutions

Ex. 4-1

E.Sveshnikov – A.Dreev

St. Petersburg 1993

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♜c6 5.♗f3 ♜d7
6.♗e2 ♜ge7 7.♕a3 cxd4 8.cxd4 ♜f5 9.♕c2
♕b4 10.0–0 ♜xc2 11.♗xc2 h5 12.♗d2 ♜e7
13.♗d3 ♜b6 14.♗xf5 exf5

Diagram Ex. 4-1

15.♗g5!

(3 points)

Neither 15.a4 nor 15.♗ac1 is very promising, and each gets only 1 consolation point. Black can reply, for example, 15...♝c8.

The move in the game swaps off his opponent's good bishop. And so White obtains the initiative on the dark squares.

**15...♝xg5 16.♗xg5 ♜xd4 17.♗fd1 ♜h4
18.♗d2± ♜c4**

The alternatives do not solve Black's problems:

a) 18...♝e6 19.f4!+– and White is threatening to trap the black queen after ♜e3 followed by g3 and h3.

b) 18...♝c6 19.e6 f6 20.♗f7 0–0 21.♗d6 ♜fd8 22.♗xf5±

c) 18...♝d8 19.f4 ♜c6 20.h3! d4 21.♗h2!+– and once again the black queen is in trouble.

**19.♗ac1 ♜b5 20.a4 ♜b3 21.♗c3 ♜b6
22.♗xd5 0–0 23.a5! ♜xb2 24.♗f3!+–**

White threatens both ♜xd7 and ♜xh5.

Ex. 4-2

E.Sveshnikov – A.Grosar

Celje 2003

20.♗a7!

(2 points)

White sets his opponent some unpleasant problems. But 20.♗d6? (also 2 points) would be just as good: 20...♝xd6 21.exd6 ♜xd6 22.♗xb7 f6 23.♗c1 e5 24.dxe5† ♜e6!±

20...♝xa7?

The correct defence was 20...♝c7 21.♗xc6 bxc6! (21...♝xc6 22.♗c1† ♜d7 23.♗a5±)

22.♗a5† ♜c8 23.♗b6 ♜c7 24.♗b3† ♜c8 25.♗g5 ♜h6 and Black is holding the position.

21.♗xb7† ♜e8 22.♗b8†! ♜d7 23.♗xf8+– ♜c6 24.♗cl h6 25.h4 g6 26.♗xh6 ♜xh6 27.♗xg8 ♜h5 28.g4 ♜h7 29.♗e3 ♜e7 30.♗f8 ♜c6 31.♗g5 ♜xh4 32.♗xf7† ♜e8 33.f3 ♜h1 34.♗f6

1–0

Ex. 4-3

M.Illéscas – A.Yusupov

Linares 1992

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♜b6 5.♗f3 ♜d7
6.a3 c4 7.♗bd2 ♜c6 8.g3 ♜ge7??

Diagram Ex. 4-3

Danger! Tactics!

9.♗xc4!+–

(2 points)

9...♛a5

Of course 9...dxc4 would be bad, in view of 10.♗xc4 followed by ♜d6†+–.

10.♗e2 ♜b5 11.b4+–

Black obtains no compensation for the pawn he has lost and went on to lose the game after a rather hopeless struggle.

Ex. 4-4

E.Sveshnikov – V.Eingorn

Sochi 1986

1.e4 c5 2.c3 e6 3.d4 d5 4.e5 ♜c6 5.♗f3 ♜b6
6.a3 c4 7.g3 ♜d7 8.h4 ♜a5 9.♗bd2 ♜c6
10.♗g5 h6 11.♗h3 ♜a4 12.♗f3 ♜c2 13.♗f4
♗e7 14.♗g2 ♜h7

Diagram Ex. 4-4

15.b4!

(3 points)

Black must take the pawn, but then his queen is forced to retreat to g8. White obtains a lead in development, which represents more than enough compensation for the pawn sacrifice. If you don't take any risks, you don't get to drink the champagne!

Solutions

For 15.b3 you get 2 points, because there is no need to give your opponent the extra option of 15... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$.

Only 1 consolation point for the more passive moves 15.h5 or 15. $\mathbb{Q}e2$.

15...cxb3 16. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{W}g8$ 17. $\mathbb{B}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{B}c8$ 19.c4 dxc4 20. $\mathbb{Q}dxc4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$

21... $\mathbb{B}xc4?$ is answered by 22. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 23. $\mathbb{W}xb3!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ 24.f3 with a decisive attack.

22. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 23.0-0??

Although this won in the end, 23. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ would have been even more energetic: 23... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}e4\pm$

Ex. 4-5

E.Sveshnikov – S.Iskusnyh

St. Petersburg 1997

1.e4 c5 2.c3 e6 3.d4 d5 4.e5 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 7.0-0 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ cxd4 9.cxd4 $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ 10.bxa3 $\mathbb{W}b6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 12.fxe3 $\mathbb{W}d8$ 13. $\mathbb{W}b1$ b6 14.e4 0-0 15. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ h6 (\square 15...dxe4 16. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ h6±) 16.exd5 exd5 17.h3 $\mathbb{W}e7$ 18. $\mathbb{W}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$

Diagram Ex. 4-5

19. $\mathbb{W}b4!$

(2 points)

19. $\mathbb{W}xd5?$ would not be so good: 19... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 20. $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 21.exd6 $\mathbb{Q}ad8\mp$ (Psakhis)

19... $\mathbb{W}xb4??$

This just improves his opponent's pawn structure unnecessarily. 19... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ would be better, when play may continue 20. $\mathbb{W}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 21. $\mathbb{B}ac1$ $\mathbb{B}ac8$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{B}xc1$ 23. $\mathbb{B}xc1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6=$ (Psakhis).

20.axb4 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 21.a4 $\mathbb{B}fc8$ 22. $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 23.g4 $\mathbb{B}ac8$ 24. $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}h4\pm$

White intends $\mathbb{Q}f5$.

Ex. 4-6

E.Sveshnikov – A.Fominyh

Russian Ch, Elista 1996

1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3.c3 e6 4.d4 d5 5. $\mathbb{E}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}ge7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 9.0-0 cxd4 10.cxd4 h5 11.b4 $\mathbb{B}c8$ 12. $\mathbb{B}b1$ a6 13.a4 $\mathbb{W}b6$ 14.b5 axb5 15. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$

Diagram Ex. 4-6

18. $\mathbb{Q}g5\pm$

(2 points)

The typical idea: White swaps off the dark-squared bishops. See Ex. 4-1.

1 consolation point for 18. $\mathbb{Q}d3$; Black's French bishop is no longer bad as it is attacking the a4-pawn. You also get 1 point for the solid move 18. $\mathbb{Q}d3$.

18... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 19. $\mathbb{B}xb5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 20.h4 b6 21. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 23. $\mathbb{B}b3!$

White plans $\mathbb{B}f3$.

23... $\mathbb{B}a7$ 24. $\mathbb{B}c2$ g6 25. $\mathbb{B}f3$ $\mathbb{B}f8?$

25...0-0-0! is better, and if 26. $\mathbb{B}f6$ (intending 27.g4! hxg4 28.h5), then 26... $\mathbb{W}b4!$.

Now Black is playing practically without the f8-rook.

26. $\mathbb{B}b1!$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 27. $\mathbb{B}b4$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 28. $\mathbb{B}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ $\mathbb{B}h8$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 31. $\mathbb{W}b3$ $\mathbb{B}c6$ 32. $\mathbb{B}b5$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 33.a5!+

White went on to win.

Ex. 4-7

E.Sveshnikov – L.Ortega

Sochi 1987

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}ge7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ cxd4 7.cxd4 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{W}a5\pm$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ a5 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ g6 13.0-0 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ h5 (14...0-0 15. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ and then $\mathbb{Q}f6\pm$) 15. $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 16.g3 $\mathbb{Q}b4$

Diagram Ex. 4-7

17. $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$

(2 points)

Sveshnikov's favourite plan: he weakens his opponent's kingside.

Solutions

1 consolation point for 17.♕b1 or 17.♕fc1.

17...gxfs

17...exf5? 18.a3+–

18.h4 ♕b5 19.♕fd1 ♘a6 20.♕g5± ♕c8

21.a3

Better is the immediate 21.♕g2.

21...♕c6 22.♕g2?! ♕g7 23.♕e1 ♕c4 24.♕f4 ♕b3 25.♘e3

Intending ♘f3 followed by ♕xh5.

25...♗b5

25...♕xg5? is an improvement, and if 26.♕xe6†! fxe6 27.♕xg5†, then not 27...♕f7? 28.♕f6†+–, but 27...♕h7 and White has no more than a perpetual check after 28.♕xh5†.

26.♕acl ♕c4 27.♕g2 ♕cg8 28.♘f3 ♕f8?

Better is either 28..♕xg5 or 28...♕h6!??

29.♕fxe6†!

1–0

Ex. 4-8

E.Sveshnikov – V.Doroshkiewich

St. Petersburg 2000

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♘b6 5.♕f3 ♕c6 6.a3 ♕h6 7.b4 cxd4 8.cxd4 ♕f5 9.♕b2 ♕e7 10.h4 ♕d7 11.g4 ♕h6 12.♕gl a6 13.♕c3 ♕a5 14.♕cl ♕c4

Diagram Ex. 4-8

15.♕xc4

(1 point)

The alternative 15.♕d3 ♕c8 16.g5 earns 1 point; after the forced reply 16...♕g8, Black retains chances for counterplay.

The move in the game is even better, since it begins a successful operation in the centre.

15...dxc4

After 15...♘c6!? there follows 16.♕xh6 gxh6 17.♕d2 dxc4 18.♕de4 0–0–0 19.♘f3 ♕e8 20.0–0–0± and White can meet 20...a5 with 21.d5 exd5 22.♕xd5+–.

16.d5!

(another 1 point)

16...exd5 17.♕xd5± ♘c6 18.♕xh6 gxh6 19.♕xe7 ♕xe7 20.♕e2 h5 21.♕d4 ♘g6 22.g5

22.e6! would be even stronger: both 22...fxe6 23.0–0–0 and 22...♕xe6 23.♕f5† ♕e8 24.♕e5 give White a strong attack.

22...♗hd8 23.♕e3

23.♕g3!?

23...♕a4?!

Better is 23...♗ac8.

24.♕f4

Stronger is 24.♕g3! followed by ♘f3.

24...♗d5?! 25.♕f5† ♕e6 26.♕d4† ♕e7 27.♕f5† ♕e6 28.♕e3 ♘xe5 29.♘xc4†±

Ex. 4-9

E.Sveshnikov – D.Brunen

Bled 2000

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♘c6 5.♕f3 ♕d7 6.♕e2 ♘ge7 7.♕a3 cxd4 8.cxd4 ♕f5 9.♕c2 ♘b4 10.0–0–0 ♘xc2 11.♘xc2 ♘b6 12.♘d3 h6 13.b3 a6

Diagram Ex. 4-9

14.a4!±

(2 points)

Otherwise ...♕b5 follows and Black succeeds in exchanging his bad French bishop.

14...♕b4 15.♕b2 g5?! 16.♕acl ♕c8 17.♕xc8† ♕xc8 18.♕e1 ♕d7 19.♕c2 ♕e7 20.♕e3 ♘b4 21.♕d1 ♕xe3 22.♕c3 ♘b6 23.fxe3 h5 24.♕d2 g4 25.♕a5 ♘a7 26.♕b4 ♕g5 27.♕c2 ♕g8 28.♕f2 ♕g7 29.♕g6!?+–

Ex. 4-10

Opening variation

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♘c6 5.♕f3 ♕d7 6.♕e2 ♘ge7 7.♕a3 cxd4 8.cxd4 ♕f5 9.♕c2 ♘b6 10.0–0–0 ♕e7 11.♕d3?! (Δ♕xf5; 11.g4 ♕h4!) 11...♕fxd4??

Diagram Ex. 4-10

White wins a piece by means of a pin.

12.♕fxd4 ♕xd4 13.♕e3 ♕c5 14.b4+–

(1 point)

Solutions

Ex. 4-11

E.Sveshnikov – S.Dolmatov

USSR Team Ch, Nabereznye Chelny 1988

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♜c6 5.♘f3 ♜d7
 6.♗e2 ♜ge7 7.♘a3 cxd4 8.cxd4 ♜f5 9.♘c2
 ♜b6 10.0–0 ♜a5 11.g4 ♜e7 12.♘fe1 ♜b5
 13.♘d3 h5 14.gxh5 ♜f5 15.♗e3 ♜c4 16.a4
 ♜cxe3 17.fxe3 ♜c4 18.♘f4 ♜b3 19.♗b5†
 ♜d8 20.♗e2 ♜xc2

Diagram Ex. 4-11

21.a5!

(2 points)

A necessary intermediate move. If 21...♝xc2, then 21...♞xe3.

21...♝c7 22.♝fc1 ♜c8 23.a6!± b6 24.♗a4

♝c4! 25.♝xc2 ♜xe2 26.♝xc8†?

Better is 26.♝xe2 ♜e7 27.♝g2! ♜c4 28.♝f2
 ♜b4 (28...♝h4† 29.♝e2 ♜b4? 30.b3 b5
 31.♘d3+–) 29.♝a2±.

26...♝xc8 27.♝xe2 ♜e7†

Ex. 4-12

O.Romanishin – V.Ivanchuk

Irkutsk 1986

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♜c6 5.♘f3 ♜d7
 6.♗e2 f6 7.0–0 fxe5 8.♘xe5 ♜xe5 9.dxe5
 ♜c7 10.c4 ♜xe5 (10...0–0–0? 11.cxd5
 ♜xe5 12.♗f3 exd5 13.♗e1 ♜d6=) 11.♗h5†
 g6 12.♗f3 0–0–0 13.♗e1 ♜d6 14.♘c3! dxc4
 15.♗e2 ♜f6 16.♗xc4 ♜e7 17.♗f4 ♜d4?!

Diagram Ex. 4-12

18.♘b5!!

(2 points)

18...♞xb5

18...♝xc4? 19.♘xa7#

19.♘xb7†!

(another 1 point)

Black now resigned. 19...♞xb7 is met by
 20.♝xb7† ♜c8 21.♝c6#.

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 26

22 points and above → Excellent

17 points and above → Good

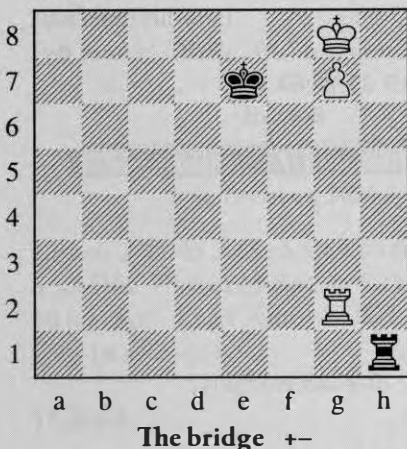
12 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Elementary positions
- ✓ The Philidor position
- ✓ The bridge
- ✓ Second method of defence
- ✓ The 'short' side
- ✓ The flank attack
- ✓ The stalemate defence

Diagram 5-1



Simple rook endings

Rook endings occur very frequently in praxis. In order to better understand and play these important endgames, you need to have some specific knowledge concerning the elementary positions with rook and pawn versus rook.

There are only a limited number of positions that you have to study, but the evaluation of these positions and the typical methods of play must be thoroughly assimilated. In this lesson we shall examine some of the most important positions and methods.

The bridge

Diagram 5-1

The bridge is a typical and universal method which demonstrates the way to win in positions where there is a pawn on the 7th rank. Of course it does not work only in the position in the diagram.

1. $\mathbb{R}e2\#$

It is always a good idea to drive the opposing king as far away as possible from the passed pawn.

1... $\mathbb{Q}d7$

If 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ were played, the white king would be able to use the e8-square: 2. $\mathbb{R}f8$ $\mathbb{R}f1\#$ 3. $\mathbb{R}e8!$ $\mathbb{R}g1$ 4. $\mathbb{R}e7$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ (4... $\mathbb{R}g2$ 5. $\mathbb{R}f8$ intending $\mathbb{R}f7$ then $g8\mathbb{W}$) 5. $\mathbb{R}f8!$ $\mathbb{R}a8\#$ 6. $\mathbb{R}e8$ and wins.

1... $\mathbb{R}f6$ is answered by 2. $\mathbb{R}f8$ and then $g8\mathbb{W}$.

2. $\mathbb{R}e4$

White prepares to build the bridge (here the blocking of the g-file). The attempt to move away with the king does not yet achieve anything as Black simply delivers checks.

2... $\mathbb{R}h2$

After 2... $\mathbb{R}f1$ 3. $\mathbb{R}h4$ $\mathbb{R}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{R}h8$ the road is clear for the pawn.

3. $\mathbb{R}f7$ $\mathbb{R}f2\#$ 4. $\mathbb{R}g6$ $\mathbb{R}g2\#$ 5. $\mathbb{R}f6$

White now threatens $\mathbb{R}e5-g5$.

5... $\mathbb{R}f2\#$

5... $\mathbb{R}d6$ is met by 6. $\mathbb{R}d4\#$ (but not 6. $\mathbb{R}e5??$ $\mathbb{R}xg7=$) 6... $\mathbb{R}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{R}d8$ $\mathbb{R}f2\#$ 8. $\mathbb{R}e5$ and wins.

6. $\mathbb{R}g5$ $\mathbb{R}g2\#$ 7. $\mathbb{R}g4$

The bridge has been successfully built and White wins.

The Philidor position

Diagram 5-2

1... $\mathbb{R}b6!$

Philidor's defensive method is very simple: Black keeps the rook on the 6th rank until White advances the pawn to f6, and then Black activates his rook, by posting it on the first rank and giving checks from behind.

Passive defence, where the black rook remains on the back rank, leads to a loss against a bishop's pawn: 1... $\mathbb{B}g8?$ 2. $\mathbb{B}g6 \mathbb{B}c8$ 3.f6 $\mathbb{B}d8$ 4. $\mathbb{B}g7\#$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 5. $\mathbb{B}h7$ (Note that with a knight's pawn or a rook's pawn this winning manoeuvre is not possible, and the game would end in a draw!) 5... $\mathbb{B}g8$ 6.f7# $\mathbb{B}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{B}h8\#$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 8. $\mathbb{B}xd8+$

1... $\mathbb{B}c8?$ 2. $\mathbb{B}g6 \mathbb{B}c1$ also loses, on account of 3. $\mathbb{B}a8\#$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 4.f6# $\mathbb{B}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{B}e8\#$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 6.f7+-

1... $\mathbb{B}b1$ is analysed below.

2.f6 $\mathbb{B}b1$ 3. $\mathbb{B}g6 \mathbb{B}g1\#$ 4. $\mathbb{B}f5 \mathbb{B}f1\#$ =

Diagram 5-3

1... $\mathbb{B}b1$

The second defensive method is important because:

1) sometimes the safer first method cannot be employed;

2) it also demonstrates some important endgame ideas, such as the *short side* and the *flank attack*.

Let's remind ourselves: 1... $\mathbb{B}b6!$ 2.f6 $\mathbb{B}b1$ = is the first and best defensive method in the Philidor position.

2. $\mathbb{B}g6$

If 2. $\mathbb{B}f6$, then we can transpose into the main Philidor defensive method with 2... $\mathbb{B}b6\#$.

2... $\mathbb{B}f1\#$

The best defence. Black aims to prevent the move f5-f6 (after White's rook checks).

2... $\mathbb{B}b6\#$ loses to 3.f6.

2... $\mathbb{B}g1\#$ is less precise, but is also sufficient for a draw: 3. $\mathbb{B}f6 \mathbb{B}g8!$ 4. $\mathbb{B}a8\#$ $\mathbb{B}h7$ 5. $\mathbb{B}f7 \mathbb{B}b1$ 6.f6 $\mathbb{B}b7\#$ 7. $\mathbb{B}e6 \mathbb{B}b6\#$ =

3. $\mathbb{B}f6$

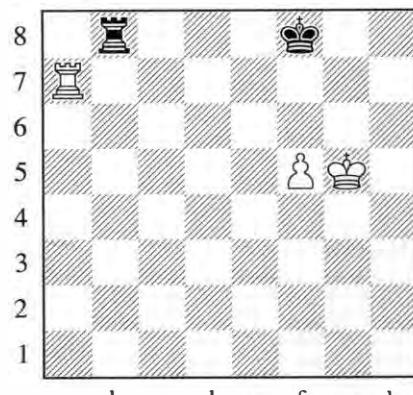
3. $\mathbb{B}a8\#$ achieves nothing, on account of 3... $\mathbb{B}e7=$ and the pawn gets no further.

3... $\mathbb{B}g8!$

Diagram 5-4

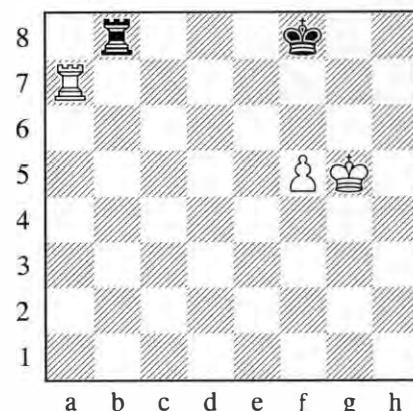
The king absolutely has to go to the short side.

Diagram 5-2



The main method of defence in the Philidor position =

Diagram 5-3



The second defensive method in the Philidor position =

Diagram 5-4

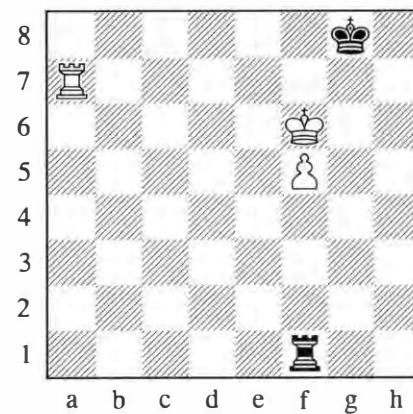
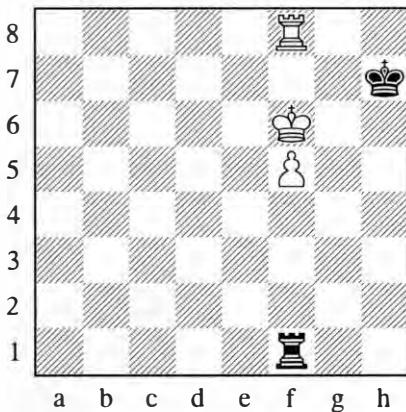
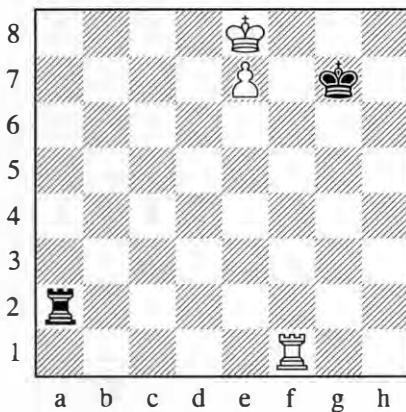


Diagram 5-5**Diagram 5-6****Flank attack 1 =**

3... $\mathbb{Q}e8?$ would be bad, because of 4. $\mathbb{R}a8\# \mathbb{Q}d7$
5. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ (White prepares the move f5-f6) 5... $\mathbb{Q}f7$
6. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}e7$ 7.f6# $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 8. $\mathbb{R}a8 \mathbb{Q}g2\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{R}f2$ 10.f7
 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 11. $\mathbb{R}al$ and we have reached the type of position dealt with above, where White wins by building a bridge: 11... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 12. $\mathbb{R}d1\# \mathbb{Q}c7$ 13. $\mathbb{R}d4!$ $\mathbb{R}gl$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e7$
 $\mathbb{Q}el\#$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{R}f1\#$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{R}el\#$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ and wins.

4. $\mathbb{Q}a8\# \mathbb{Q}h7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f8$

The threat is $\mathbb{Q}e7$ followed by f6. However, Black has at his disposal a typical defence, which is once more linked with the activation of his rook.

Diagram 5-5

5... $\mathbb{R}al!$

Black wants to start checking from the side.

6. $\mathbb{Q}e8$

Or 6. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{R}a7\#$.

6... $\mathbb{R}f1!$

Once more White is prevented from advancing his f-pawn.

7. $\mathbb{Q}e7\# \mathbb{Q}g8=$

Flank attack against a pawn on the 7th rank

Diagram 5-6

N.Grigoriev

1937

Here Black can exploit the unfavourable position of the white rook and save the game with a flank attack.

However, note that if it were White to move, then the position very much resembles a bridging position and White can win very easily! The simplest way is 1. $\mathbb{R}g1\# \mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}e1!$ and next the white king will clear the way for his pawn.

1... $\mathbb{R}a8\#$

The flank attack saves Black!

1... $\mathbb{R}d2?$ loses, on the other hand, in view of 2. $\mathbb{R}g1\#$
 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}g4\#$. Once more the bridging method!

2. $\mathbb{Q}d7 \mathbb{R}a7\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{R}a6\#$

But not 3... $\mathbb{R}a8?$ due to 4. $\mathbb{R}a1!$ $\mathbb{R}b8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$. A typical winning method!

4. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{R}a5\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{R}a6\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c7$

The rook does not attack the e-pawn until the white king has moved far enough away from it; thus 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ is met by 6... $\mathbb{R}e6=$.

6... $\mathbb{R}a7\#$

Diagram 5-7**N.Grigoriev**

1937

1... $\mathbb{R}b8\#$

For flank attacks it is very important that the distance between the black rook and the pawn consists of at least three files. If the distance is smaller, the attack will be ineffective, as we shall soon see.

2. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{B}b7\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{B}b8$ Or 3... $\mathbb{B}b6\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{B}e6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7+-$.**4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{B}a8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a1!$ $\mathbb{B}h8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7+-$** **Flank attack against a pawn on the 6th rank****Diagram 5-8****N.Grigoriev**

Black must act at once. If it were White to move, he would simply force the opposing king further away with $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$, advance his pawn to the 7th rank and then prepare a bridge.

1... $\mathbb{B}a7\#$!

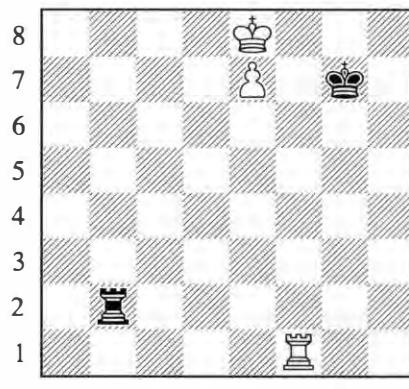
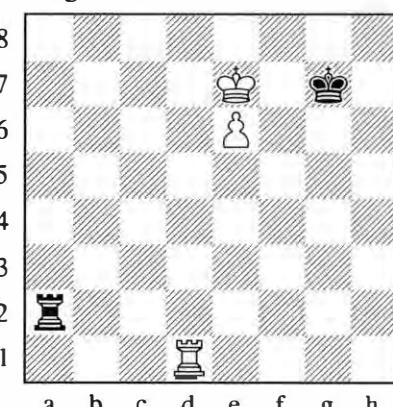
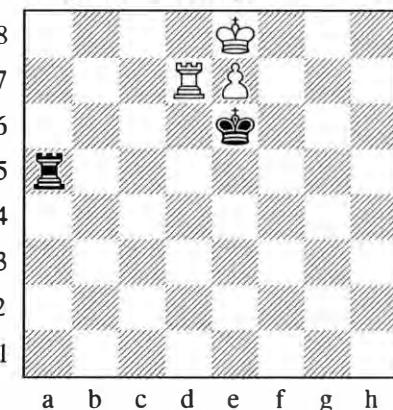
This flank attack is the only salvation.

2. $\mathbb{Q}d7$

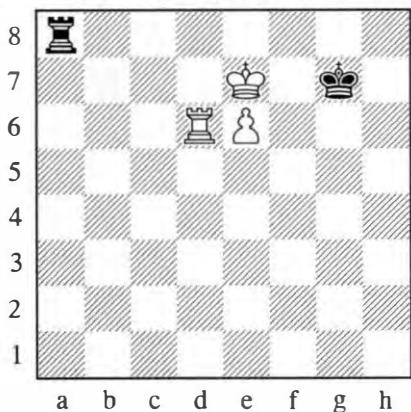
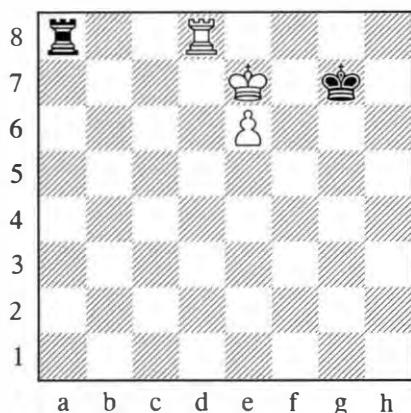
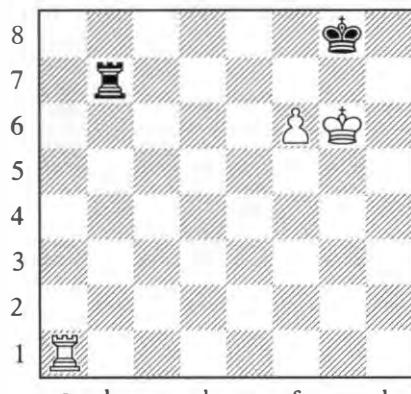
White wants to advance his pawn after the discovered check.

If 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6$, then 2... $\mathbb{B}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{B}b1$ $\mathbb{B}a6\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{B}a2=$ (Philidor defence).**2... $\mathbb{B}a8$**

There are many other moves which do not lose:

a) 2... $\mathbb{B}a5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{B}a8!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6=$)3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (but not 3... $\mathbb{Q}g8?$ 4.e7 $\mathbb{B}a8\#$ [4... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2+-$] 5. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{B}a7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c8+-$) 4.e7 $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ **Diagram 5-9**5. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{B}f5\#$ =b) 2... $\mathbb{B}a1=$ is also good enough.c) On the other hand, 2... $\mathbb{B}a6??$ would be bad. This is the only move on the a-file which loses! 3. $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4.e7 $\mathbb{B}a8\#$ (if 4... $\mathbb{Q}e6$, then 5. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#+-$ and Black has no saving check on the f-file as in variation 'a') 5. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{B}a7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{B}a8\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d7+-$ **3. $\mathbb{Q}d8$** After 3. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ Black can have more than one way to hold:**Diagram 5-7****Flank attack 2 +-****Diagram 5-8****Flank attack 3 =****Diagram 5-9 (analysis)**

Endgame 1

Diagram 5-10 (analysis)**Diagram 5-11****Diagram 5-12****Stalemate defence =**

a) 3... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}a6\#$
7. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}a7\#$

b) 3... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ (or 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}a6\#$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5.e7 $\mathbb{Q}a8\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$

Another very important variation is 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$? after which there is only a single defence!

Diagram 5-10

Black must wait with 3... $\mathbb{Q}g6$! (not 3... $\mathbb{Q}a7\#$? 4. $\mathbb{Q}e8+-$ nor 3... $\mathbb{Q}b8?$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c6+-$) and now a draw will result after, for example, 4. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}a7\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}a6\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}a5\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$.

Diagram 5-11

3... $\mathbb{Q}a7\#$!

The simplest solution. Black must prevent $\mathbb{Q}e8$ followed by e7.

Thus 3... $\mathbb{Q}a2?$ would be bad, because of 4. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5.e7 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b8+-$.

But here 3... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ is also possible! After 4. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (or 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}a8!$) there follows 4... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$!
4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}a6\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}a5\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$

Now e7 is no longer a threat.

7. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8=$

The stalemate defence**Diagram 5-12**

Another useful defensive idea.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g7\#!=$

Black must of course avoid passive defence!

1... $\mathbb{Q}b8?$ loses after 2. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5.f7#.

2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$

Or 2.fxg7 stalemate.

2... $\mathbb{Q}g2=$

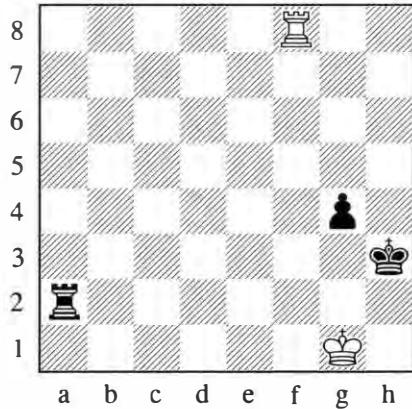
With a transition to the Philidor defence.

In the exercises you will need these ideas and methods in order to find the correct solutions. To understand the positions better, you may perhaps have to return to this lesson at some later point and repeat the instructional material. You can also try to explain the subject to another player; this will help you understand the lesson much better yourself!

Exercises

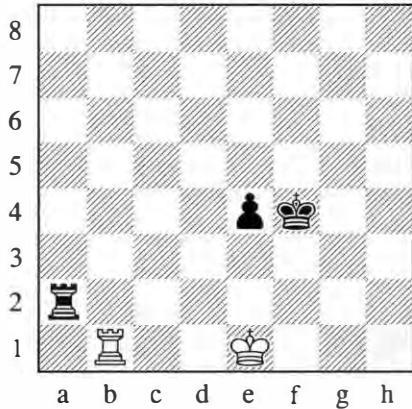
► Ex. 5-1 ◀

★★★



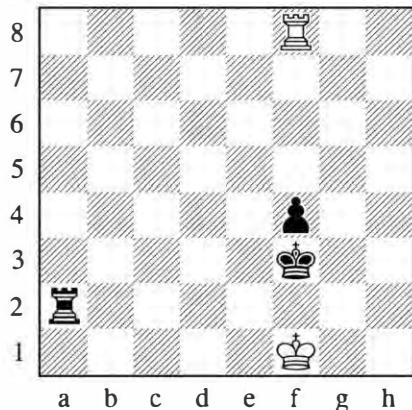
► Ex. 5-4 ◀

★★



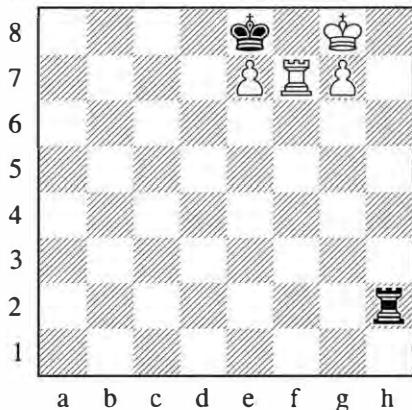
► Ex. 5-2 ◀

★



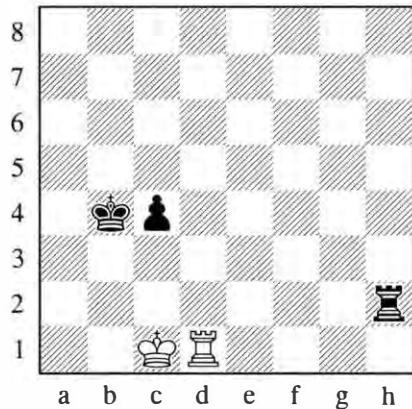
► Ex. 5-5 ◀

★★



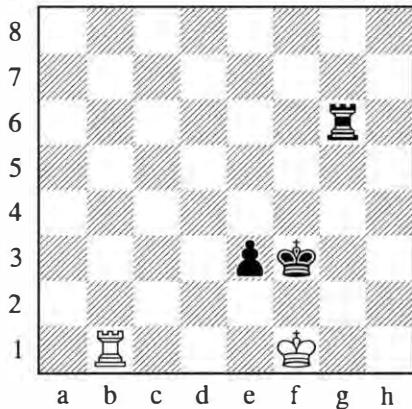
► Ex. 5-3 ◀

★★

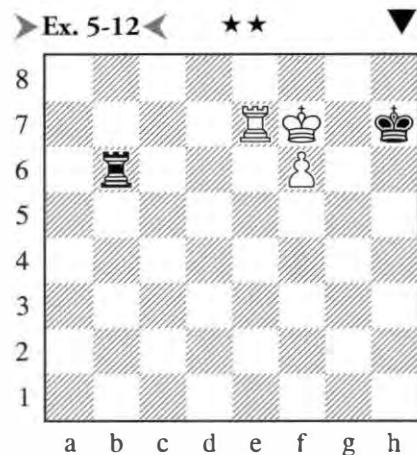
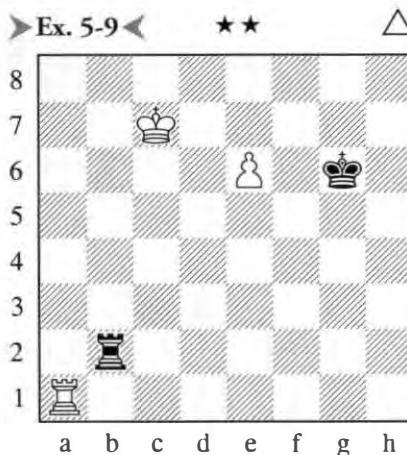
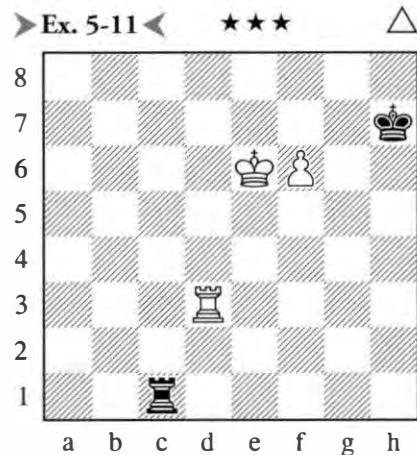
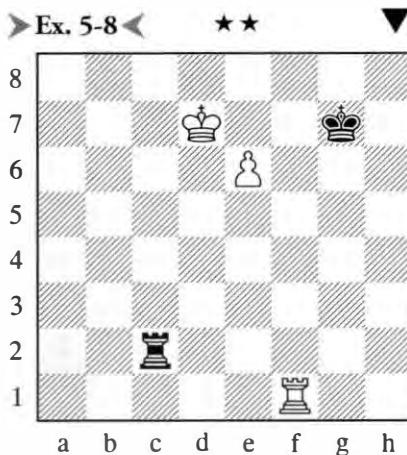
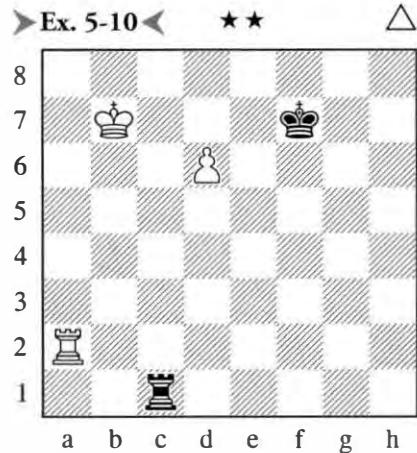
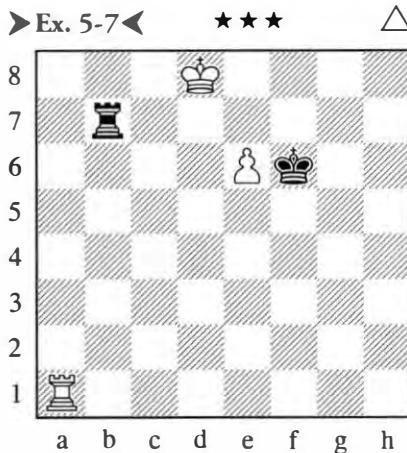


► Ex. 5-6 ◀

★★★



Exercises



Solutions

Ex. 5-1

1. Kg1!=

(3 points)

Passive defence saves the day very simply in the fight against a g-pawn! (cf. Diagram 5-2).

1. Kg8? would be wrong, because of 1... Qg3 2. Kf1 (here we see why the second defensive method fails against the g-pawn; the king has to go to the long side, which is the wrong side) 2... Ra1† 3. Qe2 Rg1 4. Kg7 Qh2+- followed by g4-g3. Black then advances his pawn to g2 and builds the bridge!

Ex. 5-2

1. Qg1!

(1 point)

The short side (see Diagram 5-4).

1... Ra1† 2. Qh2 Rf1 3. Ra8!=

Flank attack.

Ex. 5-3

1. Kd8!

(1 point)

The second defensive method (see Diagram 5-3).

1... Qc3 2. Qb1!

(another 1 point)

The short side.

2... Rh1† 3. Ra2 Qc2

Or 3... Rc1 4. Rg8= with the flank attack.

4. Rg8 Rd1 5. Rh8

Or 5. Rg2† Rd2 6. Rg1 (but not 6. Rg8?

Qc1† -+) 6... c3 7. Rh1 Rd3 8. Ra3!=.

5... c3 6. Rh2† Rd2 7. Rh1 Qd3† 8. Rb3

Rb2† 9. Ra3=

Ex. 5-4

1. Kb3!

(2 points)

The main defence in the Philidor position.

Of course the second defensive method can be employed here too (e.g. after 1. Kb8), but the first method is a safe and simple defence. For that reason only 1 point for 1. Kb8.

1... e3 2. Kb8=

Ex. 5-5

G.Kamsky – A.Yusupov

Linares 1993

1. Rf8†!

(2 points)

Leading to Diagram 5-1 – the bridge.
1... Qxe7 2. Rf3 Re8 3. Rxe3† Qd7 4. Re4
1-0

Ex. 5-6

W.Uhlmann – B.Gulko

Niksic 1978

In the game White played 1. Rb3?? and after 1... Ra6 2. Rb1 Rh6 3. Qg1 Rg6† he had to resign. Passive defence does not work against a central pawn.

White should make use of the stalemate defence! The correct way is:

1. Rb2! Ra6 2. Rf2†!=

(3 points)

Ex. 5-7

1. e7!

(1 point)

1. Re1? does not win, on account of
 1... Rb8†! 2. Qc7 (or 2. Qd7 Rb7† 3. Qc6
 Ra7=) 2... Ra8!=.

1... Rb8†

1... Rxe7 loses immediately to 2. Rf1†.

2. Qc7 Re8 3. Qd6!

(another 1 point)

3... Rb8

3... Rxe7 4. Rf1†+-

4. Rf1† Qg7 5. Qc7 Ra8 6. Ra1!

(another 1 point for this variation)

6... Re8 7. Qd7+-

Ex. 5-8

1... Ra2!

(2 points)

Flank attack.

1... Rd2†? 2. Qe7 Ra2 loses after 3. Rg1†.

2.e7 Ra7†=

Solutions

Ex. 5-9

1. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$

(2 points)

This strong move threatens to advance the pawn. White is exploiting the somewhat unfavourable position of the black king on g6.

Instead 1. $\mathbb{Q}d8 \mathbb{B}b8\#$ does not make any progress; and 1. $\mathbb{Q}f1?$ would be bad: 1... $\mathbb{Q}a2!=$.

1... $\mathbb{Q}c2\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7 \mathbb{Q}d2\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e8 \mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $e7 \mathbb{Q}d3$

5. $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$ —

The bridge.

Ex. 5-10

1. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$

(2 points)

It is correct to cut the black king off from our passed pawn here. Since the black king is on the long side, a flank attack cannot be effective (there will only be two files between the pawn and the rook).

1... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 2. $d7 \mathbb{Q}b3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c8 \mathbb{Q}c3\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d8 \mathbb{Q}c1$
5. $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$ —

The bridge.

Ex. 5-11

G.Sax – V.Tseshkovsky

Rovinj/Zagreb 1975

In the game White played

1. $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$?

With this move White just worsens the position of his rook.

The simplest win is 1. $f7!$.

(3 points)

Black is defenceless:

- a) 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ —
- b) 1... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}c7\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$ —
- c) 1... $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{Q}f1\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}e1\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{Q}a1$
5. $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ —

White has two alternative ways to win, for which you also get 3 points: 1. $\mathbb{Q}d8 \mathbb{Q}e1\#$

2. $\mathbb{Q}f7 \mathbb{Q}a1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$ — or 1. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}c7\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7 \mathbb{Q}c8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8 \mathbb{Q}c7\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}a7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$ —.

However, all other moves do not win!

1... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ †

Black resigned here, although the position is drawn!

2... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $f7$ is followed by 3... $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ (but not 3... $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$? 4. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$ —) 4. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}g7\#$)
4... $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e8 \mathbb{Q}c8\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d7 \mathbb{Q}a8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a3 \mathbb{Q}b8=$.

Compare this example with Ex. 5-7. Here White cannot divert the black rook, since there is an additional file available to it!

Ex. 5-12

J.Capablanca – V.Menchik

Hastings 1929

1... $\mathbb{Q}a6??$

Black must leave the 6th rank quickly! As we saw in Diagram 5-8 (Flank attack 3), Black should choose 1... $\mathbb{Q}b8!=$, 1... $\mathbb{Q}b1=$ or 1... $\mathbb{Q}b5=$.

(2 points)

2. $\mathbb{Q}d7??$

After 2. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$! $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 3. $f7 \mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ — Black would not have a check on the g-file.

2... $\mathbb{Q}a8=$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}a6??$

Repeating the mistake. Correct alternatives are 3... $\mathbb{Q}b8=$, 3... $\mathbb{Q}a1=$ or 3... $\mathbb{Q}h6=$.

4. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$! $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 5. $f7 \mathbb{Q}a8\#$

5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ —

6. $\mathbb{Q}e8 \mathbb{Q}a7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e8??$

7. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ wins simply: 7... $\mathbb{Q}a8\#$ (7... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g8$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}a7\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6 \mathbb{Q}a6\#$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}a8$
11. $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ —

And 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ also wins.

7... $\mathbb{Q}a8\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}a7\#$??

8... $\mathbb{Q}g7!=$

9. $\mathbb{Q}f6$

1-0

A comedy of errors!

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 27

- **24** points and above → Excellent
- **19** points and above → Good
- **13** points → Pass mark

*If you scored less than **13** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

Contents

- ✓ The vulnerability of the pawn centre
- ✓ An alternative strategy
- ✓ Counterplay in the centre

Fighting against the pawn centre

We have already underlined the importance of the pawn centre on several occasions. But a pawn centre may not be advantageous in all circumstances. When under fire from the opposing pieces, especially fianchettoed bishops, it is also vulnerable. It is therefore very important to support the pawn centre in good time with the pieces. If you march your pawns forward prematurely, you can be attacked on all sides by pieces and pawns before you are able to consolidate the position.

The classic central strategy, in which one tries to occupy the centre with pawns as soon as possible, was supplemented in the 20th Century with an alternative strategy: **You first open fire on the opponent's centre with your pieces, so that at a time of your choosing you can break it apart with your pawns.**

This strategy can be seen in many modern openings: from the Grünfeld Defence to the Reti Opening, in the Pirc Defence or in the Alekhine Defence.

R.Letelier Martner – R.Fischer

Leipzig Olympiad 1960

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2.c4 g6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4.e4 0–0 5.e5?!

A risky decision. White advances his pawns too quickly.

5... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 6.f4

Diagram 6-1

6...d6!

Black must attack the pawn centre immediately and energetically!

7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$

7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ would be better, but after 7...dxe5 8.dxe5 $\mathbb{W}xd1\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ f6 White no longer has an opening advantage.

7...c5! 8.dxc5 $\mathbb{Q}c6$!

Black develops his pieces very quickly and tries to open the game.

Diagram 6-1

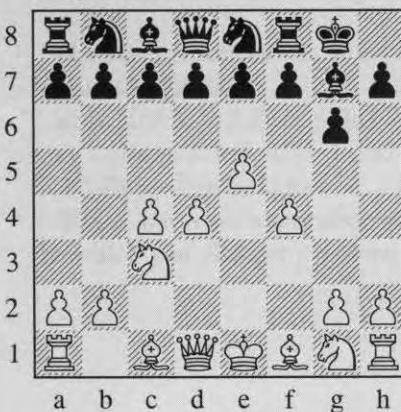


Diagram 6-2**9.cxd6?!**

9.♕f3 ♕g4 10.♕e2 was a better alternative.

9...exd6 10.♕e4?!

White is playing with fire. He would do better to develop his kingside.

10...♕f5! 11.♕g3?

The worst of all strategies is constantly changing plans! The principled move 11.♕xd6 ♕xd6 12.♗xd6 ♘xd6 13.exd6 ♕xb2 14.♗d1 ♕b4 15.♗f2 ♕xa2 16.♗e2 a5 (Fischer) leads after 17.♗d2 ♕c3 18.♗g3 to a complicated position.

11...♕e6 12.♕f3 ♘c7

12...dxe5 13.♗xd8 ♜xd8 14.♕c5 exf4 would also be good for Black.

13.♗b1 dxe5 14.♗f5**Diagram 6-3****14...e4!**

Black counters in the centre!

15.fxe6

15.♗xe4 is not good: 15...gxsf5 16.♗xf5? ♗a5†+ (Fischer)

15...exf3 16.gxf3 f5! 17.f4 ♘f6

The e6-pawn will soon fall.

18.♕e2 ♜fe8 19.♗f2 ♜xe6

Once more Black attacks in the centre!

20.♕e1 ♜ae8 21.♕f3**Diagram 6-4****21...♜xe3! 22.♜xe3 ♜xe3 23.♗xe3 ♜xf4†!****0-1**

Fischer indicated the following variation: 24.♗f2 (24.♗xf4 ♜h6#) 24...♗g4† 25.♗g2 ♜e3† 26.♗f2 ♜d4 27.♗h1 ♜g4† 28.♗f1 ♜xf3+–

However, it is very important to understand that **you must not delay the counterplay in the centre for too long**. Otherwise your opponent will bring his pieces into play and end up controlling the centre. The struggle against the pawn centre is the struggle for the centre! The goal is always to achieve control over important central squares.

We shall continue with a few more examples which show how you must act when faced with a strong pawn centre.

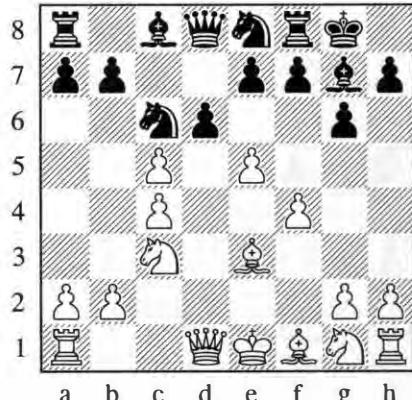
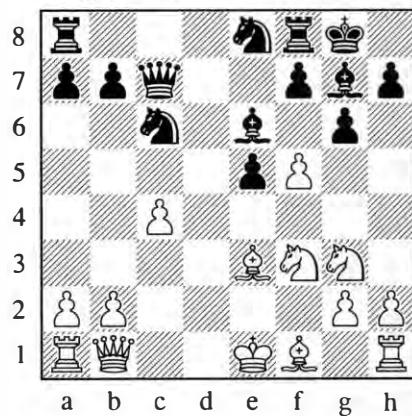
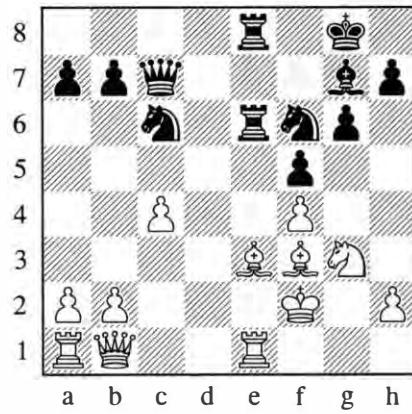
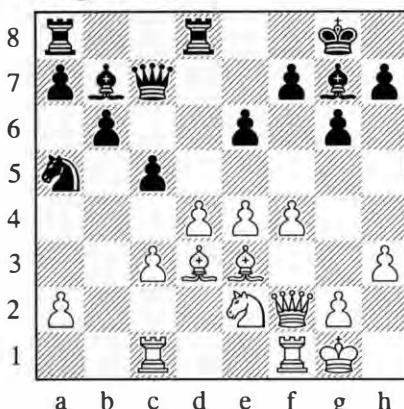
Diagram 6-2**Diagram 6-3****Diagram 6-4**

Diagram 6-5**Diagram 6-5**

S.Gligoric – V.Smyslov
USSR – Yugoslavia, Kiev 1959

1...f5!

A typical idea. It is now not only the d4-pawn which is under attack, but also the e4-pawn.

2.e5

White capitulates in the centre and closes the position. But 2.Qg3 is answered by 2...Qd7! with even more pressure.

2...c4 3.Qc2 Qc6!?

Intending ...Qe7 and ...Qd5. Black has blockaded the opposing pawns and thus won the struggle in the centre. He can go on to exploit his pawn majority on the queenside.

M.Yudovich – M.Botvinnik

Moscow Team Ch 1966

1.e4 g6 2.d4 d6 3.Qc3 c6 4.f4

4.Qf3 or 4.Qe3 are solid alternatives.

4...Qg7 5.Qe3

5.a4 is possible (Botvinnik).

5.Qf3 Qg4 6.Qe3 Qb6 7.Qd2 Qxf3 8.gxf3 Qd7 is the critical variation.

5...Qb6?!

Diagram 6-6



Why is Black developing his queen so early? It is not only aiming at the b2-pawn, which is now in need of defence. The second goal is the pinning of the white pawn on d4. This means that in many variations the important move e4-e5 is no longer possible.

6.Qb1 f5!?

A typical attack on the white centre. 6...e5 would not be so good after 7.Qf3±.

But Black does have alternatives: 6...Qf6? 7.Qf3 0-0± (intending ...d5) or 6...Qh6? 7.Qe2 0-0 8.Qf3 Qg4 9.Qg1±.

7.Qf3?!

It is only this modest move which justifies Botvinnik's risky strategy. The correct response is to sacrifice a pawn for the initiative by 7.e5! dx5 8.fxe5 Qxe5 9.Qf3 (Botvinnik).

7...Qd7?!

7...fxe4 8.Qxe4 Qh6 followed by ...Qf5 would be equally possible.

8.exf5

8.e5 is not as effective as on the previous move:

8...dxe5 9.fxe5 Qxe5 10.Qxe5 Qxe5 11.Qa4 Wa5†

8...gxf5 9.Qd3 Qd6

Black has brought the central e4-square under his control and is not badly placed.

10.We2 Qh6

Diagram 6-7

11.h3

White plays too passively and loses the struggle for the centre. 11.d5! is better: 11...Wc7 12.Qd4 0-0 13.dxc6 bxc6 14.0-0=

11...Qd7 12.0-0 Wc7 13.Qg5?!

This apparently active move achieves nothing for White, since he is not yet in the position of being able to support the activity of the knight with his other pieces. First 13.Qf2 would have been better, intending Qh4 or Qg5-e6.

Diagram 6-8

13...d5!

Black exploits the opportunity: the white knight has wandered off and is no longer ready to occupy the e5-square.

14.Qd2 Wd6 15.Qh2?!

Or 15.We5 Eg8† and Black will continue with ...Qe4.

15...Qe4†

16.Wh5† can be met simply by 16...Wg6. Thanks to the strong position of his knight, Black already has the advantage.

16.Qf3

A rueful retreat...

16...Wg6 17.Qxe4?!

17.Qe1! would be better.

17...fxe4 18.Qe5 Qxe5 19.dxe5?

Better is 19.fxe5 Qf5 20.Qf2 h5 21.Qe2†.

19...Qf5† 20.Qf2?!

20.g4! Qd4 21.We3 (21.f5! Wg7 22.f6 Wf7†)

21...Qf3† 22.Bxf3 exf3 23.Wxf3 (23.f5 Qxf5-+)

23...Wxc2-+ (Botvinnik)

20...h5!-+ 21.b4 Eg8

Threatening 22...e3.

22.Eg1 h4

Diagram 6-7

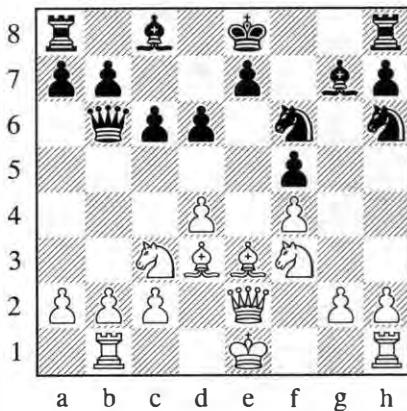


Diagram 6-8

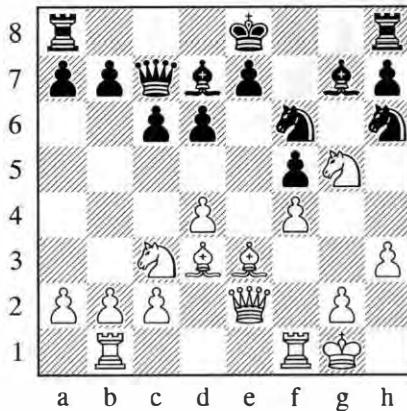


Diagram 6-9

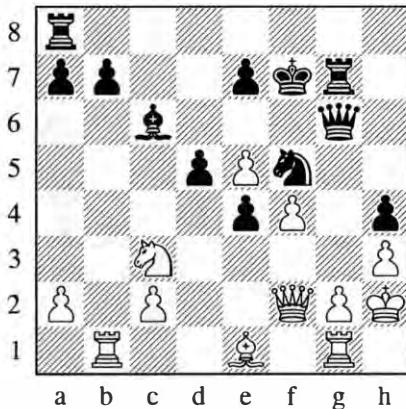
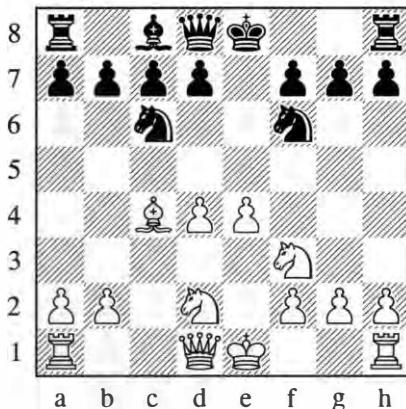


Diagram 6-10



Now the threat is 23...e3 24.♕xe3 ♜g3†+.

23.♔e1 ♜f7

23...e3?! 24.♗f3 0–0–0+

24.b5?!

24.♘e2 is more stubborn.

24...♝g7 25.bxc6 ♜xc6

Diagram 6-9

White has achieved nothing. It is very instructive to observe how Botvinnik has activated and coordinated all his forces.

26.♘e2 e3 27.♗f1 ♞ag8 28.g4 hxg3† 29.♕xg3 d4 30.♗b4 ♘xb4† 31.♕xg3 ♜xc2 32.♗xg7† ♜xg7 0–1

A.Khavin – R.Kholmov

USSR Team Ch, Riga 1954

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♘c4 ♘c5 4.c3 ♘f6 5.d4 exd4 6.cxd4 ♘b4† 7.♕d2 ♘xd2† 8.♘bx d2

Diagram 6-10

8...d5!

With this typical move Black restores the balance in the centre.

9.exd5 ♘xd5 10.0–0

The immediate 10.♗b3 is better: 10...♘a5 (or 10...♘ce7) 11.♗a4† ♘c6=

10...0–0 11.♔e1 ♘b6

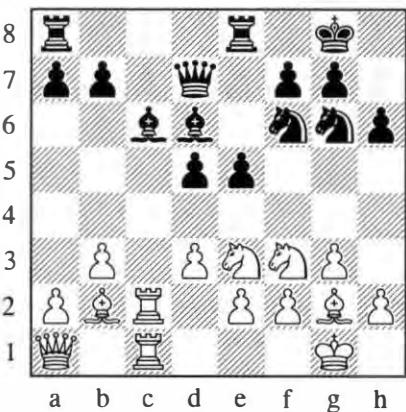
And Black is already somewhat better.

12.♗b3 ♘a5 13.♗c3 ♘axc4 14.♘xc4 ♘xc4 15.♗xc4 ♘e6 16.♗c5 c6†

Exercises

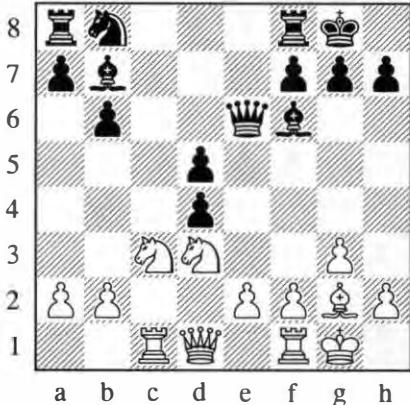
► Ex. 6-1 ◀

★★



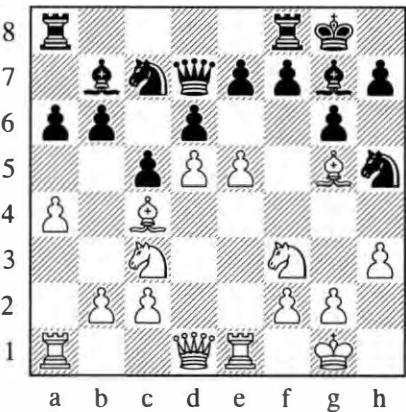
► Ex. 6-4 ◀

★★



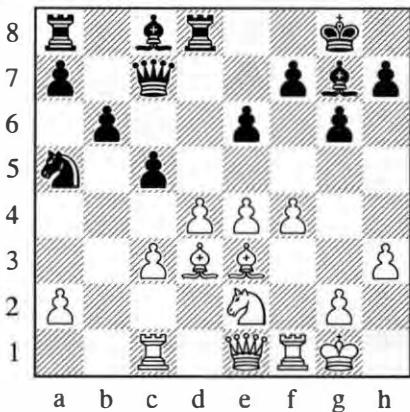
► Ex. 6-2 ◀

★★



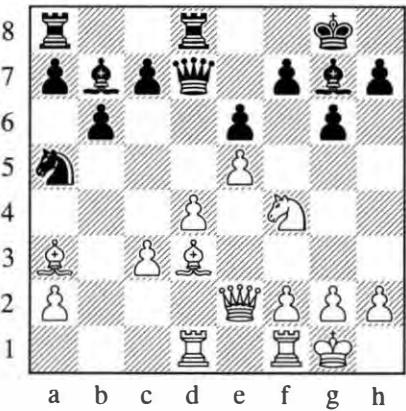
► Ex. 6-5 ◀

★★



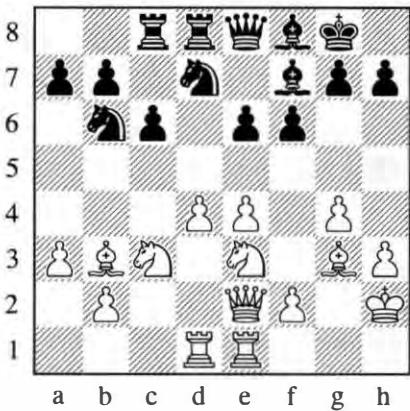
► Ex. 6-3 ◀

★★



► Ex. 6-6 ◀

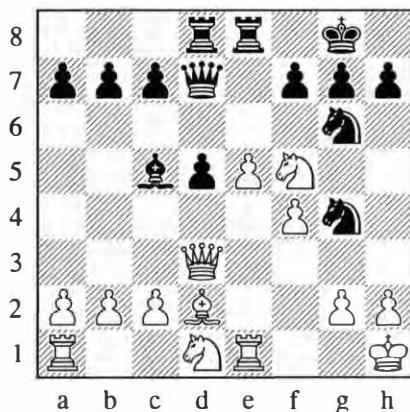
★



Exercises

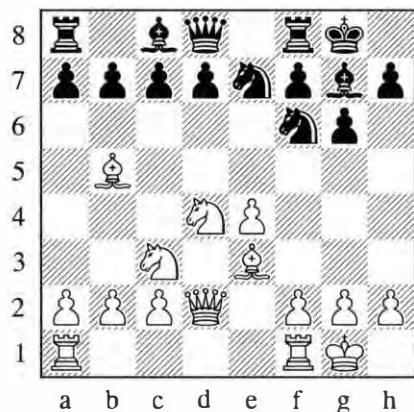
► Ex. 6-7 ◀

★★



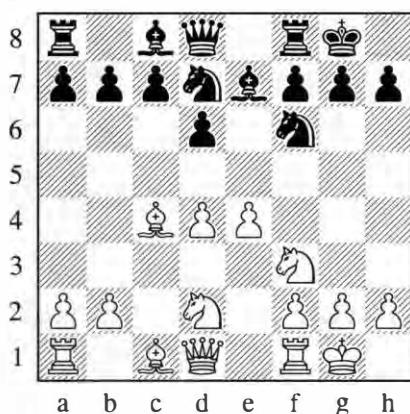
► Ex. 6-10 ◀

★★



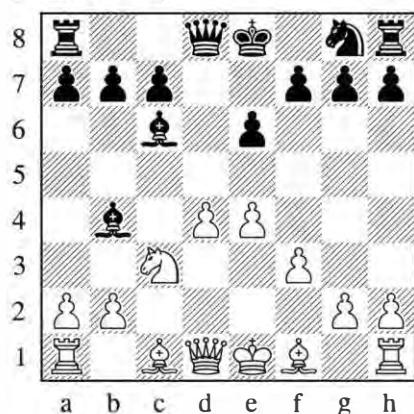
► Ex. 6-8 ◀

★★



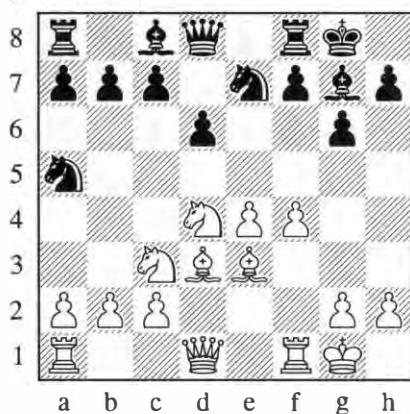
► Ex. 6-11 ◀

★★



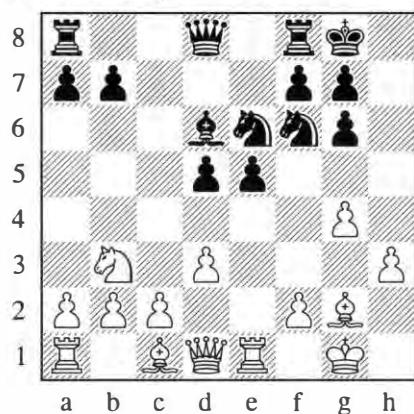
► Ex. 6-9 ◀

★★



► Ex. 6-12 ◀

★★



Ex. 6-1**R.Reti – F.Yates**

New York 1924

Solutions**Ex. 6-3****A.Lilienthal – V.Korchnoi**

USSR Ch, Kiev 1954

1.d4!

(2 points)

White now takes the initiative in the centre.

1...e4 2.Qe5 Qxe5 3.dxe5 Qh7

Or 3...Qh5 4.f4±.

4.f4!±

White even gets a kingside pawn majority.

4...exf3 5.exf3 Qg5 6.f4 Qh7†

6...Qe4 is met by 7.Qd1+-.

7.Qh1 d4 8.Qxd4 Qad8 9.Qxc6! bxc6**10.Qxc6 Qf2† 11.Qg2 Qxd4 12.Qxd4****Qxd4 13.Qxe8 Qe4 14.e6 Qd2† 15.Qf3****1–0****Ex. 6-2****A.Beliavsky – E.Torre**

Moscow 1981

1...f6!

(2 points)

With this strong move Black neutralizes the white arrack in the centre.

A decent alternative is 1...b5!? (1 point)

2.exd6 Qxc3! (2...exd6 is not so good, due to**3.axb5 axb5 4.Qxa8 Qxa8 5.Qe7†**) 3.bxc3 exd6**4.Qe7 Qc8 5.axb5 axb5 6.Qxa8 Qxa8 7.Qxc7****Qxc7 8.Qxb5.** White has some compensation

for the exchange.

2.exd6

If 2.e6, then 2...Qe8 3.Qc1 b5 4.axb5 (after

4.Qa2 f5† the d5-pawn is a weakness) 4...axb5

5.Qxa8 Qxa8 6.Qxb5 Qxb5 7.Qxb5 Qxd5†.

The far-advanced white pawn on e6 can become weak in the endgame.

2...exd6 3.Qe3 f5

3...b5!? is followed by 4.axb5 (4.Qa2 f5†)

4...axb5 5.Qxa8 Qxa8 6.Qxb5! Qxb5 7.g4!=.

4.Qd3 Qxc3! 5.Qxc3 f4 6.Qd2 b5† 7.Qa2**Qxd5 8.Qxd5†**

Or 8.Qd3 c4 9.Qd4 Qdf6†.

8...Qxd5†**1...c5!**

(1 point)

A typical idea. This move does not have to be prepared with 1...Qac8 (1 consolation point) which would give White time to improve his position with 2.Qb4.

2.dxc5

2.Qe4 Qxe4 3.Qxe4 is not so good, due to 3...Qc4 4.Qcl Qxe5†.

2...Qc7!

(another 1 point)

Black attacks the central e5-pawn.

3.cxb6?!

3.Qfe1 bxc5 4.Qh3 would be better, or even 3.c6 Qxc6 4.Qd6.

3...Qxe5† 4.Qxe5

4.Qc1??†

4...Qxe5 5.Qe2 axb6†

White simply has more weaknesses on the queenside than his opponent!

Ex. 6-4**B.Spassky – V.Korchnoi**

Moscow 1964

1.Qxd5!

(2 points)

Threatening Qxf6† or Qc7. Playing 1.Qf4 first is not so strong: 1...Qd7 2.Qcxd5 Qe5=

1...Qxd5

1...Qd8 2.Qc7!+–

2.Qf4 Qd6

2...Qxg2? is even worse, in view of 3.Qxe6 Qxf1 4.Qxf8 Qh3 5.Qd3 Qxf8 6.Qe4+=.

3.Qxd5 Qg5 4.f4 Qd8 5.Qc3!+–

Black now loses too much material.

5...Qa6

Or 5...Qc6 6.Qb5!+–.

6.Qxa8 Qb8 7.Qd5 Qxa8 8.Qxd4 Qc5 9.b4**Qe6 10.Qd3 Qe8 11.e4****1–0**

Solutions

Ex. 6-5

B.Spassky – R.Fischer

Siegen Olympiad 1970

1...f5!

(2 points)

We have already seen this typical idea in the game Gligoric – Smyslov.

Only 1 point for the simpler 1...b7, since White then has 2.f5? with unclear play.

2.g4 fxe4

2...b7?! would not have been bad either.

3.Qxe4 Qb7 4.Qg3 Qc4 5.Qxb7 Qxb7
6.Qf2 Qc6 7.Qe2 cxd4 8.cxd4 b5?

Black is now slightly better and can play actively on the queenside and in the centre. Despite that, Spassky was later able to turn this game round and to win it!

Ex. 6-6

C.Kottnauer – S.Flohr

Groningen 1946

1...e5!

(1 point)

Everything is ready for this thrust.

2.Qxf7+ Qxf7 3.d5

Some other continuations deserve consideration, for example 3.dxe5 fxe5? or 3.f4 exd4 4.Qxd4 Qc5=.

Now Black takes the initiative, although it did not prove enough for victory in the game.
3...cxd5 4.Qxd5 Qxd5 5.Qxd5 Qc5 6.f3 Qb6 7.Qxb6 Qxb6 8.Qf2 Qxf2 9.Qxf2 Qb3 10.Qxd8+ Qxd8?

Ex. 6-7

A.Fox – J.Capablanca

New York 1906

1...f6!

(2 points)

Black exchanges the strong e5-pawn. Black should not delay his operations in the centre for too long! Only 1 point for 1...Qe7.

2.h3

2.exf6 would be bad, on account of 2...Qxe1 3.Qxe1 Qxf4 4.Qc3 Qxf5 5.Qxc5 Qe2! 6.Qf2 Qf4-+.

2...Qf2+ 3.Qxf2 Qxf2 4.Qe2 fxe5! 5.Qxf2??

Better is 5.Qxg7?

5...e4? 6.Qh6+ gxh6 7.Qd4 Qg7 8.Qxa7 Qxb2 9.Qel d4 10.f5 e3-+ 11.Qfe2 Qf4

12.Qc1 Qb6 13.Qa4 Qxe2 14.Qc4+ Qh8 15.Qxe2 Qa6 16.Qd3 Qxd3 17.cxd3 c5

18.g4 c4

0-1

Ex. 6-8

E.Lee – A.Nimzowitsch

Ostend 1907

1...d5!

(2 points)

A typical operation, which weakens the white centre.

2.Qd3

White cannot win the pawn: 2.exd5 is met by 2...Qb6? and Black seizes the d5-pawn back.

2...dxe4 3.Qxe4 Qxe4 4.Qxe4 Qf6 5.Qd3 Qd5=

5...Qg4? would also be good. Black controls the d5-square and can easily attack the isolated d4-pawn.

Ex. 6-9

S.Rosenthal – W.Steinitz

Vienna 1873

1...d5!

(2 points)

This move is good here too, because White must bear in mind the threat of ...c5 followed by ...d4. Here 1...f5 would be slightly worse, since it weakens the castled position. Despite that, you get 1 point for the suggestion.

2.exd5

2.e5? c5?

2...Qxd5 3.Qxd5 Qxd5 3.c3 Qd8=

Solutions

Ex. 6-10

B.Englisch – W.Steinitz

London 1883

1...d5!

(2 points)

2.exd5

If 2.e5, then 2...Qg4 3.Qg5 a6 4.Qa4 Qxe5=.

2...Qexd5 3.Qxd5 Qxd5 4.Qe2 Qg4!=

Ex. 6-11

H.Pillsbury – M.Chigorin

St. Petersburg 1895

1...f5!

(2 points)

The counter-attack in the centre is vital for Black! Otherwise White would be able to shore up his central position and then go onto the attack.

2.e5?!

This concedes Black the d5-square without any compensation.

2.Wb3?! was no better, because of 2...Wxd4 3.Wxe6† Qe7 4.Qd2 fxe4=.

And 2.a3?! Qxc3† 3.bxc3 fxe4 3.Qe2 Qf6

does not offer White clear compensation for the pawn.

White's best option was 2.exf5?! exf5 3.Qc4 Qe7+=.

2...Qe7 3.a3 Qa5 4.Qc4 Qd5= 5.Wa4† c6 6.Qd3 Wb6 7.Qc2 Wa6 8.Qd1 Qc4 9.f4 0-0-0 10.Qe3 Qd5=

Ex. 6-12

Z.Azmaiparashvili – A.Yusupov

Las Palmas 1993

1.c4?!

(2 points)

Playing in the centre is positionally correct.

1.g5 (1 consolation point) would be far more dangerous. After 1...Qh5 2.Qxd5 Qef4 3.Qxb7 Qxh3† (or 3...Wxg5† 4.Qf1 Qab8 5.Wf3) 4.Qf1 Qb8 5.Qh1 Qxg5 Black obtains attacking chances, since the white king now has only the f-pawn as a shield.

1...dxc4 2.dxc4 Qc8

2...Wc7?! would be interesting, meeting 3.Qe3 with 3...Qad8= followed by ...b6, or even 3...Qb4?!

3.Qxb7 Qxc4 4.Qa6! Qa4 5.Qf1 Qf4 6.Qe3 Qd5 7.Qd2 Qb4=

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 23

20 points and above ➤ Excellent

16 points and above ➤ Good

11 points ➤ Pass mark

If you scored less than 11 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Attacking pieces
- ✓ Trapping the queen
- ✓ Trapping the bishop
- ✓ The poisoned pawn
- ✓ Typical ideas behind traps

Diagram 7-1

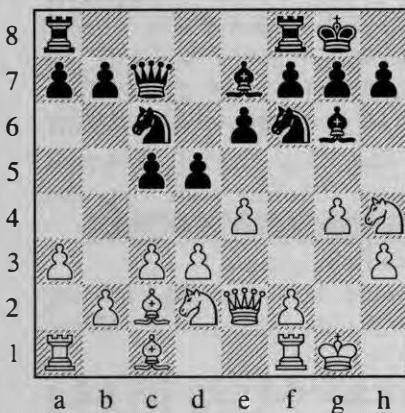
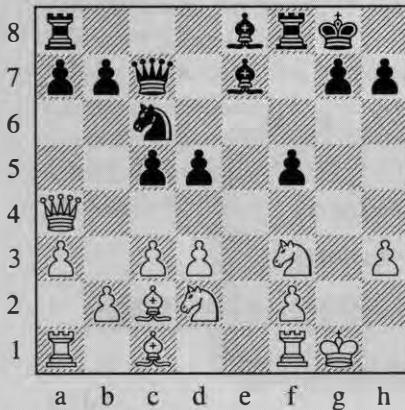


Diagram 7-2



Trapping pieces

It is not only the king which can be attacked; unprotected pieces are also excellent targets for this sort of action. If a piece is cut off from its main forces or if it has no escape squares, then there is always the danger that the opponent can trap it. Even very mobile pieces like the queen can sometimes be trapped.

In this chapter we shall be trying to exploit the unfavourable position of pieces.

Diagram 7-1

T.Petrosian – A.Kotov

Moscow 1952

Black finds an interesting combination.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$! 2. $\mathbb{W}xg4$ f5 3.exf5 exf5 4. $\mathbb{W}a4$

Even here the queen will find no peace.

If 4. $\mathbb{W}g3$, then 4...f4 5. $\mathbb{W}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ (after 6. $\mathbb{W}e6\#$ comes 6... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 8.d4 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 9. $\mathbb{W}e6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 8.hxg4 $\mathbb{W}h4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ is no better, due to 9...f3+) 7... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{W}e5\#$. The white knight is trapped, as 9. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ is met by 9... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 10.d4 $\mathbb{W}g5\#$.

4... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}hf3?$

Diagram 7-2

White overlooks the main threat. 5. $\mathbb{W}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xd5\#$ was correct, and White could still fight on although his castled position has been shattered.

5... $\mathbb{Q}a5!$

The queen is lost.

0-1

Diagram 7-3**A.Lugovoi – Y.Balashov**

Russian Ch, Krasnoyarsk 2003

1.♕xf6†!

White sets a trap with this strong move.

1...♛xf6?!

Black falls into it. He had to try the alternative recapture, although prospects are not good there either: 1...gx_f6 2.♕h6 ♜e8 3.♕e5 f5 4.♕h5±

2.♗g5! ♜xf3 3.♗d2!

A typical tactical motif. Black cannot save the queen without losing a decisive amount of material!

3...♛xd4 loses to 4.♕xh7†. And 3...♝f4 is followed by 4.♗xf4 ♜xg2 (4...♝c6 5.♗g5! ♛xd4 6.gxf3†+-) 5.♗g1+-.

Disappointed, Black resigned...

We have seen that sometimes even very strong players can underestimate the danger of having a piece trapped. Next we have the most famous example from a world championship.

Diagram 7-4**B.Spassky – R.Fischer**

World Ch(1), Reykjavik 1972

1...♝xh2?!

A typical mistake. There is no explanation for what Fischer may have overlooked here. The correct continuation is 1...♝e7 2.h3 (2.♗d4? ♜xh2+-) 2...e5 followed by 3...♝e6= (Botvinnik).

2.g3

Now the bishop is cut off. The rescue operation will come too late.

2...h5 3.♗e2 h4 4.♗f3

Of course not 4.gxh4 ♜d6=.

4...♝e7

After 4...h3 there comes 5.♗g4 ♜g1 6.♗xh3 ♜xf2 7.♗d2!+- followed by ♜g2 and the bishop is trapped.

5.♗g2 hxg3 6.fxg3 ♜xg3 7.♗xg3

White won this ending, although subsequent analysis has shown that Fischer could still have saved the draw.

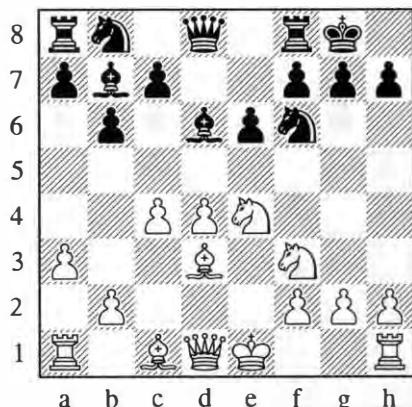
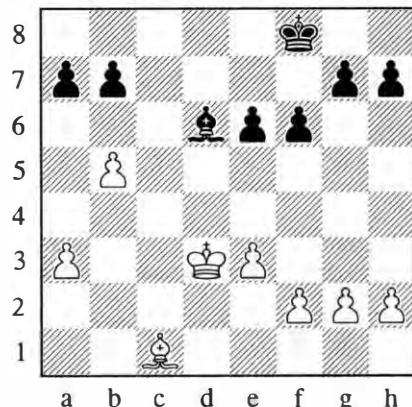
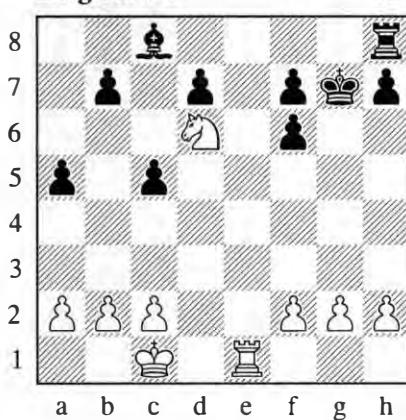
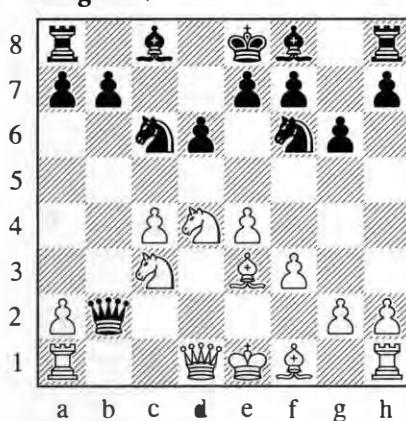
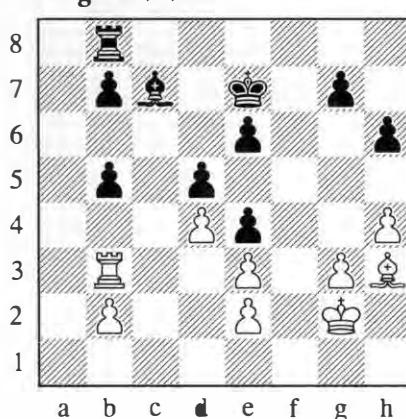
Diagram 7-3**Diagram 7-4**

Diagram 7-5**Diagram 7-6****Diagram 7-7**

Sometimes a rook can be trapped on its starting square. It is much rarer to see a bishop facing that danger.

Diagram 7-5

J.Magem Badals – Z.Franco

Leon 1990

1.♗e8!!

After 1...♝xe8 2.♕xe8† ♕f8 3.♕d6 the bishop is lost.

1–0

The following typical trapping of the queen only happened because Black had taken a poisoned pawn.

Diagram 7-6

L.Schmid – W.Sahlmann

Essen 1948

1.♗a4!

1.♕db5 would also be very dangerous for Black. But the move in the game is better because play is now forced.

1...♛a3 2.♗c1!

And Black resigned, on account of 2...♛b4† 3.♕d2 ♛a3 4.♗b5!+-.

The following three examples show other typical ideas for trapping a piece.

Diagram 7-7

U.Andersson – E.Torre

Biel 1977

1...b4!!

The threat is 2...♗d6.

2.♗xb4 b5! 3.h5

Or 3.♗b3 b4!-.

3...♗d6 4.♗b3 b4!

Black has achieved his aim. The white rook has been cut off. For all practical purposes, White is playing without a rook. Black can protect the e6-pawn and then stroll with the king to a4.

0–1

Diagram 7-8

H.Mortensen – K.Poulsen

Copenhagen 1992

Black does not see the trap which has been set.

1... $\mathbb{E}h4??$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ Or 2... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 3.h3! ($\Delta\mathbb{Q}g3$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#+-$.3.h3! $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3\#+-$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}xf4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 6.h4! also wins.

1-0

Diagram 7-8

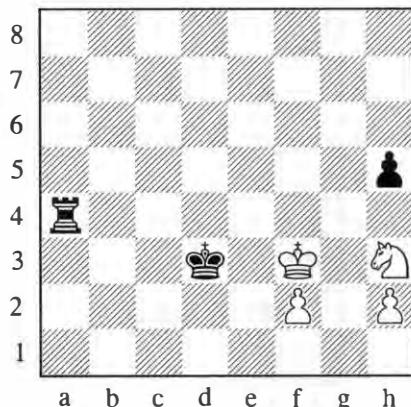


Diagram 7-9

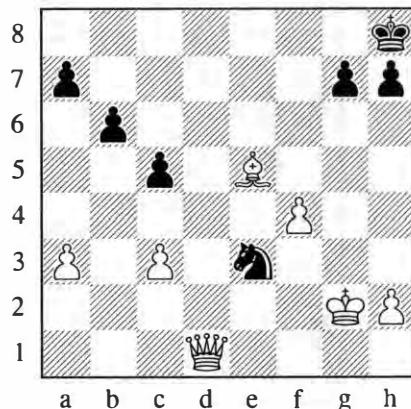
F.Marshall – R.Sviderski

Monte Carlo 1904

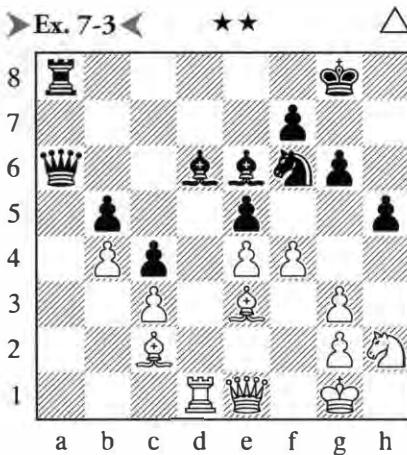
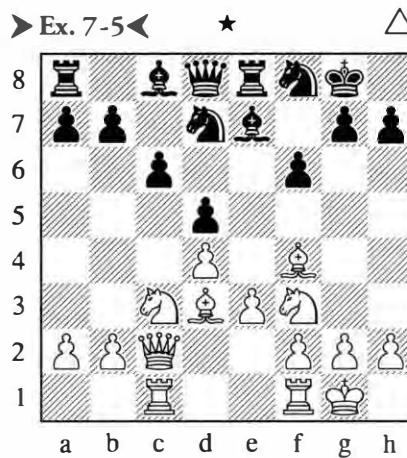
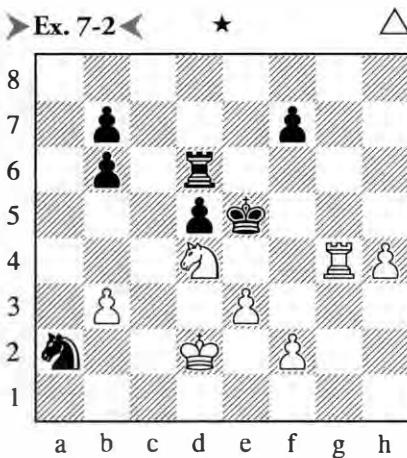
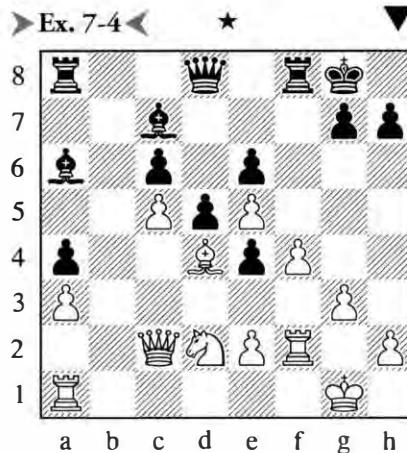
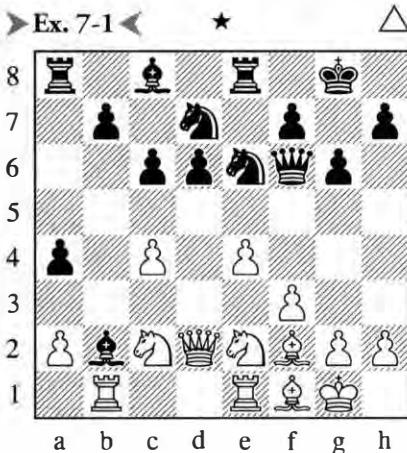
1. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ 2.c4!The bishop cuts the knight off and 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ will collect it.

1-0

Diagram 7-9

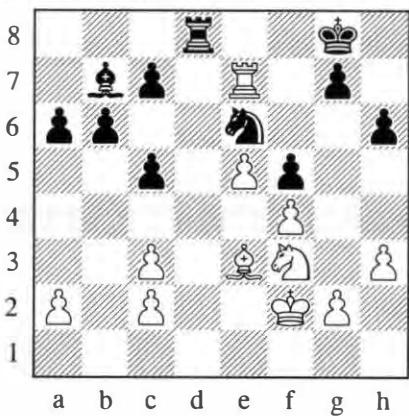


Exercises

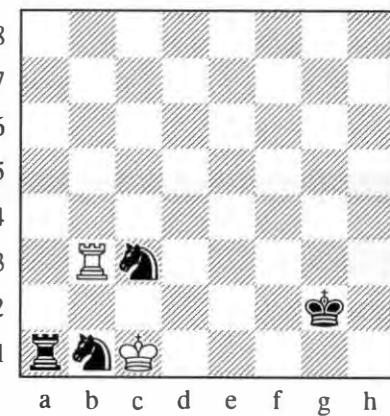


Exercises

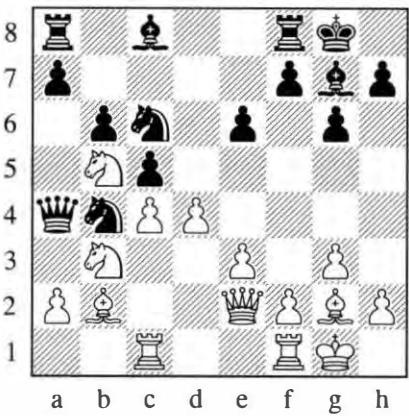
► Ex. 7-7 ◀ ★★ ▼



► Ex. 7-10 ◀ ★★ ▲



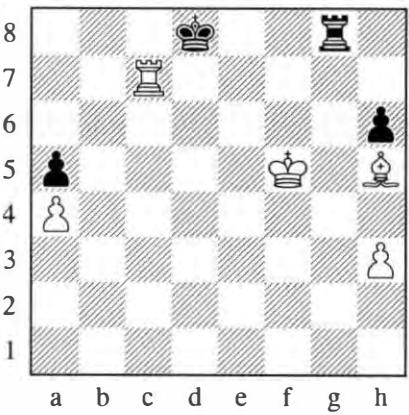
► Ex. 7-8 ◀ ★★ △



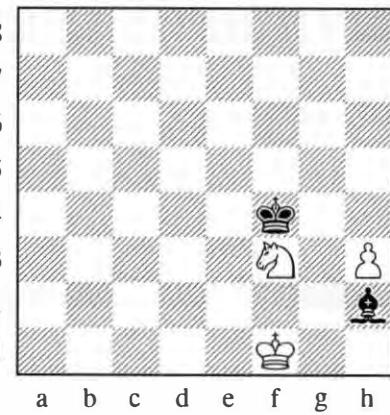
► Ex. 7-11 ◀ ★★ ▼



► Ex. 7-9 ◀ ★★★ △



► Ex. 7-12 ◀ ★★ ▲



Solutions

Ex. 7-1

1. $\mathbb{Q}xb2!$ $\mathbb{W}xb2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3!+-$

Next comes 3. $\mathbb{B}b1$.

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{W}xf5$

Or 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4!+-$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ $\mathbb{W}e4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$

1-0

(another 1 point)

Ex. 7-2

A.Yusupov – G.Siegel

Swiss Team Ch 2000

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$

And then 2. $\mathbb{B}a4$.

1-0

(1 point)

Ex. 7-3

M.Blau – J.Donner

Chamont Neuchatel 1958

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd6!!$ $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 2. $fxe5!+-$

(1 point)

2... $\mathbb{W}xe5?!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$

1-0

(another 1 point)

Ex. 7-4

H.Pfleger – L.Keitlinghaus

Bundesliga 1986

1... $e3!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $d4!+-$

(1 point)

Ex. 7-5

K.Burger – Huendorfer

Munich 1924

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$ $cx d5?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c7$

1-0

(1 point)

Ex. 7-6

Engels – Stein

Königsberg 1938

1. $\mathbb{B}5!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{W}xf5$

Or 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4!+-$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ $\mathbb{W}e4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$

1-0

Ex. 7-7

K.Darga – B.Ivkov

Hastings 1955

1... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$

(1 point)

But not 1... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ nor 1... $\mathbb{Q}c8$, on account of 2. $\mathbb{Q}h4$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$

After 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ there follows 2... $\mathbb{Q}f7!+$ and the rook on e6 is trapped.

(another 1 point for this variation)

2... $\mathbb{Q}xc5!+-$

Ex. 7-8

V.Ivanchuk – B.Gelfand

Linares 1991

1. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{W}a6$ 2. $a3!$

1-0

(2 points)

This is the simplest solution, trapping the knight on b4.

There was the equally good, but rather more complicated: 1. $a3?!$ $\mathbb{W}xb3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{W}a4$ 3. $axb4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (3... $cxb4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a1!+-$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{W}xb4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3!+-$

Ex. 7-9

The end of a study by

A.Gurvitch

1959

1. $\mathbb{B}c4!!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{B}g5\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$

(1 point)

2... $\mathbb{B}xh5$ 3. $h4!+-$

(another 1 point)

(1 point)

Black is in zugzwang.

Solutions

Ex. 7-10

The end of a study by

A.Herbstmann

1934

 1. $\mathbb{E}b2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 2. $\mathbb{E}a2!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa2\#$

 Or 2... $\mathbb{E}xa2$ stalemate.

 3. $\mathbb{Q}b2=$

(2 points)

Ex. 7-11
I.Efimov – G.Georgadze

Tbilisi 1991

 1... $\mathbb{E}xe1!$

(1 point)

 But not 1... $\mathbb{E}a6$, which allows the knight to escape by 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ or 2. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$.

 2. $\mathbb{E}xe1$ $\mathbb{W}a4!$

(another 1 point)

Note that 2... $\mathbb{W}b5$ would be wrong, because of 3. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$.

After 2... $\mathbb{W}a4!$ White resigned, in view of the variation 3. $b4$ (or 3. $\mathbb{W}xc5$ $\mathbb{E}b5-+$) 3... $cxb4!$ 4. $cxb4$ $\mathbb{W}xb4-+$.

Ex. 7-12

The end of a study by

A.Hildebrand

1957

 1. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$

(1 point)

 Not 1. $\mathbb{Q}xh2?$ $\mathbb{Q}g3=$ nor 1. $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ $\mathbb{Q}g3=$.

 1... $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2+-$

(another 1 point)

Black is in zugzwang.

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 21

19 points and above → Excellent

16 points and above → Good

12 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Mistakes in the early moves of a variation
- ✓ Accurate calculation of variations
- ✓ Typical mistakes in calculating variations

Calculating short variations

It is more important to be able to calculate accurately short variations (3-4 moves deep) than very long variations. It is precisely in the early moves that errors frequently occur, making it nonsensical to go on to calculate long variations. A mistake on move 7 of a variation is something you can still perhaps spot and correct in good time during the game, but a mistake in the very first moves usually has fatal consequences.

Here are a few examples which show accurate calculation of short variations in practice.

R.Kasimdzhanov – V.Kramnik

Wijk aan Zee 1999

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}B3$ d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 0–0 7.e3 b6 8. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 10.cxd5 exd5 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ c5 12.0–0 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f5$

Diagram 8-1

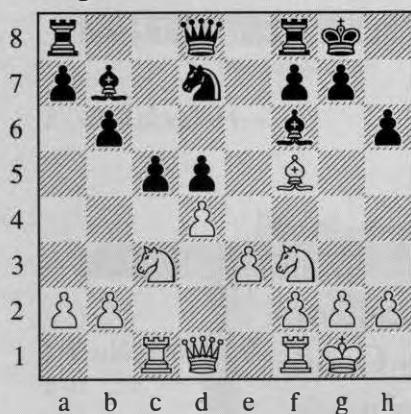


Diagram 8-1

White attacks the knight. But Black is not very impressed.

13... $\mathbb{g}6$! 14. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$

14. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ is an alternative. Then Black can simply reply 14... $\mathbb{Q}g7$.

14...cxd4!

A good intermediate move. 14... $\mathbb{W}xd7$?! 15.dxc5 bxc5 16. $\mathbb{Q}e4$! $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{W}xc5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ is better for White.

15. $\mathbb{Q}c6$

15. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}xd7$ is harmless.

15... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 17. $\mathbb{W}a4$ $\mathbb{W}e7$

And Black keeps things level thanks to his bishop pair.

½–½

Diagram 8-2**F.Döttling – A.Yusupov**

French Team Ch 2004

White has sacrificed a pawn and is hoping to be able to develop an initiative on the kingside. Black brings his forces into play.

1...♝ac8! 2.♕d4 ♝c4 3.♝g3 ♖c8!

It is important to control the f5-square. 3...♛c5? 4.♕h6 g6 would lose to 5.♕f5.

4.♛e3

Diagram 8-3

4...♜e8!

Black prepares his counterplay. 4...♛c5?! would give his opponent the chance to deliver perpetual check: 5.♝xg7! ♖xg7 6.♛g5† ♖h8 7.♛f6†=

5.f4 f6!

5...♛c5 6.♕d1 f6 is less precise.

6.♕f2

6.e6 ♛c5 is followed by 7.♕d1 ♜xe6! and Black wins.

6...fxe5

But not 6...♛c5, on account of 7.♕d3.

7.fxe5

Diagram 8-4

7...♛xe5!

Black had to calculate this tactical operation with great accuracy.

8.♕f3!

8.♝xe5?? loses to 8...♜c1†; and no better is 8.♝ge3??

♛xe3!–.

8...♛h5!

The only move!

9.♕g5! ♛f7 10.♕xd5 ♖h7

The tactical exchange hasn't brought Black any new gain of material, but he has opened up the play for his bishop and simplified the position. After a few more moves to consolidate, the advantage will be even clearer.

11.♕d3 h6 12.♝xe8† ♛xe8 13.♕d2 ♜c8 14.h3 ♛e7 15.♖h1 ♛f6 16.♝e3 ♜f8 17.♛e2 ♖d5–+

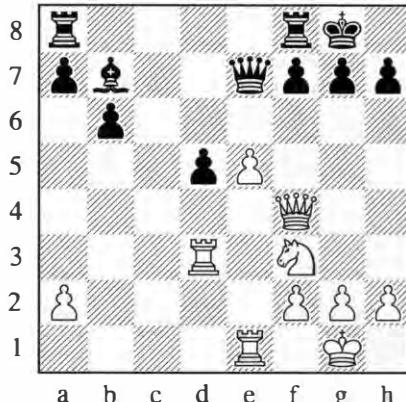
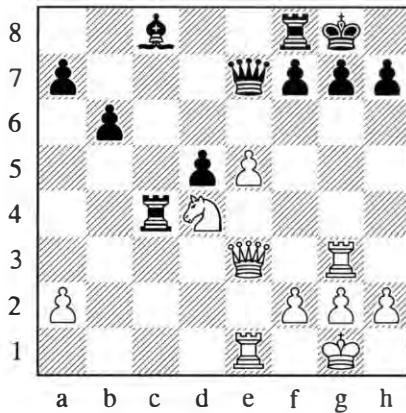
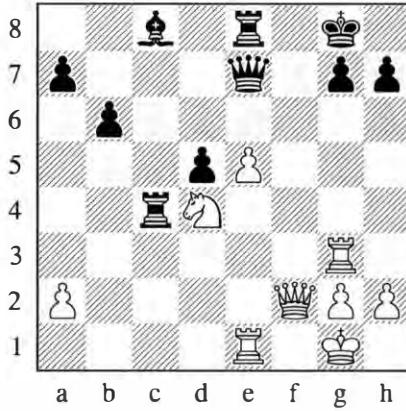
Diagram 8-2**Diagram 8-3****Diagram 8-4**

Diagram 8-5

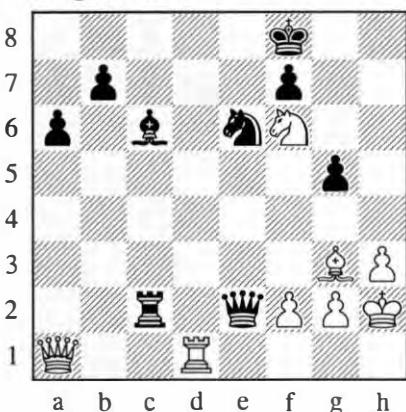


Diagram 8-5

A.Lutikov – F.Silva

Odessa 1976

1. $\mathbb{Q}d8\# \mathbb{Q}e7$

One important variation is 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6\# \mathbb{Q}g7$
 3. $\mathbb{Q}e8\# \mathbb{Q}g6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f6\# \mathbb{Q}h5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g7\# \mathbb{Q}h4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$.
 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$

White attacks in grand style.

2... $\mathbb{Q}xd7$

If 2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$, then 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6\# \mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h5\# \mathbb{Q}g6$ 5. $\mathbb{W}f6\# \mathbb{Q}xh5$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d5\# \mathbb{Q}d8$

3... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ would be more stubborn, but after 4. $\mathbb{W}f6$ (this is even better than 4. $\mathbb{W}h8\# \mathbb{Q}f8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}a4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (or 4... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$ there is no longer any defence.

4. $\mathbb{W}f6\# \mathbb{Q}c8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$

Typical mistakes in calculating variations

- 1) Some candidate moves have not been considered.
- 2) The opponent's strongest defence has not been taken into account.
- 3) Alternatives in the early moves have simply been ignored.
- 4) The calculation of a variation has been broken off too soon, although the opponent still has some active moves at his disposal.

Diagram 8-6

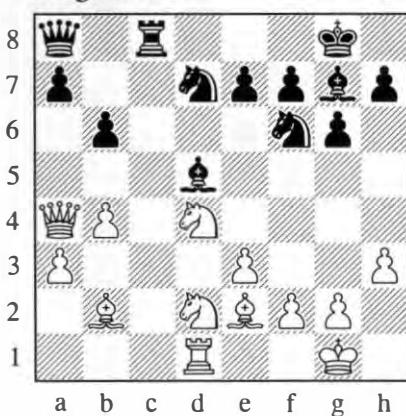


Diagram 8-6

A.Yusupov – C.Shytaj

Porto Mannu 2009

1. $e4\? \mathbb{Q}xe4\??$

Black should decline the sacrifice. But he probably under-estimated White's third move.

1... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ would maintain level chances after either 2. $\mathbb{Q}4f3$ or 2. $\mathbb{Q}a6$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xe4 \mathbb{W}xe4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3\?!$

3. $\mathbb{W}xa7$ first would be even better, meeting 3... $e5$ with 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3\! \mathbb{W}f4$ 5. $g3 \mathbb{W}h6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$.

3... $\mathbb{W}f4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{W}e8\?!$

4... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ would be more stubborn: 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\# \mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$

5. $\mathbb{W}xa7+$ – $\mathbb{W}f5$

Diagram 8-7

6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $exf6$

6... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$ – offers no hope, so Black sets a final trap.

7. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$

But not 7. $\mathbb{W}xd7??$ because of 7... $\mathbb{E}e1\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}f4\#$.

1–0

In the test which follows you must do some short calculations. Try to avoid the mistakes mentioned above.

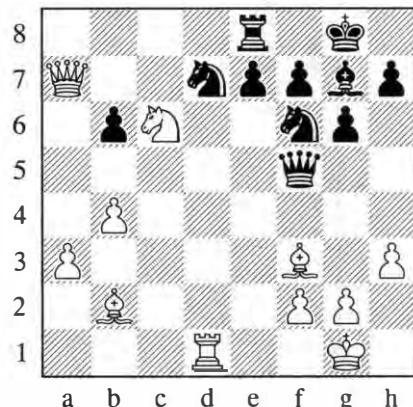
Look for active moves!

Always finish your variations with an evaluation!

Try to take into account all sensible replies by your opponent and **remain particularly on your guard during the early moves!**

The ability to calculate short variations accurately is a sure foundation for future success in chess!

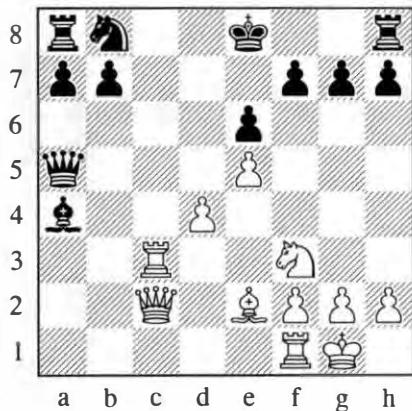
Diagram 8-7



Exercises

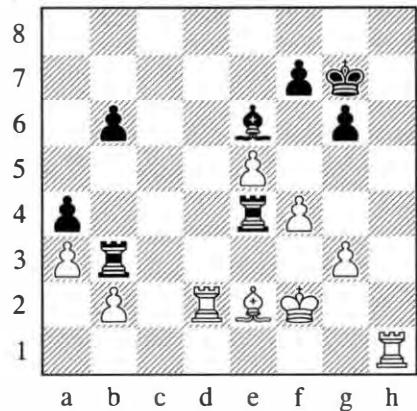
► Ex. 8-1 ◀

★★



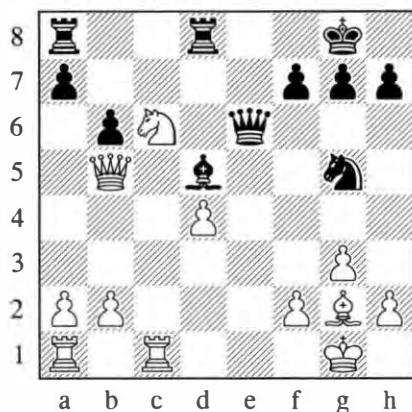
► Ex. 8-4 ◀

★★



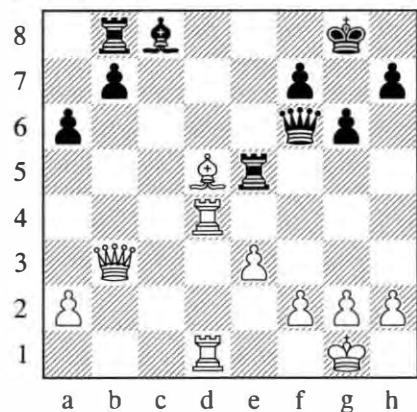
► Ex. 8-2 ◀

★★



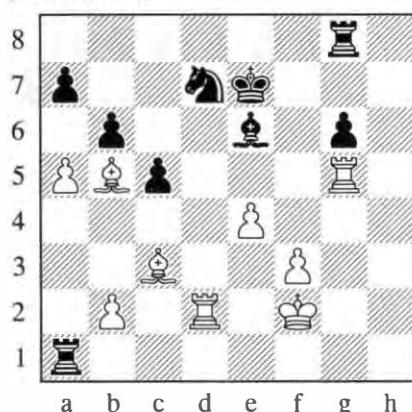
► Ex. 8-5 ◀

★★★



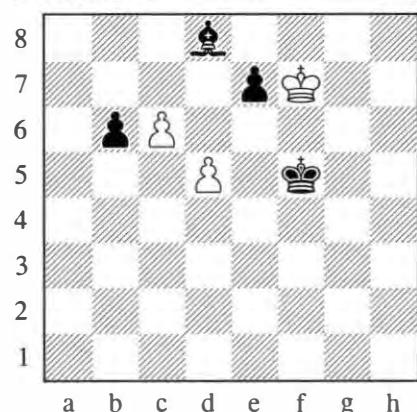
► Ex. 8-3 ◀

★★

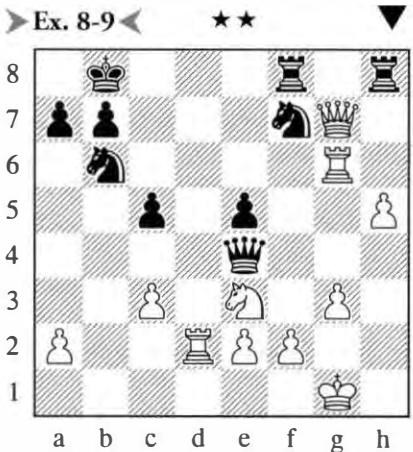
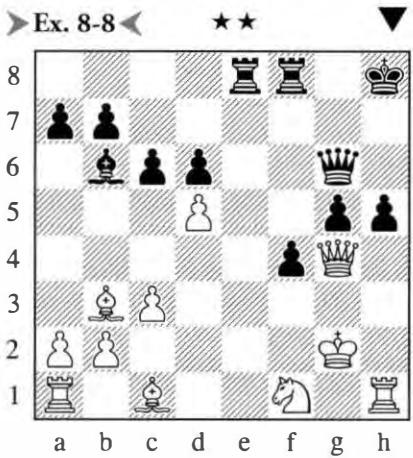
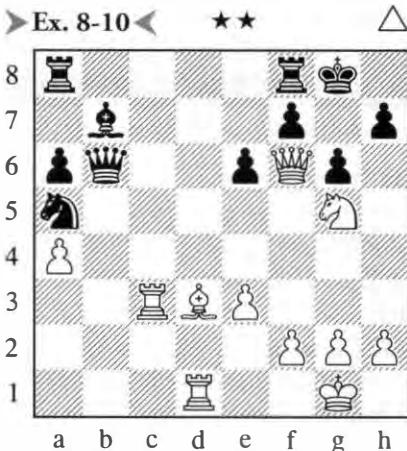
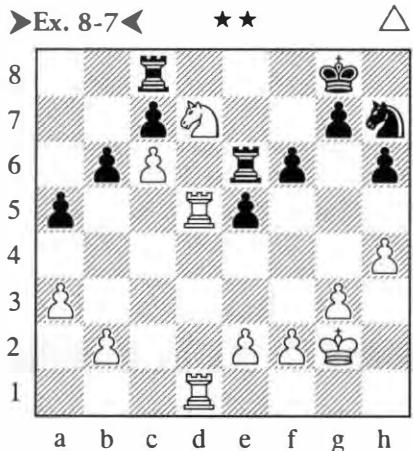


► Ex. 8-6 ◀

★★



Exercises



Solutions

Ex. 8-1

Variation from the game

A.Alekhine – M.Euwe

World Ch(19), Netherlands 1935

1.♕b5†!

(1 point)

But not 1.♕c8†? ♕d7 2.♕b5† ♕c6!?. Nor would 1.♕b2 0–0± be so strong.

1...♕xb5

1...♕d7 allows simply 2.♕xa4+–.

After 1...♕xb5 there follows 2.♕c8† ♕e7 3.♕c7† ♕d7 (3...♕d7 4.♕d6#) 4.♕c5†+–.

(another 1 point for this variation)

2.♕c8† ♕d7

Or 2...♕e7 3.♕c5† ♕d7 4.♕xh8+–.

3.♕xh8+–

Ex. 8-2

R.Hübner – J.Timman

Bugojno 1978

1...♕xg2

(1 point)

But not 1...♕f3† 2.♕xf3 ♕xf3 3.♕xd8 ♕h3?? because of 4.♕e8#.

2.♕xd8

If 2.♕xg5, then 2...♕xc6+–.

2.♕xg2 is met by 2...♕h3† 3.♕h1 ♕f3+–.

2...♕e4!

(another 1 point)

Threatening ...♕h3#.

3.h3

3.♕xg5 ♕h3 4.f3 ♕e2+–

3...♕f3†

White resigned, in view of the variation 4.♕xg2 ♕xd4† 5.♕h2 ♕xb5 6.♕el ♕xe1 7.♕xe1 ♕xd8+–.

Ex. 8-3

S.Furman – E.Vasiukov

Riga 1975

1.♕xd7†!

(1 point)

1.f4?±

1...♕xd7 2.♕e5†

(another 1 point)

2.♕f7

2...♕e6 3.♕c4+–; 2...♕d8 3.♕d5+–; 2...♕d6 3.♕d5†+–.

3.♕xd7+– ♕h8 4.♕e3

1–0

Ex. 8-4

E.Geller – H.Pilnik

Saltsjobaden 1952

1.♕d1!

(1 point)

But not 1.♕f3?! on account of 1...♕ee3±.

1...♕b5

1...♕be3 runs into 2.♕c2+–.

2.♕f3 ♕c4 3.♕e2+–

(another 1 point)

3.♕bc5

If 3...♕d5 4.♕xd5 ♕xd5 5.♕xc4 ♕xh1, then 6.♕b5+–.

4.♕xc4 ♕xc4 5.♕hd1 b5 6.♕d4 ♕c2† 7.♕1d2 ♕c1 8.♕d6 ♕h1 9.♕b6 ♕c4 10.♕b8 (Δ♕dd8) 10...♕h2† 11.♕e3

1–0

Ex. 8-5

M.Yudovich – V.Chekhover

Leningrad 1934

1.♕xf7†!

(2 points)

Only 1 consolation point for 1.♕c4± or 1.a4– White has a better solution.

First 1.♕f4 ♕f5 and only then 2.♕xf7† (also 1 point) is not so accurate; after 2...♕xf7 3.♕d8† ♕g7 4.♕c3† ♕f6! 5.♕c7† ♕h6∞ the threat of ...♕a1† keeps Black in the game.

1...♕g7

If 1...♕xf7, then 2.♕d8† ♕g7 3.♕c3 (not 3.♕xf7?? ♕xf7 4.♕c1 ♕e8+–) 3...♕f6 (3...♕e7 4.f4+–) 4.♕c7†+–.

(another 1 point for the whole variation)

Solutions

2.♕d5 ♕f5 3.e4 ♜be8 4.f4+– ♜e7 5.e5!?

5.exf5 would not be so clear: 5...♜e1† 6.♝xe1 ♜xd4† 7.♝f1 ♜xf4† 8.♝f3 ♜xe1† 9.♝xe1 ♜c1†
 5...♛h4 6.♝g3 ♛xg3 7.hxg3 ♜c7 8.♕b3 ♜c3
 9.♝f2 b5 10.♕d8 ♜xd8 11.♕xd8 a5 12.♕b8
 a4 13.♕d5 ♜c5 14.♝g8† ♜h6 15.♕d8 ♜c7
 16.♝e3 ♜h5 17.♝d4 ♜c2 18.♕b8 ♜d2†
 19.♝c5 ♜g4 20.e6 ♜xe6 21.♕xe6† ♜xg3
 22.♕d5 ♜xf4 23.♝xb5 a3 24.♝b3
 1–0

Ex. 8-6

E.Pogosiants

1977

1.d6!

(1 point)

Only 1 consolation point for the variation
 1.♝e8? ♜c7 2.♝xe7 ♜e5 3.♝d7 ♜d6 4.c7
 ♜xc7 5.♝xc7 ♜xd5 6.♝xb6=.

1...exd6 2.♝e8 ♜c7 3.♝d7 ♜b8 4.♝c8
 (another 1 point)

4...d5 5.♝xb8+-

Ex. 8-7

V.Ragozin – A.Pinkus

Moscow 1946

1.♝xb6!

(1 point)

This strong move wins a pawn. 1.♝cl± would not be so convincing.

1...♜ce8

If 1...cxib6, then 2.♝d8† ♜e8 (or 2...♜xd8 3.♜xd8† ♜f8 4.c7+-) 3.♜xe8† ♜xe8 4.c7+- and the threat of ♜d8 is decisive.

(1 point for this variation)

2.♝d8

Or 2.♝cl cxb6 3.c7 ♜c8 4.♝d8† ♜e8 5.♜xe8† ♜xe8 6.c8♛+-.

2...♝f8 3.♝xe8 ♜xe8 4.♝c4+-

Ex. 8-8

S.Kudrin – D.Johansen

London 1982

1...♛e4†!

(1 point)

Black has an alternative route to victory in
 1...♝f3† 2.♝g3 ♜f2†! (but not 2...h4†? 3.♝h3±)
 3.♝xf2 ♜e2†+- (1 point).

2.♝f3

Or 2.♝h2 hxg4+-.

2...♛xf3† 3.♝xf3 g4† 4.♝g2 ♜e2#

(another 1 point)

Ex. 8-9

A.Rubinstein – E.Bogoljubow

Stockholm/Gothenburg(8) 1920

The game continued: 1...♛b1†?! 2.♝d1 ♜xa2
 3.h6 ♜xe2? (3...♝c8 4.h7 ♜xe2†) 4.♝f6
 ♜a2 (4...♛h5? 4.g4!+-) 5.c4!? (5.♝xf7? ♜xf7
 6.♝d8†±) 5...♝xc4? (5...♝c8 6.♝xf7 ♜xf7
 7.♝xf7 ♜xh6±) 6.♝xf7+- ♜fg8 7.♝xc4 ♜a8
 8.♝fd7 ♜xc4 9.♝xh8 1–0.

Black would have done better to play:

1...♜xh5!

(1 point)

2.♛xf8† ♜c8 3.f3

3.♝g2 loses to 3...♛b1† 4.♝el ♜xe1†
 5.♝g2 ♜h1#.

3...♛xe3† 4.♝g2 ♜xd2

(another 1 point for this variation)

Black is clearly winning.

5.♝xf7 ♜xe2† 6.♝g1 ♜h2+-

Ex. 8-10

M.Euwe – S.Flohr

Amsterdam(8) 1932

1.♝xh7!

(1 point)

1.♝f1! (also 1 point) is equally strong. Black has no good way of stopping the threatened ♜d4-h4, e.g. 1...♝c6 2.♝d7+- or 1...♝ad8?
 2.♝xf7+-.

Solutions

1...♝f8

If 1...♝xh7, then 2.♛xg6†!

(another 1 point)

And now:

- a) 2...♝g8 3.♝d7+- (or 3.♝h7† ♝xh7 4.e4+-)
 - b) 2...fxg6 3.♝d7† ♝h6 4.♝h4#
- After 1...♝d8 comes 2.♝e5 ♝xh7
3.♝xg6†!+-.

2.h4!

2.♝g5+- is also good.

2...♝d7 3.h5 ♜d8 4.h6!

1-0

Ex. 8-11

B.Gurgenidze – R.Nezhmetdinov

Moscow 1957

1...♝xf2!

(1 point)

The strongest solution.

2.♝xf2

2.♝xf2 is followed by 2...♝f8 3.♝e1 (3.♝f3
♝xe3 4.♝xe3 ♜xg3†+-; 3.♝xf8 ♜xe3† 4.♝f2
♜xg3†+-) 3...♝f1†! 4.♝xf1 ♜xe3†+-.

(another 1 point for this variation)

2...♝h2† 3.♝e1 ♜xg3† 4.♝d2 ♜xe5

(another 1 point)

5.♝d5 ♜g5†

0-1

Ex. 8-12

H.Bach – D.Botto

Tjentiste 1975

1.♝g6!

(1 point)

1.♝xf4?! is less convincing after 1...♝e5†.
1...fxg6

Or 1...♝c3 2.♝g7+-.

2.hxg6 ♜f7 3.♝f8†!

(another 1 point)

3.gxf7 is also good enough: 3...♝xf7 4.♝g1+-
3...♝xf8 4.♝xh7† ♜g8 5.♝h6#

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 26

- 22 points and above → **Excellent**
- 18 points and above → **Good**
- 13 points → **Pass mark**

If you scored less than 13 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Weak squares
- ✓ Weak points
- ✓ Guidelines for play with and against weaknesses

Weak points

The subject of 'weak points' has already featured in this series of books – in Chapter 20 of *Build Up Your Chess 1* and in Chapter 4 of *Boost Your Chess 1*. Let us now return to this central theme of positional play.

During a game of chess the pawns are advanced and of course that can also lead to the appearance of weaknesses.

A square is weak if it cannot be protected by a pawn and if the opponent is able to post his pieces on it. Otherwise such a structural weakness is of no practical significance.

The concept of a '*weak point*' is somewhat broader than that of a '*weak square*'. It is used to describe not only a square, but also a pawn, which cannot be supported by another pawn and which is being attacked by the opponent.

The following two examples demonstrate how to provoke and exploit weaknesses in the opposing position.

Diagram 9-1



Diagram 9-1

A.Yusupov – A.Khalifman

Ubeda 1997

This ending looks level. But White possesses a powerful centre. This strong central position allows him to put his pieces on good squares.

1.♘d3 0–0 2.♕e2!

White wants – if required – to support his centre even more with the f-pawn. The knight can be activated via c3.

2...♗d7 3.♗b1!?

Threatening ♘d2. White is attempting to weaken his opponent's queenside.

3.♗c1 is less accurate and leads to massive exchanges on the c-file: 3...♝fc8 4.♘d2 e6 5.♗xc8 ♝xc8 6.♗c1 ♞xc1 7.♘xc1 ♔f8= A.Yusupov – B.Gulko, Linares 1989.

3...b6

The first success: the a6-square has been weakened.

4.♘d2 ♘fc8 5.♘a6 ♘d8

Not 5... $\mathbb{E}c7?$ due to 6. $\mathbb{E}hc1$ and White wins the struggle for the c-file.

6. $\mathbb{E}hc1$ $\mathbb{E}c8!$

With great skill, Khalifman neutralizes his opponent's initiative on the open file.

7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{E}c7$

Diagram 9-2

8... $\mathbb{E}ac8!$ 9. $\mathbb{E}bc1$

After 9. $\mathbb{E}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ White would be forced to part with the exchange.

9... $\mathbb{E}xc7$ 10. $\mathbb{E}xc7$ $\mathbb{E}c8$ 11. $\mathbb{E}xc8\#$

11. $\mathbb{E}xe7?!$ would be too risky: 11... $\mathbb{Q}f8?!$ 12. $\mathbb{E}e5\#$ (but not 12. $\mathbb{E}d7?$ $\mathbb{Q}b4\#$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6-$) 12... $\mathbb{Q}b4\#$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 14. $\mathbb{E}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ and Black has an initiative for the pawn.

11... $\mathbb{Q}xc8$

Diagram 9-3

Black has beaten off the first attack down the c-file. But White has another object of attack, the a7-pawn!

12. $\mathbb{Q}c3! \pm$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$

Black has nothing better. If he moves the a7-pawn, the two pawns on a6 and b6 become even weaker: 13... $a6$ 14. $d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ results in White winning a pawn.

14. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$

The central pawns are very good standing together like this. White's position is without weaknesses, since the pieces secure the centre well.

Capturing the pawn is not to be recommended: after 14. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8\pm$ Black gets more saving chances than in the game.

14... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 15. $a4$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 16. $g4!$

White improves his position on the kingside too.

16... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$

This attacks the f7-pawn and prevents the black king from coming into the centre.

17... $\mathbb{Q}b8$

Black has no more useful moves.

18. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

White does not want to move his central pawns too soon, so as not to weaken his position unnecessarily.

18... $a6$

Diagram 9-4

White has succeeded in provoking this new weakening.

Diagram 9-2

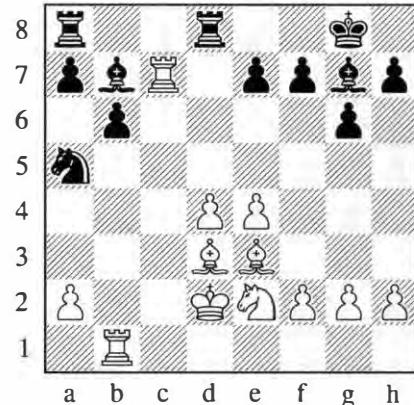


Diagram 9-3

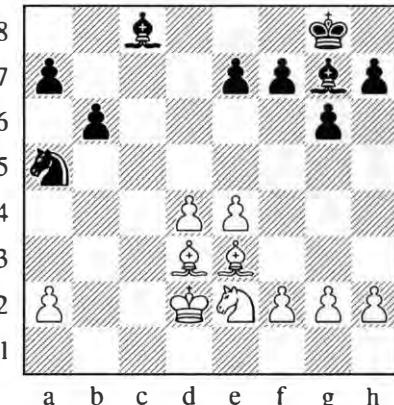


Diagram 9-4

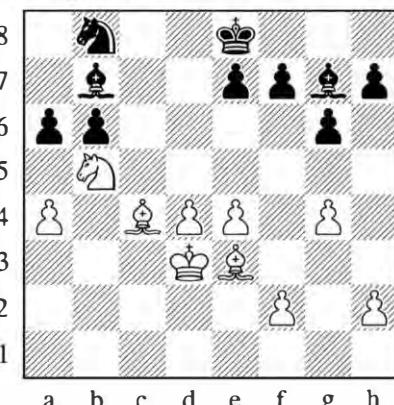
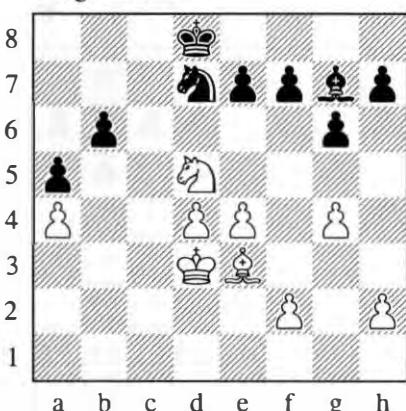
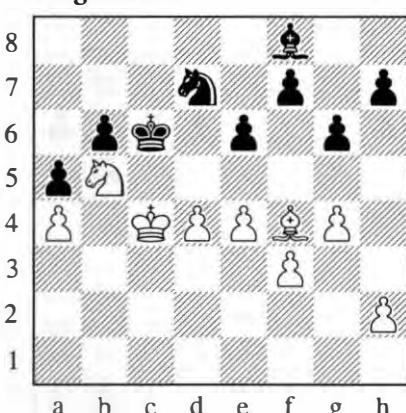


Diagram 9-5**Diagram 9-6**

19.♕c7† ♕d8 20.♕d5 ♕d7 21.♕b4!

Forcing a further pawn move, since the f7-pawn is now also being attacked.

21...a5 22.♕d5!

After the exchange of bishops Black can no longer defend his weak b5-square.

22...♗xd5 23.♗xd5+–

Diagram 9-5

Strategically speaking, White is winning. The black pawns on the queenside are blockaded and weak. The white pawns in the centre are, on the other hand, mobile and strong. White aims to use the b5-square to penetrate with his king.

23...e6 24.♕c3 ♕c7 25.♕b5† ♕c6 26.♕c4 ♕f8 27.♕f4 ♕b4 28.f3 ♕f8

Diagram 9-6

29.d5†

White forces a bishop vs. knight endgame in which he is for practical purposes a pawn up.

29...exd5† 30.exd5† ♕b7 31.♕d6†! ♕xd6 32.♕xd6 g5

Forced, because otherwise White will be able to play g5 himself, after which the knight no longer has a square. But this means that the black g-pawn has now also become weak.

33.♗g3!

White needs all the reserve tempi! The waiting move 33.h3 is worse, which we shall see clearly in the comments on move 36.

33...♕f6

33...♔a6 34.d6 ♔b7 35.♗b5 ♔c5 36.♗f2 ♕d7 37.♗d4+– leads to a zugzwang position.

34.♗e5 ♕d7 35.♗d4 ♕c7

Or 35...♔a6 36.d6 ♔b7 37.♗b5○.

36.♗b5 f6

The main variation would be 36...♗d6 37.♗xb6 ♕xb6 38.♗xb6 ♕xd5 39.♗xa5 ♕c5 40.♗a6 ♕c6 41.a5 f6 42.♗a7 ♕c7 43.a6 h6 44.h3!+–. Another illustration of how careful you should be about moving pawns!

37.♗f2 ♕d6

Or 37...♔b7 38.d6○.

38.♗xb6 ♕e5 39.♗xa5

Black has lost his queenside. The passed a- and d-pawns decide the game very quickly.

39...Qxf3 40.Qc3

Black resigned, since he cannot stop the white pawns. For example: 40...Qxh2 41.a5 Qxg4 42.a6 Qe3 43.a7 Qxd5 44.Qa5+–

Diagram 9-7

A.Yusupov – B.Lalic

European Team Ch, Pula 1997

A little tactical exchange leads to a better position for White.

1.Bb3! Qxd3 2.Bxa3 Qb2 3.Bxa7 Qc4† 4.Qe1!

Nothing is achieved by 4.Qd3 due to 4...Qb2† (but not 4...Bc7?! on account of 5.d5±).

4...Qxe4?

4...Qxe3 is correct: 5.Bxb7 Qxg2† 6.Qf2 Bc2 7.h6 Qf8 8.Qxg2 Bxe2† 9.Qg3 Bxa2±

5.Qg5±

The dark squares on the kingside are weak. White entrenches his minor pieces there.

5...Qc6 6.h6

The black king is now in constant danger.

5...e5

5...Qd6?! is met by 6.Ba6±, and if 6...b5? then White has 7.d5! exd5 8.Qd4+–.

6.Qf6 exd4 7.Qxd4 Qe8 8.Qf2 b5

Diagram 9-8

Black has not found a counter-plan. But in order to win the game, White must first secure his advantages on the kingside.

8.g4! Qb6 9.g5 Qd7

If 9...Ba8 10.Bxa8 Qxa8, then 11.Qd8!+–.

10.Qe3

White could keep the bishop, but after the exchange on f6 the position of the black king becomes even worse.

10...Qxf6 11.gxf6 g5

Diagram 9-9

Black further weakens his position with this move, but in any case it was already lost.

12.Qf5! Qf8 13.Qd6 Bc6 14.Qe4+– Be6 15.Qa8 b4 16.Qd4!

Black has no defence against Qd5 followed by Qd6.

1-0

Diagram 9-7

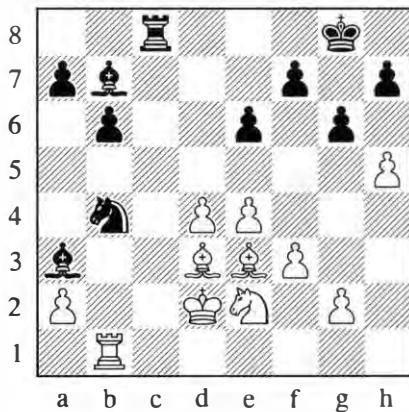


Diagram 9-8

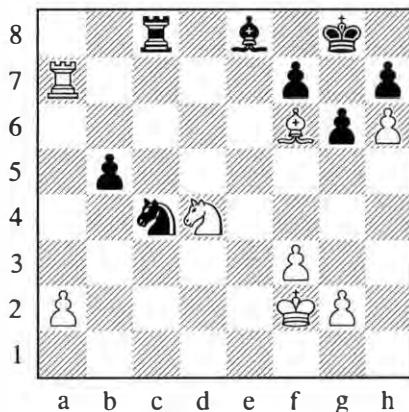
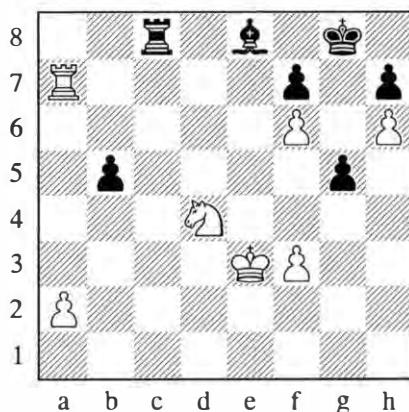


Diagram 9-9



Guidelines for play with and against weaknesses

1) Weak squares offer ideal positions for the opponent's pieces! So avoid unnecessary pawn moves. Try to protect potential weaknesses in good time.

2) Provoke weaknesses in the opposing pawn structure! Exploit the weak squares in the opposing position and post your minor pieces there. Try to entrench and support these strongly posted pieces. Then you can also attack other opposing pawns and pieces with greater ease.

3) Exchange off those pieces of your opponent which protect his weaknesses!

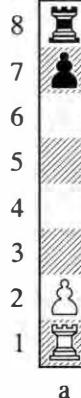
4) Attack your opponent at his weak point! Try to use all your resources. Often *manoeuvring* (alternating attacks against different weaknesses or attacking from different angles or with different pieces) achieves the desired success.

5) One weakness in your opponent's position is good, two are much better! You can then attack these weaknesses turn about and the defender is often overstretched! This is known as the *principle of two weaknesses*.

Exercises

► Ex. 9-1 ◀

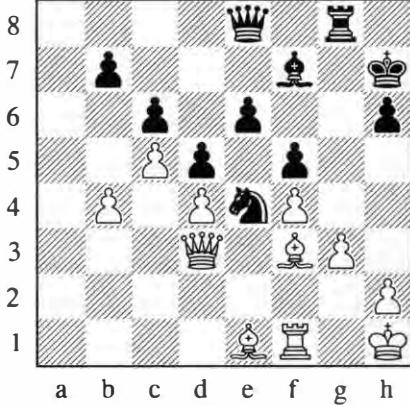
★★



a b c d e f g h

► Ex. 9-4 ◀

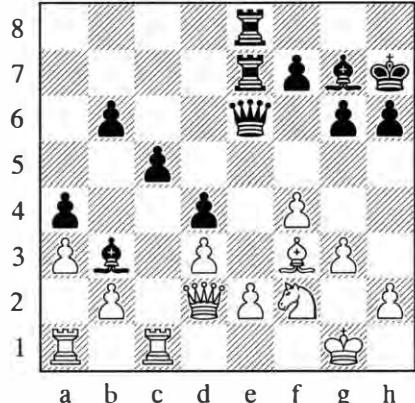
★



a b c d e f g h

► Ex. 9-2 ◀

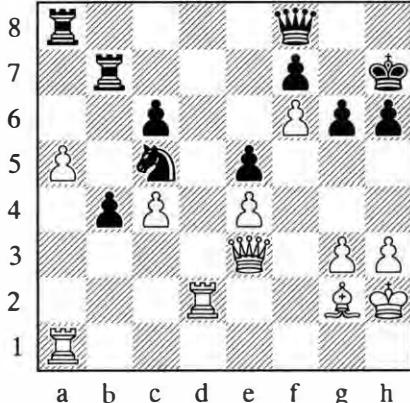
★★



a b c d e f g h

► Ex. 9-5 ◀

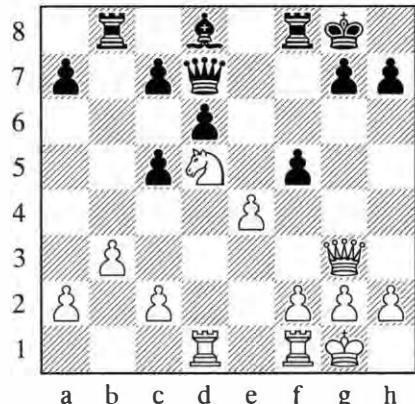
★★



a b c d e f g h

► Ex. 9-3 ◀

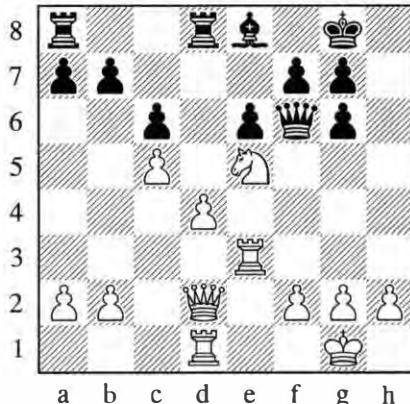
★



a b c d e f g h

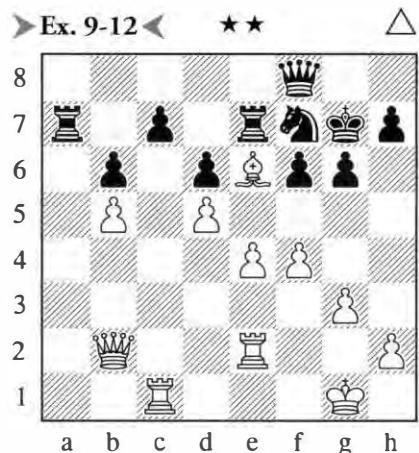
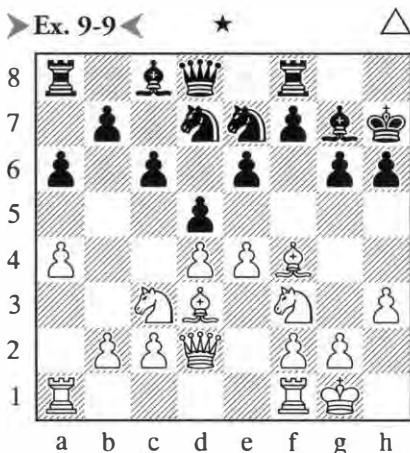
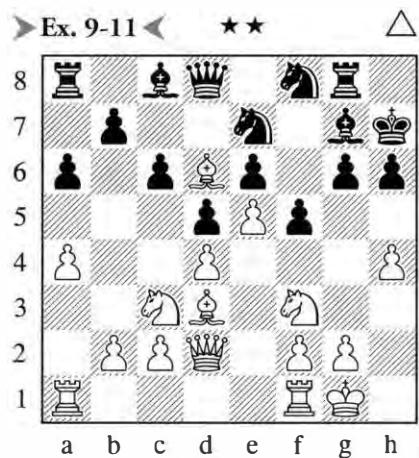
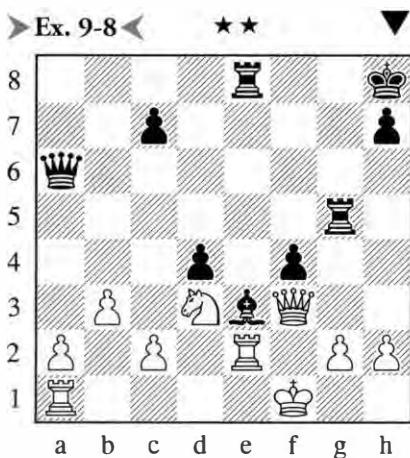
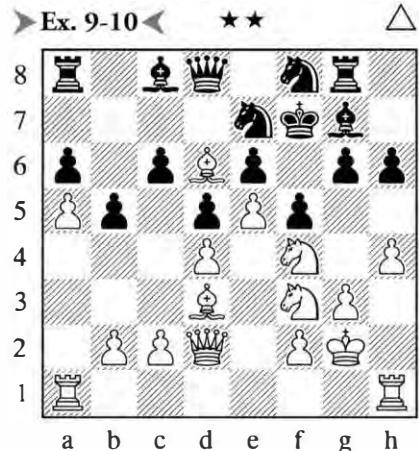
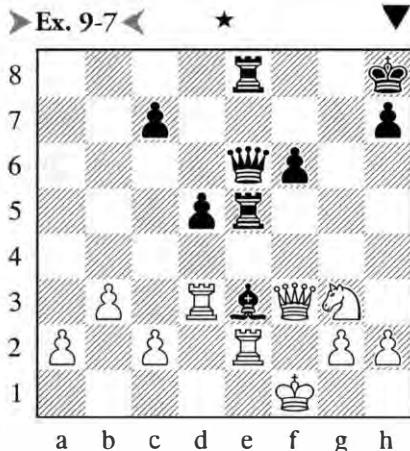
► Ex. 9-6 ◀

★



a b c d e f g h

Exercises



Solutions

Ex. 9-1

V.Smyslov – I.Rudakovsky

USSR Ch, Moscow 1945

1.♘g5!

(2 points)

A typical idea: White exchanges the knight which is defending the d5-square.

1.♗h4 would be wrong, because of 1...d5 or even 1...d5 2.♘g5 ♘xg5 3.♗xg5 f6+.

1...♞fe8 2.♕xf6 ♘xf6 3.♘d5± ♘d8

Or 3...♗xc2 4.♗f2 ♗a4 5.♘c7±.

4.c3 b5 5.b3 ♗c5† 6.♗h1 ♗c8 7.♗f3 ♗h8

8.f6! gxsf6 9.♗h4 ♗g8 10.♘xf6 ♗g7 11.♗g3

♞xf6 12.♗xf6 ♗cg8 13.♗d1 d5 14.♗xg7

1–0

Ex. 9-2

N.Zubarev – A.Rubinstein

Moscow 1925

1...♘d5!

(2 points)

Black exchanges an important defensive piece and thus further weakens the e2-pawn. 1...f5? (also 2 points) would be just as good.

2.♗xd5 ♗xd5 3.♗e1 ♗h5†

The simpler 3...f5! would be very strong:

4.♗ac1 b5–+

4.♗d1! ♗xe2 5.♗xe2 ♗xe2

But not 5...♗xe2? on account of 6.g4!+–.

6.♗xa4 ♗e6 7.♗b1 ♗f3 8.♗d1!?

8.♗f1 would be more stubborn: 8...♗e2

9.♗b3†

8...♗e2 9.♗f1 c4! 10.b4 cxd3 11.♗b3 ♗xf2!

0–1

Ex. 9-3

G.Levenfish – P.Dubinin

USSR Ch, Leningrad 1934

1.e5!

(1 point)

This further weakens the black pawn structure.

1...♗e8

1...dxe5?? loses immediately to 2.♘f6†.

2.exd6 cxd6†

Now Black has a backward pawn on d6.

3.♗fe1 ♗e6 4.♗f4 ♗xe1† 5.♗xe1 ♘a5

5...d5?? 6.♘xd5+–

6.♘d5! ♘d8

6...♗xe1?? 7.♘f6†+–

7.h4?+– ♗b7 8.c4 ♘f7 9.♗f3 ♗g8 10.♗e2

g6 11.h5 ♘f8 12.h6 ♘g5 13.♗b2 ♗g8 14.f4

♘d8 15.♘f6† ♘xf6 16.♗xf6 d5 17.cxd5

1–0

Ex. 9-4

D.Bronstein – M.Botvinnik

World Ch(16), Moscow 1951

1...♘h5!

(1 point)

A piece which can still defend the light squares is of course exchanged immediately.

2.♗a3 ♘xf3† 3.♗xf3

White's weakness on e4 is now even more pronounced.

3...♗g7 4.♗g2 ♗d8 5.♗f1 ♗f6 6.♗d3 h5!

7.h4 ♗g8 8.♗d1 ♗g7 9.♗f3 ♗h6 10.♗g2

♗a8!†

Ex. 9-5

E.Terpugov – D.Bronstein

USSR Ch, Moscow 1951

1...♘e6!

(2 points)

The simplest and safest solution: the knight is heading for d4. You get 1 point for 1...♗ba7 or 1...b3.

2.a6 ♗ba7 3.♗da2

If 3.♗a5, then 3...♗b8 followed by ...♗d4.

3.♗b6 is met by 3...♗c5!+–.

3...c5 4.h4 ♗d6 5.h5 g5 6.♗f2 ♗d4 7.♗d2

♗g8 8.♗da2

0–1

Solutions

Ex. 9-6

H.Pillsbury – M.Chigorin

Vienna 1898

1. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$

(1 point)

White improves the position of his knight and transfers it to d6.

1... $\mathbb{B}d5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ b6 3. b4 $\mathbb{B}d8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{W}e7$
5. $\mathbb{W}e3$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 6. f4±

Ex. 9-7

S.Tarrasch – Em.Lasker

World Ch(2), Germany 1908

Black must back up his strong bishop on e3.

1... f5!?

(1 point)

1... d4!? (also 1 point) is equally strong:
2. c3 c5

2. $\mathbb{B}d1$ f4 3. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ d4 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{W}a6!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{B}g5$

Black has a powerful attack.

6. $\mathbb{B}a1$

See Ex. 9-8.

Ex. 9-8

S.Tarrasch – Em.Lasker

World Ch(2), Germany 1908

1... $\mathbb{W}h6!$

(2 points)

Black finds a new point to attack – the h2-pawn. 1... $\mathbb{B}eg8$ first is equally good.

2. $\mathbb{Q}e1$

If 2. h3, then 2... $\mathbb{B}g3$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d5$ f3+.

2... $\mathbb{W}xh2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d1!?$ $\mathbb{W}g1\uparrow$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{B}ge5$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c6$ $\mathbb{B}5e6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xc7$ $\mathbb{B}8e7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}d8\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. a4 f3!–+
9. $\mathbb{gxf3}$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$

0-1

Ex. 9-9

A.Alekhine – V.Mikenas

Folkestone Olympiad 1933

1. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$

(1 point)

The bishop is very well placed here.

1... f5

1... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ would be no better: 2. e5 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f4+$ –

2. e5!?

2. exf5 is not bad either: 2... exf5 3. $\mathbb{Q}fe1$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ ±

2... $\mathbb{B}g8$ 3. h4 b6

For 3... $\mathbb{Q}f8?$ see Ex. 9-11.

4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 5. a5 b5 6. g3 $\mathbb{B}h8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$
8. $\mathbb{B}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ ±

White has a large positional advantage.

See Ex. 9-10.

Ex. 9-10

A.Alekhine – V.Mikenas

Folkestone Olympiad 1933

1. b3!

(2 points)

Now White wants to open a file on the queenside after c2-c4 and thus also activate his major pieces, in order to better support the strong bishop.

1... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 2. c4 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3. $\mathbb{B}ac1$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$

4... g5 loses after 5. hxg5 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xg5\uparrow$ h5xg5 (6... $\mathbb{B}xg5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}h3\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe6\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 9. $\mathbb{W}xg5\uparrow$ – (Alekhine)).

5. $\mathbb{cx}d5$ $\mathbb{cd}5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$

Black has exchanged the strong bishop on d6 but it is too late; White controls the only open file.

7. $\mathbb{B}c5\uparrow$ – $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 9. $\mathbb{B}hc1$ $\mathbb{B}c8$
10. $\mathbb{B}xc8$ $\mathbb{B}xc8$ 11. $\mathbb{B}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 12. $\mathbb{B}c5$ $\mathbb{B}g7$
13. $\mathbb{B}b6$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ g5 15. hxg5 h5xg5
16. $\mathbb{Q}e1\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}ed3$ f4 18. $\mathbb{B}h1\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$
19. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{fxg3}$ 20. $\mathbb{fxg3}$ $\mathbb{Q}h4\uparrow$ 21. $\mathbb{gxh4}$ $\mathbb{gxh4}$
22. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{B}f7$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 24. $\mathbb{W}d6$

1-0

Solutions

Ex. 9-11

Variation from the game

A.Alekchine – V.Mikenas

Folkestone Olympiad 1933

1. $\mathbb{W}g5!$

(2 points)

White exploits his advantage in space to mount an elegant combination. 1. $\mathbb{Q}g5\uparrow$ (also 2 points) is just as good: 1... $h\times g5$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xg5\perp$ – 1... $h\times g5$

Or 1... $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 2. $exd6$ $h\times g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4. $d\times e7$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe6\perp$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xg5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd8\perp$

1–0

Ex. 9-12

R.Kholmov – I.Livshin

USSR Ch, Kiev 1954

1. $e5!$

(2 points)

The opening of the game quickly leads to victory.

1... $\mathbb{Q}d8$

Or 1... $d\times e5$ 2. $f\times e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 3. $\mathbb{B}xe5$ $f\times e5$ 4. $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{W}d8$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xe5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}f4\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{W}f6\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8. $\mathbb{B}f4\perp$.

2. $exd6$ $c\times d6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}d4$ $\mathbb{B}ab7$ 4. $g4!$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 5. $g5$ $\mathbb{B}be7$ 6. $f5!$ $\mathbb{B}b7$ 7. $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 8. $g\times f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 9. $f\times g6$ $h\times g6$ 10. $\mathbb{B}g2$ $\mathbb{W}h6$ 11. $\mathbb{B}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 12. $\mathbb{W}d3$

1–0

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 19

16 points and above ➤ Excellent

12 points and above ➤ Good

9 points ➤ Pass mark

If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Communication between pieces
- ✓ Combinations involving promotion
- ✓ Line blocking in attack
- ✓ Line blocking in defence

Diagram 10-1



Diagram 10-2



Line blocking

The aim of line blocking combinations is to disrupt the communication between opposing pieces (or between a piece and an important square).

We have already looked at line blocking in Chapter 19 of *Build Up Your Chess 1* – ‘Combinations involving promotion’. Here is another spectacular example.

Diagram 10-1

V.Nenarokov – N.Grigoriev

Moscow 1923

The white rook is controlling the d-pawn, the bishop the h-pawn. After the following very startling move, one of the pieces is no longer able to carry out its task.

1...Rd6!! 2.Bxd6

The rook blocks the diagonal c7-h2. If 2...Bxd6, then simply 2...d1=Q#.

2...h2

0–1

Line blocking is very often employed in the attack.

Diagram 10-2

Zhuravlev – Borissenkov

Moscow 1949

Black would like to play ...f4-f3, but the white queen protects the square. For that reason there comes first:

1...d3! 2.Qxd3

And only now:

2...f3

White cannot beat off the attack.

3.Qe3

Or 3.Qxe7 Qh3# 4.Qg1 Qh1#.

3...Qh1# 4.Qg1 Qxg1# 5.Qxg1 Qdg8# 6.Qf1 Qh1#

Diagram 10-3**J.Armas – A.Crisan**

Calimanesti 1986

The black major pieces are protecting the h5-square. With his next move, White cuts off the link to this important square.

1.♕e5! ♜xe5 2.♕h5† ♜g6

Or 2...♜g8 3.♕xe8+–. White now wins by force.

3.♕xg6† ♜xg6 4.f7! ♜e7 5.♕f6† ♜h7 6.♕xh6†! ♜xh6 7.f8♕

1-0

In defence too, line blocking is a dangerous weapon, which can very easily be overlooked.

Diagram 10-4**V.Tseshkovsky – A.Miles**

Palma de Mallorca 1989

White was hoping that his next moves would manage to restore the balance.

1.♕c1?

1.♕xd4 would have been better: 1...exd4 2.♕f5!±

1...qx d5 2.♕c8

White aimed to win back the piece by threatening ♜xa8 followed by ♜c8. But Black can break the line of communication between the queen and rook.

2...♜c4!! 3.♕xc4

3.♕xa8 loses to 3...♜xcl†.

3...bx c4

Black has kept his material advantage and quickly wins the game.

4.♕d7 ♜a1† 5.♕f1 cxb3 6.♕xd6

Or 6.♕xd8† ♜g8–+.

6...♜g8

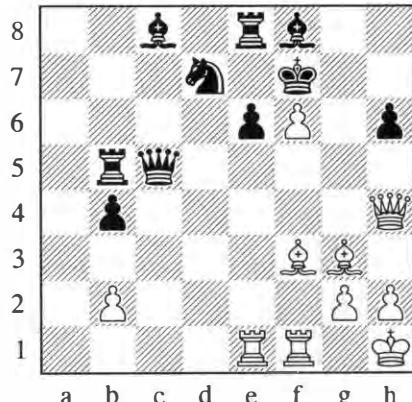
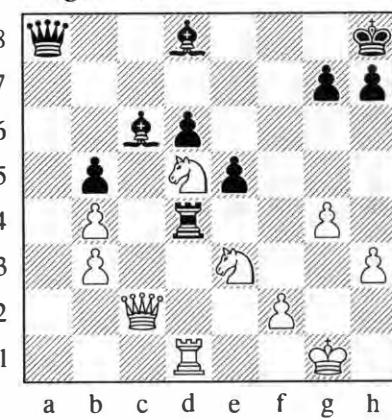
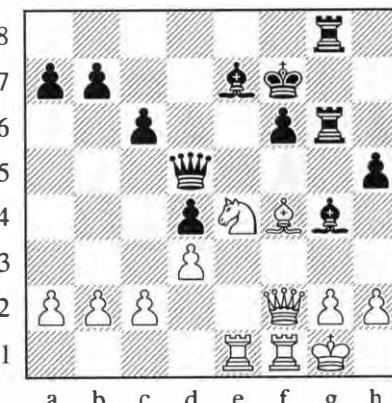
0-1

Diagram 10-5

Minsk 1978

1.♗g5!

The future world champion starts a correct combination.

Diagram 10-3**Diagram 10-4****Diagram 10-5**

1... $\mathbb{W}d8$

$1...\mathbb{B}xg5$ is met by $2.\mathbb{Q}xf6$. What we are interested in is the defence to this which GM Soltis quotes in his book and describes as being sufficient for equality: $2...\mathbb{Q}f3!?$ – a surprising example of line blocking. We now have:

- a) $3.\mathbb{B}xe7\#?$ is bad, due to $3...\mathbb{Q}xf6$.
- b) $3.g3??$ loses after $3...\mathbb{Q}xf6$.
- c) $3.\mathbb{Q}xd5?$ is followed by $3...\mathbb{B}xg2\#$ $4.\mathbb{W}xg2 \mathbb{B}xg2\#$ $5.\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{B}f2\#$ with perpetual check.
- d) The correct move, which Soltis did not find, is $3.\mathbb{Q}xg8!+-$.

Did Kasparov see it during the game?

We give the rest of the game without comment.

2. $\mathbb{W}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4. $g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5. $gxh5$ $fxg5$ 6. $\mathbb{W}e5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 7. $hxg6$ $gxh4$ 8. $\mathbb{B}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}h2$

1–0

Diagram 10-6

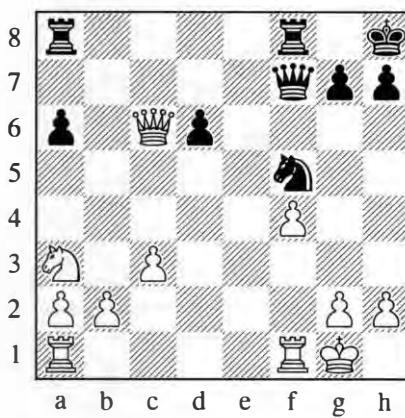


Diagram 10-7

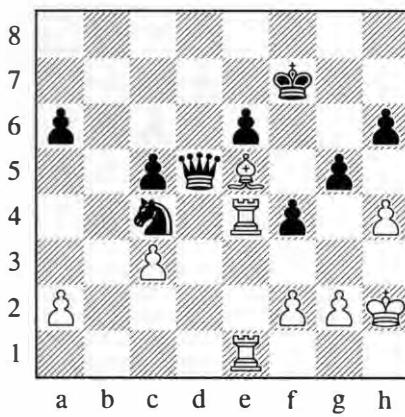


Diagram 10-6

A.Anderssen – L.Paulsen

Breslau 1877

1... $\mathbb{W}a7\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$

Black thought that White had overlooked his tactical idea.

2... $\mathbb{Q}g3\#!$ 3. $hxg3$ $\mathbb{B}f6$

How can White ward off the mate threat without losing material?

4. $\mathbb{B}f2$!

White blocks the diagonal a7-g1. On account of his back rank weakness, Black cannot capture the rook.

1–0

Here is another typical line blocking which frequently appears in praxis.

Diagram 10-7

L.Portisch – R.Fischer

Santa Monica 1966

1... $\mathbb{Q}e3!$

Black wins the exchange.

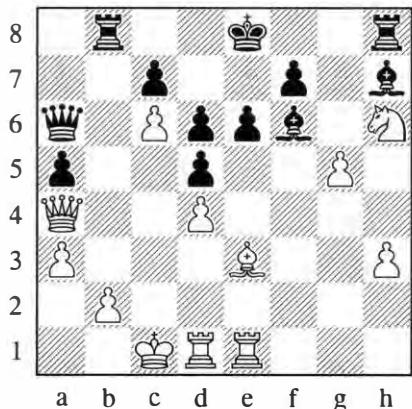
2. $\mathbb{B}1xe3$

If $2.\mathbb{B}3$, then $2...\mathbb{W}d2$ $3.\mathbb{B}gl$ $\mathbb{W}f2+-$ (Fischer).

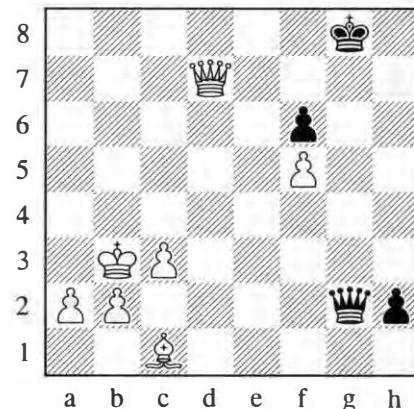
2... $fxe3$ 3. $\mathbb{B}xe3$ $\mathbb{W}xa2+-$

Exercises

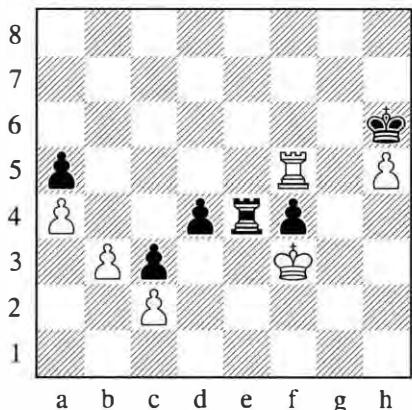
► Ex. 10-1 ◀



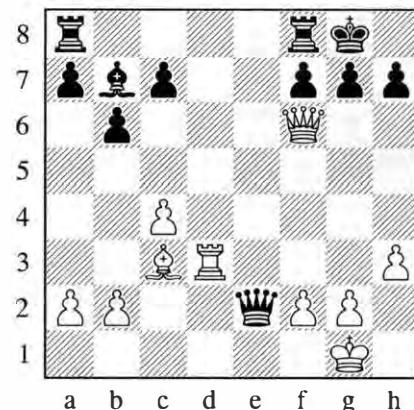
★ ★ ★



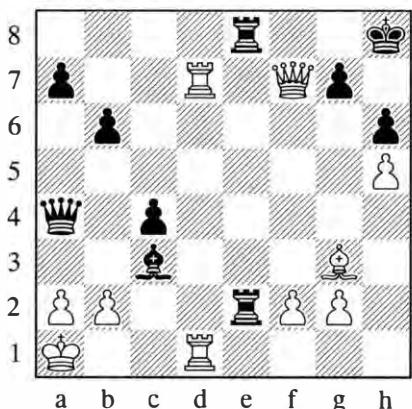
➤ Ex. 10-2 ◀



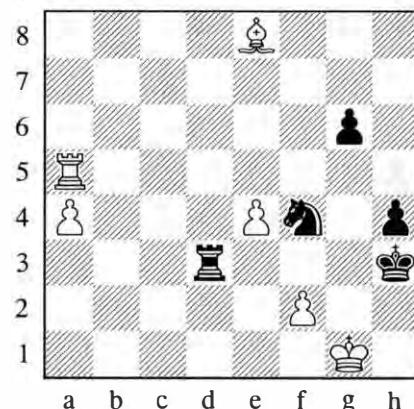
➤ Ex. 10-5 ◀



➤ Ex. 10-3 ◀

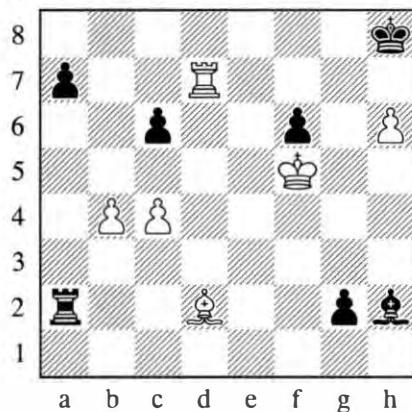


➤ Ex. 10-6 ◀

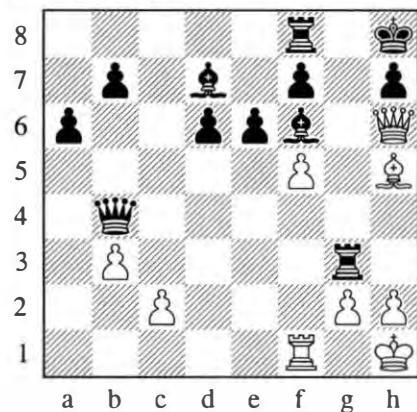


Exercises

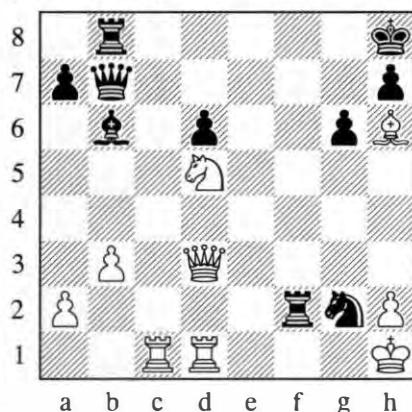
► Ex. 10-7 ◀ ★



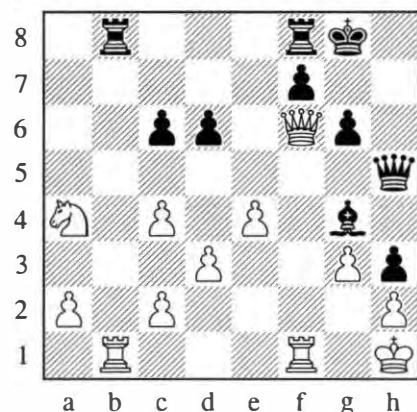
► Ex. 10-10 ◀ ★★



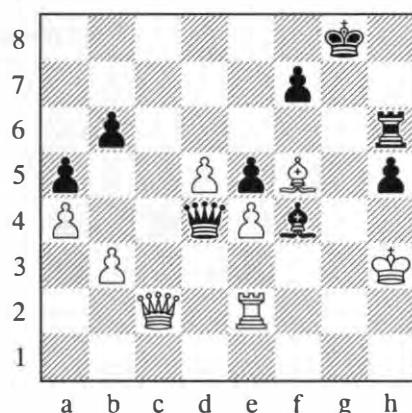
► Ex. 10-8 ◀ ★



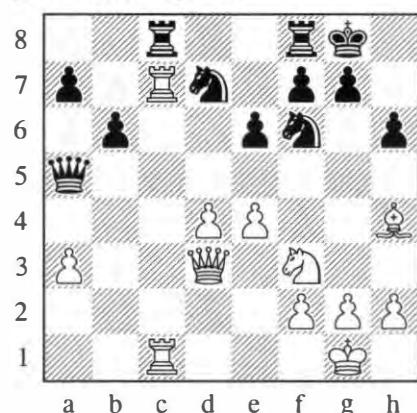
► Ex. 10-11 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 10-9 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 10-12 ◀ ★



Solutions

Ex. 10-1

B.Baum – O.Thal

West Germany 1975

1... $\mathbb{B}b4!!$

(1 point)

2.axb4 $\mathbb{W}c4\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{W}d3\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{W}b1\#$
5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{W}xb2\#$

0–1

(another 1 point)

Ex. 10-2

H.Munoz – H.Salazar

Novi Sad Olympiad 1990

1...d3! 2.cxd3

2. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ dxc2+–

2... $\mathbb{B}c4!!$

(2 points)

Blocking the c-file.

3.bxc4

3.dxc4 is more stubborn, but also insufficient: 3...c2 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h7?$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$
6. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ c1 $\mathbb{W}\#$ +

3...c2+– 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ c1 $\mathbb{W}\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{W}d1$

0–1

6. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ is met by 6... $\mathbb{W}e1\#$.

Ex. 10-3

A.Miles – C.Pritchett

London 1982

1. $\mathbb{Q}e5!!$

(1 point)

Black resigned. He loses quickly in all variations:

a) 1... $\mathbb{Q}8xe5$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$

b) 1... $\mathbb{Q}xb2\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xb2+–$

c) 1... $\mathbb{W}xd1\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{Q}2xe5$ 3.bxc3+–

d) 1... $\mathbb{W}xd7$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xd7$ $\mathbb{Q}2xe5$ 3.bxc3+–

e) 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xe8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}g6\#$ +

Ex. 10-4

V.Simagin – D.Bronstein

Moscow 1947

1. $\mathbb{Q}g5!!$

(1 point)

Blocking the g-file.

1... $\mathbb{h}1\mathbb{W}$

After 1... $\mathbb{f}xg5$ 2.f6, the threat of 3. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ wins immediately.

Also hopeless is 1... $\mathbb{W}xg5$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$
3. $\mathbb{W}c7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xh2+–$.

(1 point for this variation)

2. $\mathbb{W}e8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}g6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$
5. $\mathbb{W}d8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{W}e7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}e8\#$

Black resigned, on account of 7... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (or
7... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}g6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$) 8.f6+ $\mathbb{Q}h7$
9. $\mathbb{W}f7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 10. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$.

(another 1 point for this variation)

Ex. 10-5

C.Ahues – N.N.

Berlin 1920

Black resigned! But he could still have won the game by blocking the g-file.

1... $\mathbb{W}g4!!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{g}xf6??$ 2. $\mathbb{B}g3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$

2. $\mathbb{h}xg4$ $\mathbb{g}xf6+–$

Ex. 10-6

Sergeev – A.Panchenko

USSR 1984

1. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$

(1 point)

This forces Black to exchange rooks.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$

1... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 2.exd5+–; 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd5?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 3.exd5 g5 4. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$ g4 5.a5 $\mathbb{Q}c3$
6.a6 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 7.a7 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 8.a8 $\mathbb{W}!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6$

Black is mated next move, either by 10. $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$ or after 9...g4 10. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$.

1–0

Solutions

Ex. 10-7

B.Perenyi – J.Brandics

Budapest 1985

1. $\mathbb{Q}g5!!$

(1 point)

Of course not 1. $\mathbb{Q}g6?$ $g1\mathbb{W}\dagger -+$.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$

1... $g1\mathbb{W}$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\dagger$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $h7\dagger -+$

2. $\mathbb{Q}g6$

1-0

Ex. 10-8

J.Klovans – A.Tolush

USSR Team Ch, Leningrad 1962

1. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$

(1 point)

Blocking the 7th rank. Black resigned, in view of 1... $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c3\dagger -.$

Ex. 10-9

Kasperovich – Buchman

Moscow 1977

1... $\mathbb{Q}g6!!$

(1 point)

Black blocks the g-file and prepares ... $\mathbb{W}g1$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{W}g1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\dagger$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6\dagger$ (or 4. $\mathbb{Q}g8\dagger$ $\mathbb{Q}h8!-+$) 4... $\mathbb{Q}h6!-+$

(another 1 point for this variation)

2... $\mathbb{W}e3\dagger$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5\dagger$

0-1

Ex. 10-10

M.Tal – I.Platonov

Dubna 1973

1. $\mathbb{Q}g6!!$

(1 point)

1. $\mathbb{W}xf6\dagger?$ $\mathbb{Q}g7-+$

1. $\mathbb{W}xf8\dagger?$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xd7$ $\mathbb{W}h4-+$

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xf8\dagger$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xf8\dagger$

(another 1 point)

Ex. 10-11

Zhuravlev – Kapanadse

Tbilisi 1977

1. ... $\mathbb{Q}xb1$

1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ also wins: 2. $\mathbb{Q}bel$ $\mathbb{Q}b1!!-+$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!!$

(2 points)

3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

3. $exf5$ $\mathbb{W}f3\dagger -+$

3... $\mathbb{W}e2$

0-1

Ex. 10-12

P.San Segundo – J.Dorfman

Mondariz 2000

1. ... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$

(1 point)

A typical idea!

2. $dxc5$

2. $\mathbb{Q}7xc5$ $bxcc5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $cxd4!-+$

2... $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $gxf6$ 4. $c6$ $\mathbb{Q}fc8-+$

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 19

- **17** points and above ➤ **Excellent**
- **14** points and above ➤ **Good**
- **10** points ➤ **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **10** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

Contents

- ✓ Lasker Variation
- ✓ 9.cxd5 Variation
- ✓ 9. $\mathbb{W}c2$ Variation
- ✓ 9. $\mathbb{B}c1$ Variation

Opening repertoire for Black against 1.d4

This chapter is only one example of how you can prepare an opening repertoire. You do not have to play the variation suggested if you do not like this opening or if you prefer more aggressive variations. However, some knowledge of typical positional ideas resulting from the opening can also be useful and will extend your positional arsenal.

Our opening repertoire against 1.d4 will be constructed around the improved Lasker Variation of the Queen's Gambit. This is a solid and reliable weapon. Black's play is strategically simple and based on sound positional foundations.

Characteristic of the Lasker Variation (1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 0–0 7.e3) is the exchange of dark-squared bishops after 7... $\mathbb{Q}e4$. This exchange leads to a straightforward situation for Black; the queen finds a secure position on e7 and in most lines the light-squared bishop is fianchettoed to b7. After the obligatory 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$, White has three main variations: 9.cxd5, 9. $\mathbb{W}c2$ or 9. $\mathbb{B}c1$.

The 9.cxd5 variation

A.Karpov – A.Yusupov

Candidates(6), London 1989

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$

4.g3 leads to the Catalan Opening.

4... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$

5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ is the other variation which Black should study.

5...0–0 6.e3 h6

Lasker played the immediate 6... $\mathbb{Q}e4$. But in some variations the move ...h7-h6 is useful for Black.

7. $\mathbb{Q}h4$

After 7. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 8. $\mathbb{B}c1$ c6 9. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 10.0–0 Black should play 10...dxc4 11. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ e5 and in that way solve the problem of the light-squared bishop – it will later come into play via the c8-h3 diagonal.

7... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 9.cxd5

Diagram 11-1

This forces further exchanges. 9... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ dxe4 10. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ f5 is not dangerous for Black.

9... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 10.bxc3 exd5 11. $\mathbb{W}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 12.c4

White obtains a strong centre. But Black is well developed and can prepare counterplay in good time.

12...dxc4 13. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6!$

Threatening ... $\mathbb{Q}a5$.

14. $\mathbb{W}c3$

The main alternative is 14. $\mathbb{Q}e2?$ b6 15.0–0 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}fc1$ $\mathbb{Q}ac8$ 17. $\mathbb{W}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ (a typical idea, Black prepares ...c7-c5) 18. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ c5 19. $\mathbb{Q}acl$ cxd4 20. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ Computer Deep Fritz – Kramnik, Bahrain 2002. And here I recommend the active 21... $\mathbb{W}e4$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ (22. $\mathbb{Q}f3?$! $\mathbb{W}b1\#$ 23. $\mathbb{W}d1$ $\mathbb{W}xd1\#$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$) 22... $\mathbb{Q}d6=.$

14... $\mathbb{Q}g4!$

Diagram 11-2

This will weaken the opponent's pawn structure.

14... $\mathbb{W}b4$ is not so strong: 15. $\mathbb{Q}c1\pm$ (Alekhine)

15.0–0

If 15. $\mathbb{Q}e2$, then 15... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 16.gxf3 (16. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ is bad, due to 16... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}ab8$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{W}f6$) 16... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ and Black threatens ... $\mathbb{Q}xd4\#$, Martinez – Guimard, Argentina 1948.

15... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 16.gxf3 $\mathbb{W}f6!$

Black improves the position of his queen and begins preparing ...c7-c5.

17. $\mathbb{Q}e2$

17.f4 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (Δ ...c5) 18. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}ac8\rightleftarrows$ (ECO).

17... $\mathbb{Q}ac8!$

Diagram 11-3

Black's plan is clear: ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ and ...c7-c5.

18. $\mathbb{Q}ab1$ b6 19. $\mathbb{Q}fc1$

19. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ is followed by 19... $\mathbb{W}xf3!$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}fc1$ (or 21.h3 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ g6 24. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{W}f3\#$) 21... $\mathbb{Q}e7$, intending ... $\mathbb{Q}f5-h4$ with an excellent initiative on the kingside.

19... $\mathbb{Q}e7=$

Black has good chances on the kingside (e.g. ... $\mathbb{Q}d5-h5$, ... $\mathbb{W}h4$). In the centre he should not forget the planned ...c7-c5.

Diagram 11-1

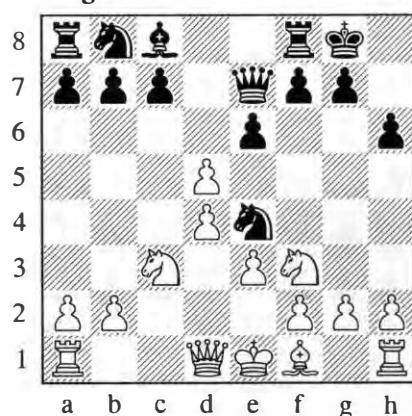


Diagram 11-2

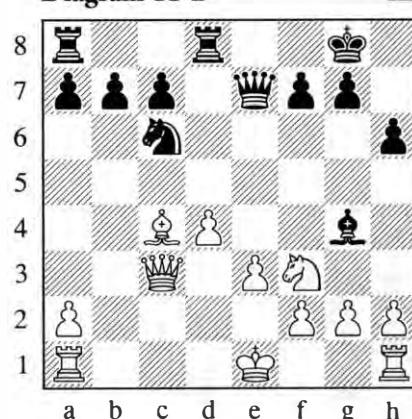
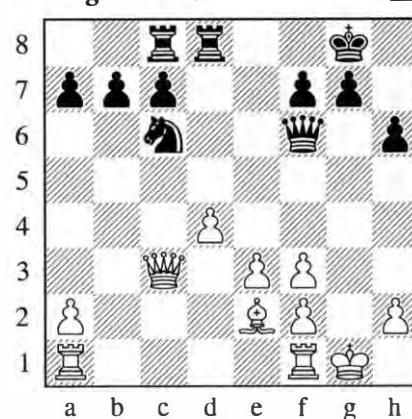


Diagram 11-3



The 9. $\mathbb{W}c2$ Variation

A.Karpov – A.Yusupov

Candidates(4), London 1989

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 0–0
6.e3 h6 7. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 9. $\mathbb{W}c2$

Diagram 11-4

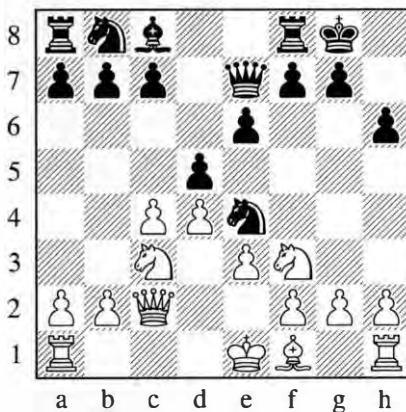


Diagram 11-4

A solid system, but one which only offers White very modest hopes of an advantage.

9... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 10. $\mathbb{W}xc3$ $\mathbb{d}xc4$

The simplest solution. Black will fianchetto his bishop and obtain good counterplay.

11. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ b6 12.0–0

Or 12. $\mathbb{E}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 14.0–0 $\mathbb{E}fc8$ 15.b4 c5 16.bxc5 bxc5 17. $\mathbb{W}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 18.dxc5 $\mathbb{E}xc5=$.

12... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e2$

13. $\mathbb{E}fd1$ is followed by 13... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 14.b4 c5 15.bxc5 bxc5 16.d5 exd5 17. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 18. $\mathbb{E}xd5$ $\mathbb{E}ac8=$.

13...c5?!

A strategically important move. Black could even make more preparations for this advance: 13... $\mathbb{E}c8$ 14.b4 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 15. $\mathbb{E}fc1$ (15. $\mathbb{E}fd1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6?$) 15...c5 16.dxc5 (16.bxc5 bxc5 17. $\mathbb{W}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}f8=$) 16...bxc5 17.b5 a6 and White has no advantage.

14.dxc5 $\mathbb{E}c8$

Diagram 11-5

15. $\mathbb{Q}d4?!$

After 15.b4 bxc5 16.b5 there comes 16...a6. Despite this, it is the only way for White to fight for an advantage.

15... $\mathbb{E}xc5$ 16. $\mathbb{W}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6!$

The opponent's centralized pieces must either be exchanged off or attacked.

17. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$

Black is already more active. If 17. $\mathbb{Q}b3?!$ then 17... $\mathbb{E}c2$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{W}xa3$ 19.bxa3 $\mathbb{E}c8\bar{f}$.

17... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 18. $\mathbb{E}fd1?!$

18. $\mathbb{E}fc1$ would be better: 18... $\mathbb{E}xc1\uparrow$ 19. $\mathbb{E}xc1$ $\mathbb{W}xa3$ 20.bxa3 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 21. $\mathbb{E}c2=$

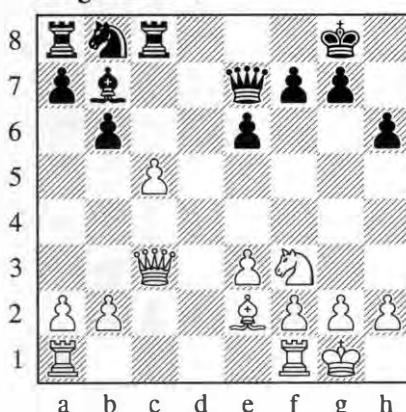
18... $\mathbb{E}c8!$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

19. $\mathbb{E}ac1?$ is followed by 19... $\mathbb{W}g5$ 20.g3 (20. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2!–+$) 20... $\mathbb{E}xc1$ 21. $\mathbb{E}xc1$ $\mathbb{W}d5$ 22.f3 $\mathbb{W}d2–+$.

19... $\mathbb{Q}d5\bar{f}$

Black has a dangerous initiative.

Diagram 11-5



The 9.♗c1 Variation

V.Zvjaginsev – V.Bologan

Poikovsky 2003

1.d4 ♜f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 d5 4.♘c3 ♜e7 5.♗g5 h6
6.♗h4 0–0 7.e3 ♜e4 8.♗xe7 ♜xe7 9.♗c1

Diagram 11-6

A logical move, which poses Black the most problems.

9...c6 10.♗d3 ♜xc3 11.♗xc3 dxc4 12.♗xc4 ♗d7

Black must develop his light-squared bishop and has two different plans: ...e6-e5 or ...b7-b6 followed by ...♗b7 and ...c5.

13.0–0 b6

13...e5 is of course possible, but it also opens up the game for the white pieces. The text move appears to be safer.

14.♗d3

Otherwise Black has no problems developing his queenside.

14...c5

14...♗b7 is considered risky, on account of 15.♗e4 ♜ac8 16.♗c2. However, here Black can try 16...♗a6 followed by ...c5.

15.♗e4 ♜b8 16.♗a4

16.♗c2 a5 17.♗d1 ♜d8 18.♗c6 ♗b7 19.♗xb7 ♜xb7 20.♗cd3 ♜bb8 led only to a minimal advantage for White in Khalifman – Korneev, Spain 2003.

A good alternative is to meet 16.♗c2 with 16...♗a6? 17.♗c1 ♜fc8 18.♗a4 cxd4 19.exd4 (or 19.♗xd4 ♜xc3 20.♗xc3 ♜c5 21.♗c2 ♜xe4 22.♗c6? ♜d6+) 19...♜xc3 20.♗xc3 ♜f6!=.

16...♗f6!

Diagram 11-7

This strong move leads to sharp play. Previously 16...♗b7 17.♗xb7 ♜xb7 18.♗c2 a5 19.a3 was played here and after 19...♜d8 20.♗d1 ♜bb8 White is only minimally better.

17.♗c6

Black has no problems after 17.dxc5 bxc5.

17...cxd4 18.exd4

18.♗xd4 e5 19.♗f3 ♗g4 doesn't promise White any advantage.

18...a6

Diagram 11-6

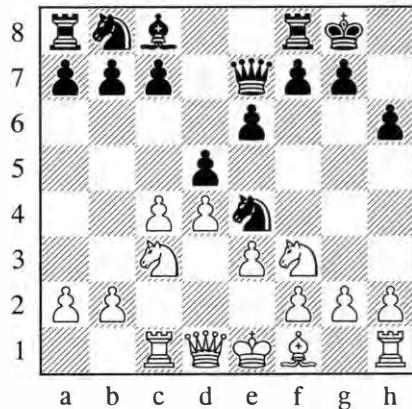


Diagram 11-7



Opening 2

There is also the interesting 18...b5 19.Qxb5 a6 20.Qc4 Qxb2 21.Qb3 Qb7.

19.Qe5 Qb7 20.Qfc1 Qd5!

This forces equality.

21.Qxd5 Qxd5 22.Qxa6 Qa8 23.Qxb6 Qg5

White now has to weaken his castled position.

Diagram 11-8



24.g3 Qxa2 25.Qd7 Qd2!

This gives Black enough counterplay and is stronger than 25...Qe8 26.Qc8.

26.Qxf8

Or 26.Qc8 Qxb2! 27.Qxb2 Qxb2=.

26...Qxb2 27.Qxb2 Qxb2 28.Qc8 Qb7!

28...g5?! is too optimistic. There follows 29.Qxe6† Qh7 30.Qxc2 Qb4 31.Qc7 Qf3 32.d5±.

29.Qxe6†!=

White must force the draw.

29...Qxc8 30.Qxc8† Qh7 31.Qf8†

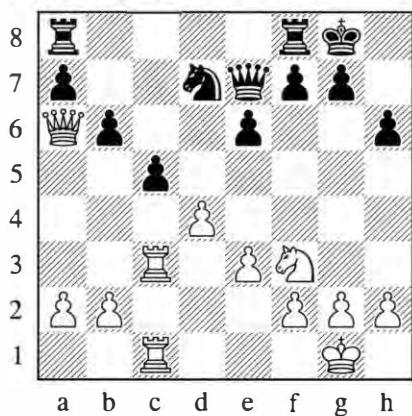
With perpetual check.

½-½

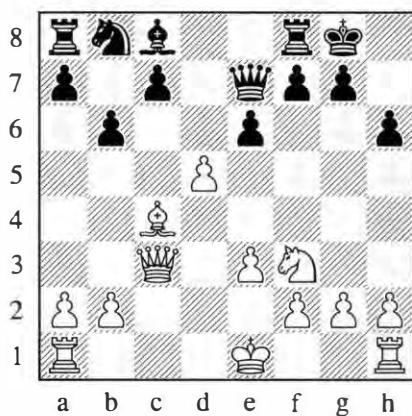
The test will help you better assimilate some of the important ideas in this opening. Think for about 5 minutes (no more than 10 minutes) and decide what you would play in the position in a game. Give only the necessary reasons for your choice. Your score is not so important. It is more important to play through on a board all the games from the test and to understand the typical ideas.

Exercises

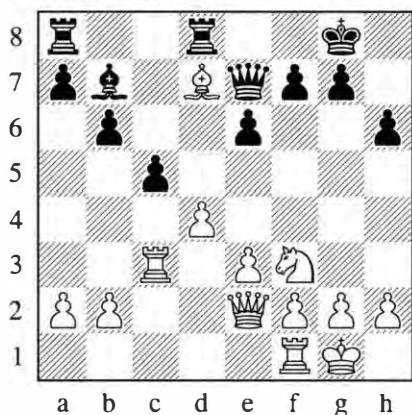
► Ex. 11-1 ◀ ★★ ▼



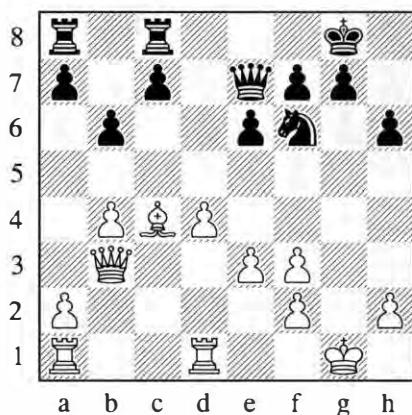
► Ex. 11-4 ◀ ★ ▼



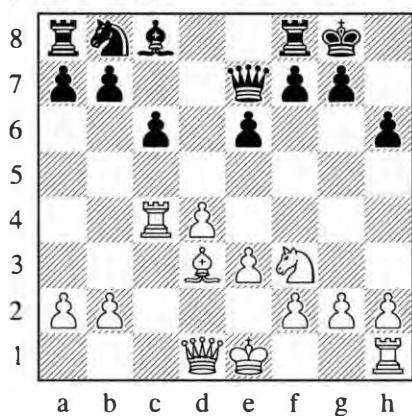
► Ex. 11-2 ◀ ★★ ▼



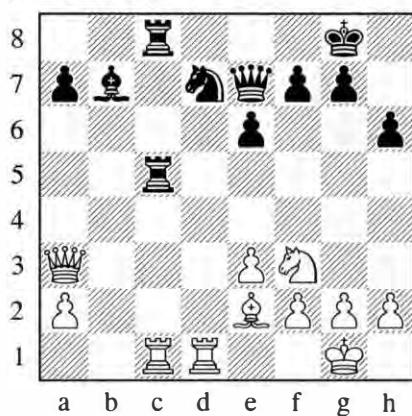
► Ex. 11-5 ◀ ★★ ▼



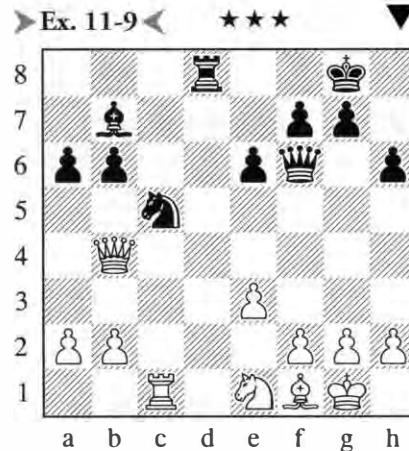
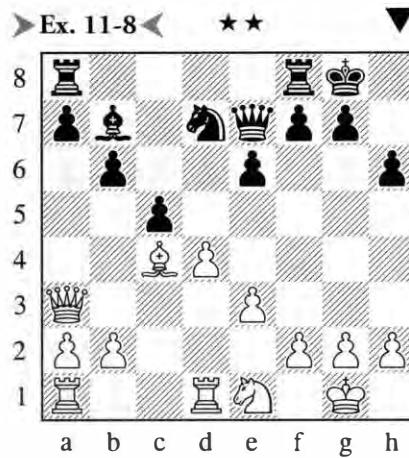
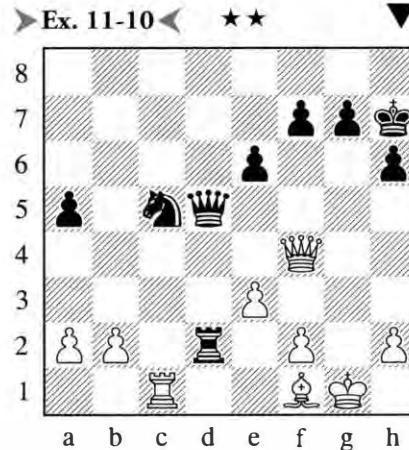
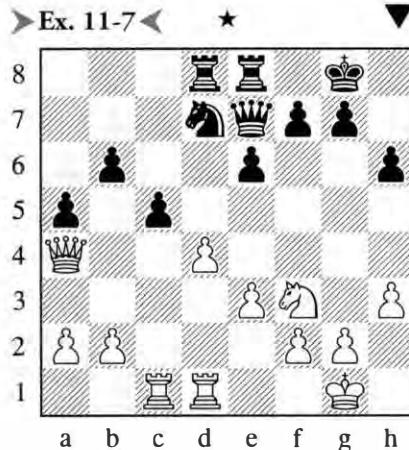
► Ex. 11-3 ◀ ★★ ▼



► Ex. 11-6 ◀ ★ ▼



Exercises



Solutions

Ex. 11-1

B.Gulko – A.Yusupov

Reykjavik 1990

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.Qc3 ♜e7 4.Qf3 ♜f6 5.Qg5
h6 6.Qh4 0–0 7.e3 ♜e4 8.Qxe7 ♜xe7 9.Qc1
c6 10.Qd3 ♜xc3 11.Qxc3 dxc4 12.Qxc4 ♜d7
13.0–0 b6 14.Qe2 ♜b7 15.Qa6 ♜xa6 16.Qxa6
c5 17.Qfc1

Diagram Ex. 11-1

17...e5!

(2 points)

A typical idea. Black cranks up the pressure in the centre and achieves equality.

18.Qb7 ♜d6 19.Qc4 ♜fb8 20.Qe4 exd4
21.exd4 ♜e8 22.Qc2
½–½

Ex. 11-2

P.Cramling – A.Yusupov

Hamburg 1991

1.d4 ♜f6 2.c4 e6 3.Qf3 d5 4.Qc3 ♜e7 5.Qg5
h6 6.Qh4 0–0 7.e3 ♜e4 8.Qxe7 ♜xe7 9.Qc1
c6 10.Qd3 ♜xc3 11.Qxc3 dxc4 12.Qxc4 ♜d7
13.0–0 b6 14.Qd3 c5 15.Qb5 ♜d8 16.Qe2?!

(Q16.Qc6) 16...Qb7 17.Qxd7?!

Diagram Ex. 11-2

17...cxtd4!?

(2 points)

A useful tactical idea. Black avoids the weakening of his pawn structure after 17...Qxd7 18.dxc5.

18.Qxd4 ♜xd7 19.a3

19.Qfc1 ♜d5 20.f3 ♜xa2?

19...Qd5 20.f3 Qac8 21.Qfc1?

20.Qxc8 Qxc8 21.Qd1 e5 22.Qb5

Better is 22.Qf3 ♜f5 23.Qe1?.

22...Qc6 23.f3

23.e4 Qa6 24.a4 Qxb5 25.axb5 ♜c2?

23...Qa6 24.a4 Qxb5 25.axb5 ♜c2?

Or 25...Qc4?.

Ex. 11-3

S.Ionov – A.Yusupov

Oviedo (rapid) 1993

1.Qf3 d5 2.d4 ♜f6 3.c4 e6 4.Qc3 ♜e7 5.Qg5
h6 6.Qh4 0–0 7.e3 ♜e4 8.Qxe7 ♜xe7 9.Qc1
c6 10.Qd3 ♜xc3 11.Qxc3 dxc4 12.Qxc4 ♜d7

Diagram Ex. 11-3

12...Qd7

(2 points)

Black prepares ...e5.

13.0–0 e5 14.dxe5 ♜xe5 15.Qe4 ♜xf3†
16.Qxf3 ♜e6 17.Qc4 ♜ad8=

Black has developed his forces well and can look to the future with optimism.

18.Qxe6 fxe6 19.Qe2 ♜d5 20.Qd1 ♜f6
21.Qed4 ♜fd8 22.Qc4 a5 23.h3 ♜8d6
24.Qc3 ♜d8 25.g3 b6 26.Q1d2 ♜d7 27.a3
Qf8 28.b4 axb4 29.axb4 e5 30.Qxd5 ♜xd5
31.Qxd5 ♜xd5 32.Qc2 e4 33.Qa4 c5
34.bxc5 bxc5 35.Qb5 ♜e7 36.Qg2 h5 37.h4
Qf6 38.Qg1 g6 39.Qg2 ♜g7 40.Qg1

½–½

Ex. 11-4

E.Lobron – A.Yusupov

Munich 1993

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.Qc3 ♜e7 4.Qf3 ♜f6 5.Qg5
h6 6.Qh4 0–0 7.e3 ♜e4 8.Qxe7 ♜xe7 9.Qc2
Qxc3 10.Qxc3 dxc4 11.Qxc4 b6 12.d5

Diagram Ex. 11-4

12...exd5

(1 point)

The simplest solution, although 12...c6 (also 1 point) would be just as good: 13.dxe6 ♜xe6

13.Qxd5 c6 14.Qc4 ♜b7?!

Black gets into difficulties only because of this inattentive move. Either 14...Qe8!= or 14...Qe6!= would be a clear improvement. Or simply first 14...Qd7! and only then 15...Qb7=.

15.Qe5!

Threatening ♜g6.

Solutions

15...b5!?

15... $\mathbb{W}f6!?$

16. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 17.a4 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{W}e8$

19.axb5 $\mathbb{B}ac8$ 20.0–0 c5 21. $\mathbb{Q}f4\pm$

Even better is 21. $\mathbb{B}xa7!?$ c4 22. $\mathbb{W}xc4$ $\mathbb{W}xc4$

23. $\mathbb{B}xc4$ $\mathbb{B}xc4$ 24. $\mathbb{B}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 25. $\mathbb{B}e7+-.$

Ex. 11-5

C.Lutz – A.Yusupov

Munich 1993

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 0–0 7.e3 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 9. $\mathbb{W}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 10. $\mathbb{W}xc3$ dxc4 11. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ b6 12. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 13.0–0 $\mathbb{B}c8$ 14.b4 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 15. $\mathbb{B}fd1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!?$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5!?$ (16...c5 17.dxc5 bxc5 18.b5 $\mathbb{Q}d5$) 17. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 18.gxf3

Diagram 11-5

18...c6!

(2 points)

After the exchange of the light-squared bishop, Black has to protect some light squares with his pawns.

19. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$

The knight is so well placed here that Black has no more problems.

20.a3 a5= 21.bxa5

But not 21.b5? cxb5 22.. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ $\mathbb{W}g5\ddagger$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}c3-.$

21... $\mathbb{B}xa5$ 22. $\mathbb{B}dc1$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 23.a4 $\mathbb{B}ca8$ 24. $\mathbb{W}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ g5 26. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{B}8a7$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 29. $\mathbb{B}cb1$ b5 30.axb5 $\mathbb{B}xa1$ 31. $\mathbb{B}xa1$ $\mathbb{B}xa1$ 32. $\mathbb{W}xa1$ $\mathbb{W}b4$ 33. $\mathbb{W}d1$ cxb5 34.h4 $\mathbb{W}c3$ 35.hxg5 hxg5 36.d5 exd5 37. $\mathbb{B}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 38. $\mathbb{W}xd5$ b4 39. $\mathbb{Q}h2$

39. $\mathbb{W}xg5\ddagger$? $\mathbb{W}g7-+$

39... $\mathbb{W}c7\ddagger$ 40. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ 41. $\mathbb{W}b3\ddagger$

Ex. 11-6

L.Ftacnik – A.Yusupov

Bundesliga 1994

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 0–0 7.e3 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 9. $\mathbb{W}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 10. $\mathbb{W}xc3$ dxc4 11. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ b6 12.0–0 $\mathbb{Q}b7$

13. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ c5 14.dxc5 $\mathbb{B}c8$ 15.b4 bxc5 16. $\mathbb{B}acl$

$\mathbb{Q}d7$ 17.bxc5 $\mathbb{B}xc5$ 18. $\mathbb{W}a3$ $\mathbb{B}ac8$ 19. $\mathbb{B}fd1$

Diagram 11-6

19... $\mathbb{Q}f8!=$

(1 point)

A typical move. It is always advisable to unpin as soon as possible.

19... $\mathbb{W}f8$ would be somewhat more passive. But first playing 19... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ (also 1 point) is not bad either.

20. $\mathbb{B}xc5$ $\mathbb{W}xc5$ 21. $\mathbb{W}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 24.a3 $\mathbb{W}a5$ 25. $\mathbb{W}b4\ddagger$ $\mathbb{W}xb4$ 26.axb4 e5 27. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 29. $\mathbb{B}xd7$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 31.f3 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 32. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}xd5\ddagger$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 34. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 35. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ f6 36. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 37.h4 g5 38.hxg5 $\mathbb{W}xg5$

$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

Ex. 11-7

J.Benjamin – A.Yusupov

Zürich 1994

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 0–0 7.e3 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 9. $\mathbb{W}c1$ c6 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ dxc4 12. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 13.0–0 b6 14. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 15. $\mathbb{B}d1$ $\mathbb{B}fd8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ 17. $\mathbb{W}xa6$ c5 18. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{B}db8$ 19. $\mathbb{W}e4$ $\mathbb{B}d8$ 20. $\mathbb{W}b7$ $\mathbb{B}db8$ 21. $\mathbb{W}e4$ $\mathbb{B}d8$ 22. $\mathbb{W}c2$ a5 23.h3 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 24. $\mathbb{W}a4$ $\mathbb{B}ad8$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}cc1$

Diagram 11-7

25...e5!

(1 point)

We have already seen this idea in Ex. 11-1.

26.dxe5 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$

$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

Ex. 11-8

J.Granda Zuniga – A.Yusupov

Moscow Olympiad 1994

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 0–0 7.e3 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 9. $\mathbb{W}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 10. $\mathbb{W}xc3$ dxc4 11. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ b6 12.0–0 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 13. $\mathbb{B}fd1$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 14.gxf3 $\mathbb{Q}d7$)

Solutions

15. $\mathbb{Q}b5\pm$) 14. $\mathbb{Q}e1?!$ (14.b4 c5 15.bxc5 bxc5
 16.d5 exd5 17. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}ac8$
 19. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}b6=$
 M.Tal – G.Timoshchenko, Tbilisi 1978)
 14...c5 (14...e5 15.d5±) 15. $\mathbb{Q}a3$

Diagram Ex. 11-8

15...a6!

(2 points)

15... $\mathbb{Q}fd8$ (1 point) is met by 16. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$. It is useful for Black to control the b5-square.

16. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$

Black unpins the c5-pawn. Alternatives are 16... $\mathbb{Q}fd8?!$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}acl$ $\mathbb{Q}f8=$ and 16... $\mathbb{Q}g5?!$.

17. $\mathbb{Q}acl$ $\mathbb{Q}fd8$

Or 17... $\mathbb{Q}fc8$ 18. dxc5 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ e5=.

18. dxc5 $\mathbb{Q}xc5=$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xd8?$

Better is 19. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$
 21. $\mathbb{Q}xd8?$ $\mathbb{Q}xd8=$.

19... $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}b4$

20.b4? is bad, because of 20... $\mathbb{Q}d2$.

See Ex. 11-9.

Ex. 11-9

J.Granda Zuniga – A.Yusupov

Moscow Olympiad 1994

20...a5!

(2 points)

Of course not 20...e5? on account of 21. $\mathbb{Q}xc5+-$. After the pawn sacrifice Black starts a strong attack.

21. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$

21. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 22. bxc3 (22. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$
 23. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6+-$) 22... $\mathbb{Q}d2?$

21... $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 22. $f3$

An emergency brake.

22.f3 is followed by 22... $\mathbb{Q}h4$

(another 1 point)

23. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ (23. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3!+-$) 23... $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ (23... $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ would not be so clear after 25. $\mathbb{Q}b8?$! $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ or 26. $\mathbb{Q}g3$) 24. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}f2?$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}c8?$! $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ g6 28. $\mathbb{Q}xg6?$! $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}c3?$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ f5+-.
 22... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$

Of course not 23. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2+-$.

23... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}b8?$! $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5!?$

26. $\mathbb{Q}f4?!$

26. $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ would be more stubborn.

See Ex. 11-10.

Ex. 11-10

J.Granda Zuniga – A.Yusupov

Moscow Olympiad 1994

26... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$

(1 point)

27. $\mathbb{Q}c4$

Other moves also clearly lose:

a) 27. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}d1?$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{Q}xd1?$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

$\mathbb{Q}d2+-$

b) 27. $f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2?$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$
 $\mathbb{Q}d2?+-$

27... $\mathbb{Q}a8!$

(another 1 point)

27... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ would not be so good, because of 28. $\mathbb{Q}a6!$

28. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2?+$

Or 28... $\mathbb{Q}g5?+-$.

29. $\mathbb{Q}xe6?$

It is not often that a grandmaster overlooks a mate in one! But the position was lost anyway:

29. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ $\mathbb{Q}g8?+$

29... $\mathbb{Q}h1#$

Ex. 11-11

L.Christiansen – A.Yusupov

Bundesliga 1995

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 0–0 7.e3 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}cl$ c6 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ dxc4 12. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ e5 14. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

Diagram Ex. 11-11

14...f5!

(2 points)

Only 1 point for the slightly more passive 14...g6 15.0–0±.

15. dxe5 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$
 18. 0–0 $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}ae8=$

Solutions

Black has mobilized all his forces and tries to exploit his pawn majority on the queenside.
**20.h3 c5 21.Qd6 Qxb2 22.Qb1 Qxa2
 23.Qxb7 Qa5 24.Qh2 Qc8**

White now forces the draw.

**25.Qxh6†! gxh6 26.Qd6 Qxb7 27.Qxh6†
 Qg8 28.Qb3† c4 29.Qxc4†**
½-½

Ex. 11-12

V.Kramnik – C.Lutz

Bundesliga 1994

**1.Qf3 d5 2.d4 Qf6 3.c4 e6 4.Qc3 Qe7 5.Qg5
 h6 6.Qh4 0–0 7.e3 Qe4 8.Qxe7 Qxe7 9.cxd5
 Qxc3 10.bxc3 exd5 11.Qb3 Qd8 12.c4 dxc4
 13.Qxc4 Qc6 14.Qe2 b6! (14...Qg4 15.0–0±)**

15.0–0 Qb7 16.Qacl Qa5 17.Qb2

Diagram Ex. 11-12

17...Qac8=

(1 point)

Preparing the standard move ...c5.

18.h3

Or 18.Qc3 c5 19.Qa3 Qf8=.

18...c5 19.dxc5

19.Qa3 Qf8 20.dxc5 Qd5!= does not promise White anything.

**19...Qxc5 20.Qxc5 Qxc5 21.Qcl Qe7
 22.Qd4 Qg5**

Black should prefer either 22...Qf6 or 22...g6?.

23.Qg4 Qd5

23...h5 24.Qf3±

24.Qf3 Qd7 25.Qxb7 Qxb7 26.Qc6±

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 21

- **18 points and above** → **Excellent**
- **14 points and above** → **Good**
- **11 points** → **Pass mark**

If you scored less than 11 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ The pawn in your own half of the board
- ✓ Defensive method
- ✓ 'Combined method'
- ✓ The rule of 6
- ✓ Knight's pawns
- ✓ Central pawns
- ✓ Rook's pawns
 - The Vancura defence

Diagram 12-1



Example 1 =

Simple rook endings 2

We recently took a look at this subject in Chapter 5 and we shall now study some more simple rook endings (rook and pawn versus rook). It is very important to be familiar with these theoretical positions, so that when you have a complicated position you have a good idea of what sort of ending to aim for.

We shall examine two different type of ending: positions with the pawn in our own half of the board and positions with an advanced rook's pawn.

The pawn in your own half of the board (with the opposing king cut off)

The following example illustrates some of the most important methods employed in such situations:

- 1) in defence: *frontal attack, transition to a pawn ending, cutting off the king horizontally*;
- 2) in attack: the '*combined method*'.

Diagram 12-1

The threat is $\mathbb{R}c3-b4$.

Let us first examine a typical defensive idea: the *frontal attack*.

A) 1... $\mathbb{E}c8?$

An attempt to employ the frontal attack fails in this case, because **the king is badly placed on e7!** If the king were on e6, the position would be drawn! This will not become clear until move 6. Despite that, **the frontal attack is an effective method whenever there are at least three ranks between the pawn and the rook.**

Black would do better to start with 1... $\mathbb{E}e6$ – see variation C below.

2. $\mathbb{R}b4 \mathbb{E}b8\#$

2... $\mathbb{E}d8$ is too late, in view of 3. $\mathbb{E}xd8 \mathbb{R}xd8$
4. $\mathbb{R}b5!+-$.

3. $\mathbb{R}a5$

This is the so-called '*combined method*'. The king advances as far as possible (onto the second square of the diagonal on which the pawn is placed – in this case to a6), after which the rook defends the pawn.

3...♜c8

If 3...♜a8†? then 4.♚b6 ♜b8† 5.♚c7+–.

4.♚b5 ♜b8† 5.♚a6 ♜c8 6.♜d4!

Diagram 12-2

6...♛e6

Threatening ...♛e5. If the king were already on e6, the position after 6...♛e5 would be a draw.

7.♚b7! ♜c5

7...♛e5 is met by 8.♜d5!†+–.

8.♚b6 ♜c8 9.c5+–

You already know from Chapter 5 how to win such positions: after a few moves we reach the ‘bridge’ position.

But in the starting position (Diagram 12-1) Black actually has several ways to reach a draw.

B) 1...♜d8!

Diagram 12-3

Here the simplest solution is *the transition to a pawn ending*. If White does not agree to the exchange of rooks, the black king gets in front of the pawn and Black can employ the Philidor defence – see Chapter 5.

2.♜xd8

2.♜h1 ♚d7 3.♚b4 ♜g8 4.♚b5 ♜g6=

2...♛xd8 3.♚d4 ♜c8!=

C) 1...♛e6!

Diagram 12-4

This move improves the position of the king for a frontal attack and is also sufficient for a draw. The optimal position for a frontal attack is rook on c8 and king on e6 or e5.

2.♚b4

After 2.c5 Black has a choice of ways to draw:

a) 2...♛e7? 3.♚c4 ♜d8!=

b) 2...♜h4! (**cutting off the king horizontally** is an important resource for the defence) 3.c6 ♛e7 4.c7 ♜h8=

2...♜b8† 3.♚a5 ♜c8!

The frontal attack now leads to a draw.

4.♚b5 ♜b8† 5.♚a6 ♜c8 6.♜d4 ♛e5! 7.♜d5†

7.♜h4 ♚d6 8.♚b5 ♜c5†=

7...♛e6 8.♚b5 ♜b8† 9.♚a4 ♜c8 10.♚b4 ♜b8†

Diagram 12-2

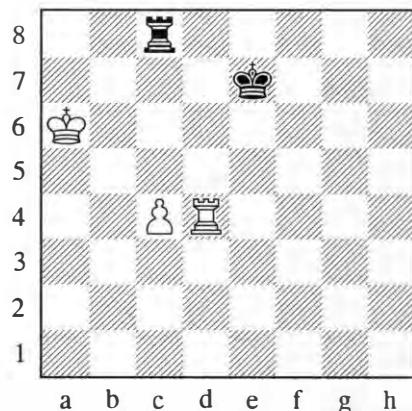


Diagram 12-3

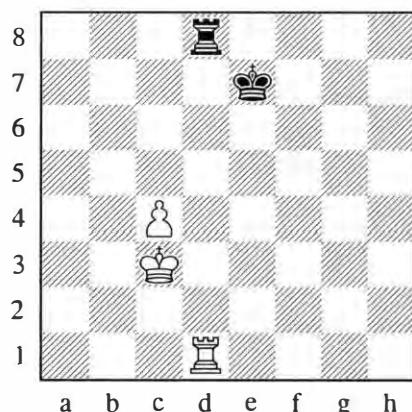
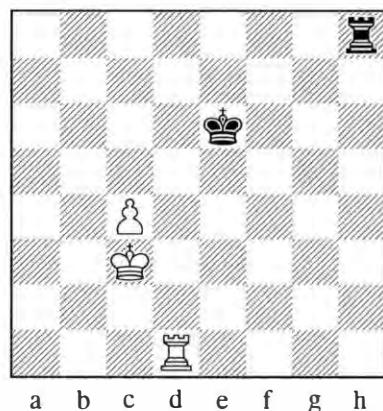


Diagram 12-4



Endgame 2

Diagram 12-5

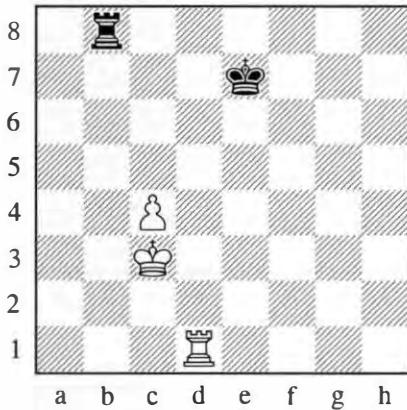
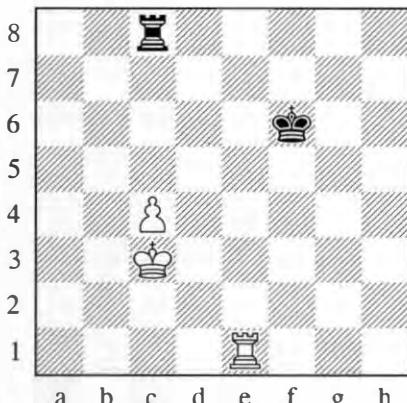


Diagram 12-6



Example 2 +-

11. $\mathbb{B}b5 \mathbb{B}h8$ 12. $\mathbb{B}b7 \mathbb{Q}d6$

Or 12... $\mathbb{E}c8=$.

13. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{B}h5\#$

13... $\mathbb{E}c8=$

14. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{B}c5!$ 15. $\mathbb{B}d7\# \mathbb{Q}xd7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xc5 \mathbb{Q}c7!=$

D) 1... $\mathbb{B}b8!=$

Diagram 12-5

This is also good enough for a draw, since 2.c5 can be answered by 2... $\mathbb{E}d8$.

The rule of 6

With a **central pawn** (c, d, e or f), a useful guide to the assessment of the position is given by adding the rank the pawn is on to the number of files by which the defending king is cut off. If the total is at least 6, then the position is won.

Diagram 12-6

Here the pawn is on the 4th rank and the opposing king cut off two files away; the total of 4 (ranks) + 2 (files) is 6, and White is winning.

1. $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{B}b8\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a5 \mathbb{E}c8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{B}b8\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a6!$

White employs the 'combined method'.

4... $\mathbb{E}c8$ 5. $\mathbb{E}c1$

Another route to victory is 5. $\mathbb{E}e4 \mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{E}h4 \mathbb{E}a8\#$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{E}c5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}g5$ 9. $c5\#$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{E}a4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{E}a1$ (9... $\mathbb{E}a8$ 10. $c5\#$) 10. $\mathbb{E}h7\#$. A very effective attacking method – cutting off the king horizontally.

5... $\mathbb{Q}e6$

Or 5... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{E}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{B}h5$ (7... $\mathbb{E}c8$ 8. $c5\#$) 8. $c5$ (8. $\mathbb{E}d1\#$) 8... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d1\# \mathbb{Q}c8$ 10. $\mathbb{E}g1\#$.

6. $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$

But not 6. $c5?$ and now:

a) Black must avoid 6... $\mathbb{Q}d5?$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}c6\#$ (7... $\mathbb{E}b8\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{E}c8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$.

b) Correct is 6... $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{E}c7\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}c6\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{B}h6=$ with a transition to the first Philidor defence.

6... $\mathbb{E}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{B}h5$

7... $\mathbb{E}c8$ 8. $c5 \mathbb{Q}d7$ 9. $c6\#$ (or 9. $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$)

8. $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$

Or 8. $c5 \mathbb{Q}d7$ 9. $c6\# \mathbb{Q}c8$ 10. $\mathbb{E}a1\#$.

Knight's pawns

Diagram 12-7

Here too, the black king is cut off two files away from the white pawn, but the combined method cannot be used with the knight pawn.

1.♔c4

After a waiting move such as 1.♕d2 Black should also wait with 1...♔e5!. The squares e6 and e5 are ideal for the king when we are employing the frontal attack. Then after 2.♕d7:

a) 2...♔e4?? is wrong, due to 3.♕d6+- (3.♔c4 also wins). Cutting off horizontally is often more dangerous than vertically.

b) The only correct move is 2...♔e6!= and now:

b1) 3.♕c7 ♔d6 4.♕c5 ♕h8 5.♔c4 ♕g8 (but not 5...♕b8? 6.b5+-) 6.♔b5 ♕b8†=

b2) 3.♕a7 ♔d6 4.♔a4 ♔c6 5.♔a5 ♕b5†=

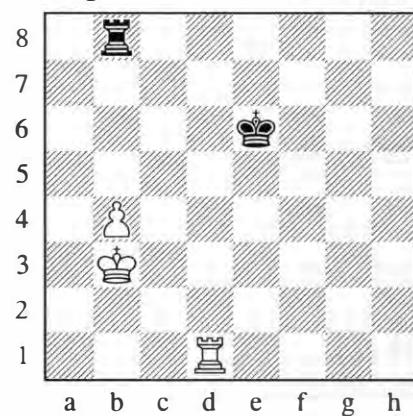
1...♕c8† 2.♔b5 ♕b8†

The frontal attack brings Black the draw.

3.♔c5 ♕c8† 4.♔b6 ♕b8†=

This example shows why the rule of 6 cannot be used in situations with a knight's pawn.

Diagram 12-7



Example 3 =

Central pawns

Diagram 12-8

A.Cheron

1926

Positions with a central pawn in which the defending king on the short side have some particular features.

1.♕b2!

Black has the optimal position. To win the game, White must pass to black the obligation to move.

The combined method, on the other hand, does not suffice for a win: 1.♔e4 ♕e8† 2.♔f5 ♕d8 3.♔e5 ♕e8† 4.♔f6 ♕d8 5.♔d1? ♔b6 6.♔e7 ♕d5 7.♔e6 ♕h5 (Black now employs a flank attack to save the game) 8.♔c1 ♕h6†=

1...♔a4 2.♔b7

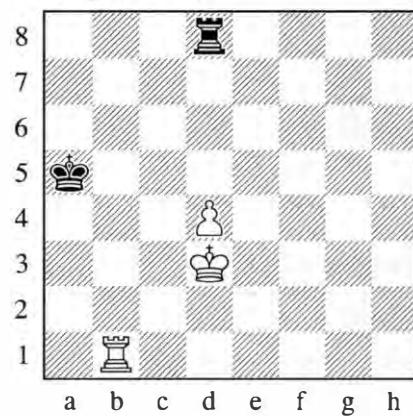
2.d5?? is premature, on account of 2...♕xd5† 3.♔c4 ♔a3!=.

2...♔a5 3.♔b1

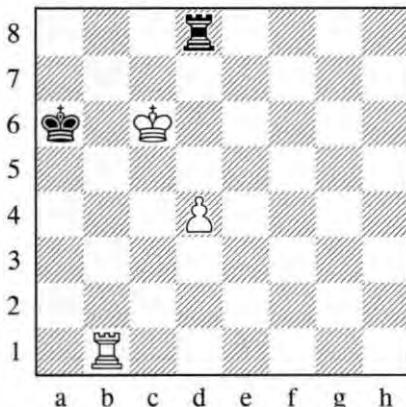
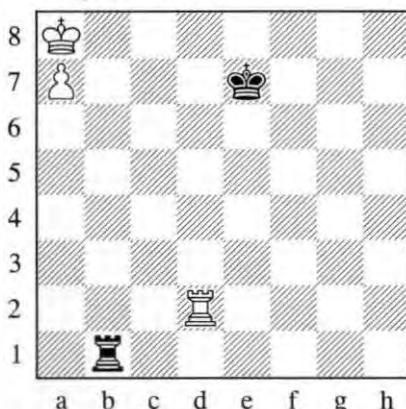
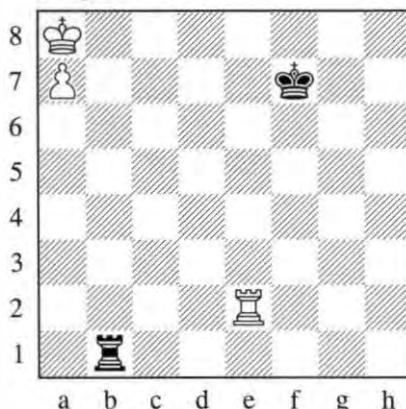
Black is in zugzwang. Any move only worsens his position.

3...♔a6

Diagram 12-8



Example 4 +-

Diagram 12-9**Diagram 12-10****Example 5 =****Diagram 12-11****Example 6 +-**

3... $\mathbb{R}d7$ shortens the distance between pawn and rook. There follows 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{R}e7\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{R}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{R}e7\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$.

3... $\mathbb{Q}a4$ is met by 4.d5! $\mathbb{R}xd5\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$.

If 3... $\mathbb{R}h8$ 4.d5 $\mathbb{R}h4$, then 5.d6! $\mathbb{Q}a6$ (5... $\mathbb{R}h6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{R}xd6\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$; 5... $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 6.d7 $\mathbb{R}d7$ $\mathbb{R}h8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$; 5... $\mathbb{R}g4$ 6.d7 $\mathbb{R}g8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{R}d8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$) 6.d7 $\mathbb{R}h8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{R}d8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{R}xd7\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$. White keeps on exploiting the position of the black king on the edge of the board.

4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{R}e8\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{R}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{R}e8\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$ $\mathbb{R}d8\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$

Diagram 12-9

Because of the threat of mate, Black cannot prevent the white pawn from reaching d5. White goes on to win as in the 'bridge' position.

Positions with rook pawns

We shall consider two situations:

- 1) the king is in front of the pawn;
- 2) the rook is in front of the pawn.

The king is in front of the pawn

Diagram 12-10

If the black king can get to c7 in time, the position is drawn.

1. $\mathbb{R}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}b8$ $\mathbb{R}c1$ 4. $\mathbb{R}b7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}c8=$

White cannot force the black king away.

Diagram 12-11

But if the king cannot reach c7, then White is able to win.

1. $\mathbb{R}c2!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{R}c8!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$

Or 2... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3. $\mathbb{R}b8$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ 4. $\mathbb{R}b7$ $\mathbb{R}b1\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{R}a1\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{R}b1\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$.

3. $\mathbb{R}b8$

The only winning plan.

3... $\mathbb{R}a1$ 4. $\mathbb{R}b7$ $\mathbb{R}b1\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c8$

Nothing is achieved by 5. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{R}a1\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{R}b1\#$.

5... $\mathbb{R}c1\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{R}h1$ 7. $\mathbb{R}b6\#$

But not 7. $\mathbb{Q}e8?$ $\mathbb{R}h8\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{R}h7\#$.

7... $\mathbb{Q}c5$

Diagram 12-12**8.♕c6†!**

A very important idea. As the following variations show, it is quite possible for White to go wrong here:

a) 8.♕e6? ♜a1 9.♕e7 ♜b6=

b) 8.♕a6? ♜h8† 9.♕c7 ♜h7† 10.♕d8 ♜h8†
11.♕e7 ♜h7† 12.♕f8 (12.♕f6?? ♜h6†+) 12...♜h8†
13.♕f7 ♜a8=**8...♜b5**

8...♜d5 9.♕a6 ♜h8† 10.♕c7 ♜h7† 11.♕b6+–

9.♕c8!

White builds a bridge.

9...♜h8† 10.♕c7 ♜h7† 11.♕b8+–**The rook is in front of the pawn****Diagram 12-13**

With the pawn on the 7th rank, the position is very easy to hold. All the black king has to do is to stay on g7 or h7.

1...♜g7!

1...♜a2†= is also sufficient, but 1...♜a3? would lose to 2.♕h8! ♜xa7 3.♕h7†.

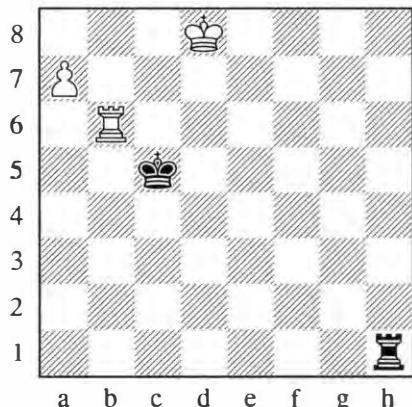
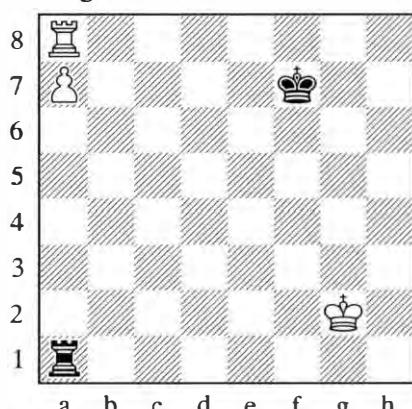
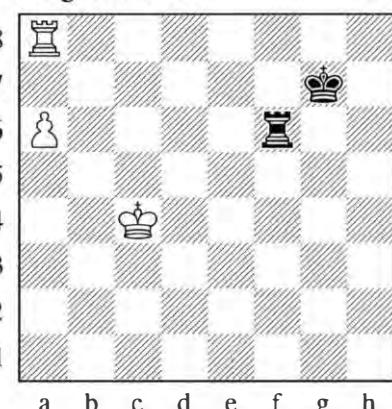
2.♕f3 ♜a3† 3.♕e4 ♜a4† 4.♕d5 ♜a1 5.♕c6 ♜c1†
6.♕b6 ♜b1†=

It is very important to know that **even if White had an additional h- or g-pawn, the evaluation of the position would remain the same – a draw**. But an extra pawn on another file (e.g. an f-pawn) turns the position into a win for White.

Diagram 12-14**J. Vancura**

1924

In positions with the pawn on the 6th rank, White has a plan to make progress. He can bring his king to a7 to protect it from rook checks. Then he will act according to the method of Example 6. The black king cannot move far from the g7-square, because otherwise a7 and ♜h8 would follow. *The Vancura defence*, which is a flank attack on the king and pawn, is Black's only option in such situations.

1.♕b5**Diagram 12-12****Diagram 12-13****Example 7 =****Diagram 12-14****Example 8 =**

This threatens simply 2.♕c8. White achieves nothing with 1.a7 ♜a6=.

1...♝f5†! 2.♛b6 ♜f6†! 3.♛c5 ♜f5† 4.♛d4 ♜f6!

But not 4...♝f4†? on account of 5.♛e5 ♜a4 (5...♜f6? loses to 6.♝g8†) 6.♛d5 ♜f7 7.♛c5 ♜a1 8.♛b6 ♜b1† 9.♛a7 ♜e7 10.♝b8 and now:

a) 10...♜c1 11.♛b7 ♜b1† 12.♛a8 ♜a1 13.a7 (or 13.♛b6+–) 13...♛d6 14.♛b7+– See Example 6.

b) 10...♜a1 11.♛b7 (or 11.♛b5+–) 11...♜b1† 12.♛a8 transposes to line ‘a’.

5.♛e5 ♜b6 6.♛d5 ♜f6 7.a7 ♜a6=

Of course not 7...♝f7?? 8.♝g8†!+–.

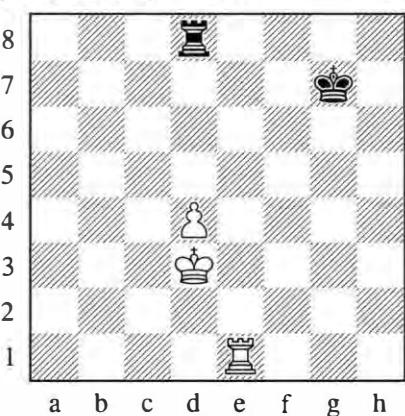
The Vancura defence can also be employed if the pawn is still on the 5th rank or further back. It is only when the pawn reaches the 7th rank that you have to place the rook behind the pawn.

The Vancura defence also works if your opponent has an additional h-pawn.

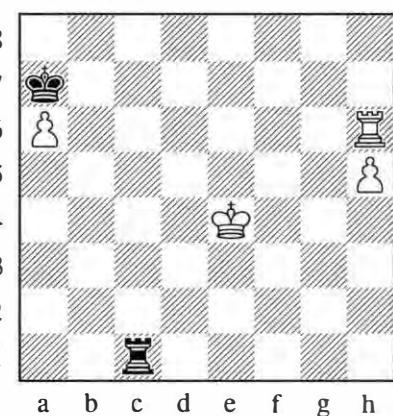
The following exercises will help you to better assimilate these important positions.

Exercises

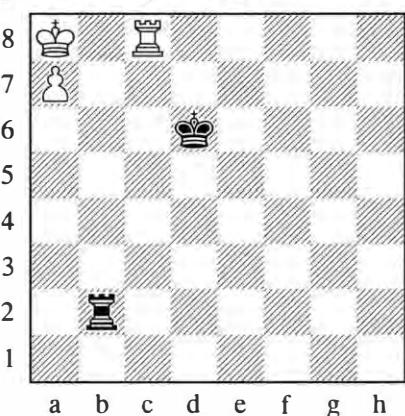
► Ex. 12-1 ◀ ★★ ▼



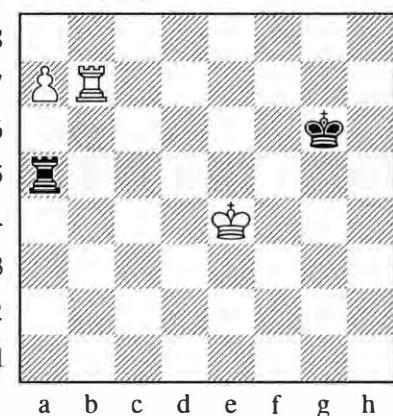
► Ex. 12-4 ◀ ★★ ▼



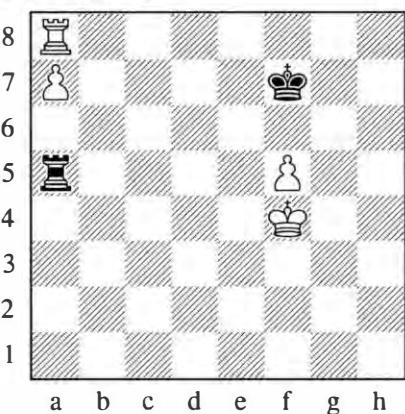
► Ex. 12-2 ◀ ★★ ▼



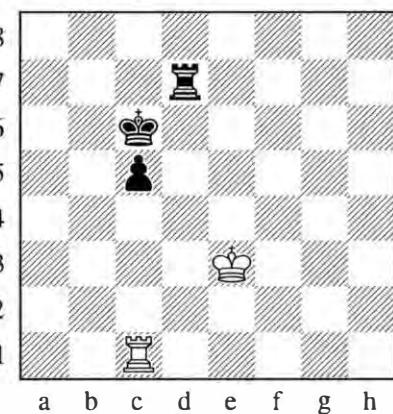
► Ex. 12-5 ◀ ★ △



► Ex. 12-3 ◀ ★★ △

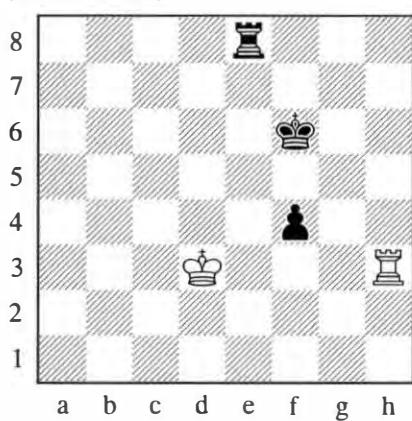


► Ex. 12-6 ◀ ★ △

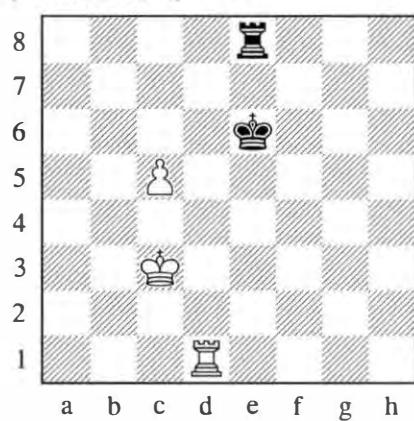


Exercises

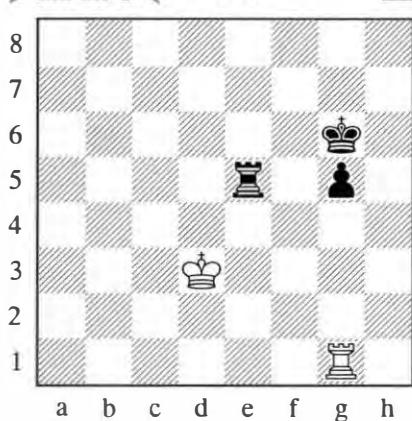
► Ex. 12-7 ◀ ★★



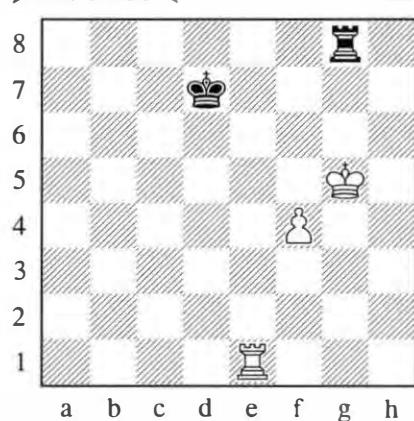
► Ex. 12-10 ◀ ★★



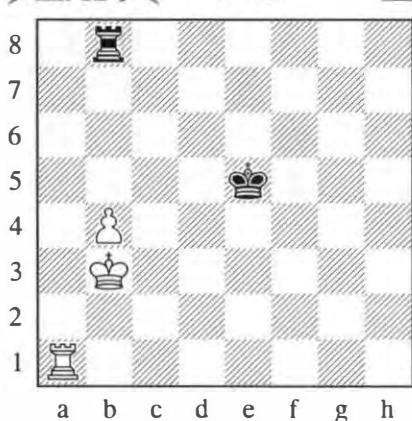
► Ex. 12-8 ◀ ★★



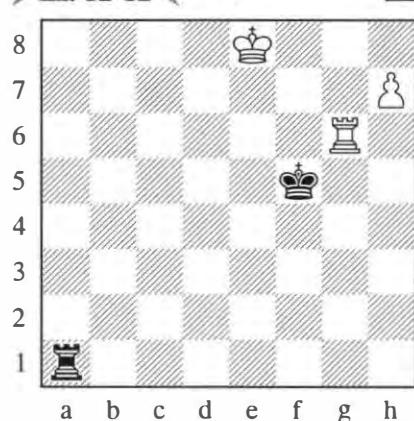
► Ex. 12-11 ◀ ★



► Ex. 12-9 ◀ ★★★



► Ex. 12-12 ◀ ★



Solutions

Ex. 12-1

1... $\mathbb{Q}f6!$

(2 points)

But not 1... $\mathbb{Q}f7?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{E}c8\uparrow$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{E}d8$
 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{E}c8\uparrow$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{E}e4$ (6. $\mathbb{E}d1??$
 $\mathbb{E}e6=$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (6... $\mathbb{E}b8\uparrow$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{E}b4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c6$
 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{E}a4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{E}a1$ 11.d5+-) 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7$
 $\mathbb{E}d5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{E}a5$ 9.d5+-.

2. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{E}c8\uparrow$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{E}d8!$

3... $\mathbb{E}b8\uparrow$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c6+-$

4. $\mathbb{Q}c5 \mathbb{E}c8\uparrow$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{E}e4$

6. $\mathbb{E}d1 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{E}d7\uparrow=$

6... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 7. $\mathbb{E}e5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!=$

Frontal attack – see Example 1.

Ex. 12-2

White's threat is $\mathbb{E}b8$ followed by $\mathbb{Q}b7+-$. To hold the draw, Black just needs to get his rook off the b-file.

1... $\mathbb{E}a2=$

Any of 1... $\mathbb{E}e2=$, 1... $\mathbb{E}f2=$, 1... $\mathbb{E}g2=$ or 1... $\mathbb{E}h2=$ would be just as good.

But 1... $\mathbb{Q}d7??$ would lose after 2. $\mathbb{E}b8 \mathbb{E}a2$
 3. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{E}b2\uparrow$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a6 \mathbb{E}a2\uparrow$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}b2\uparrow$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$
 – see Example 6.

2. $\mathbb{E}c4$

Or 2. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{E}b2\uparrow$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a6 \mathbb{E}a2\uparrow$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b6$
 $\mathbb{E}b2\uparrow=$. The white rook prevents the king from escaping via the c8-square.

2... $\mathbb{E}b2!=$

(2 points)

Ex. 12-3

Chjutt – Alalin

Rostov on Don 1952

In the game White played 1. $\mathbb{E}h8??$ $\mathbb{E}xa7$
 2. $\mathbb{E}h7\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ 3. $\mathbb{E}xa7$ stalemate.

White should have preferred:

1. $\mathbb{E}f6!$

Many other moves also win easily. All you have to do is spot the opponent's traps!

1... $\mathbb{E}a1$ 2. $\mathbb{E}h8+-$

(2 points)

Ex. 12-4

Vancura defence!

1... $\mathbb{E}c5!$

(2 points)

2. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{E}g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{E}c5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{E}c4\uparrow$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$
 $\mathbb{E}c5\uparrow!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{E}c4\uparrow$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{E}c5\uparrow!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{E}g5$
 9. $\mathbb{E}h8 \mathbb{E}f6$

9... $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ also leads to a draw, but the a-pawn makes no difference!

10.h6 $\mathbb{E}f6!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{E}c6$ 12.h7 $\mathbb{E}h6=$

Ex. 12-5

A typical position.

1. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{E}a1$
 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5\uparrow=$

(1 point)

Bodycheck!

But 4. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ also wins: 4... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$
 6. $\mathbb{E}a6$ $\mathbb{E}b1\uparrow$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 8. $\mathbb{E}c6\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 9. $\mathbb{E}c8+-$

Ex. 12-6

A.Kochiev – V.Smyslov

Lvov 1978

In the game White played:

1. $\mathbb{Q}e2??$

The correct move is 1. $\mathbb{Q}e4=$.

(1 point)

The safe squares for the white king during a frontal attack are e4 and e3. Almost all waiting moves with the rook on the first rank are not bad either (except 1. $\mathbb{E}e1??$ or 1. $\mathbb{E}d1??$ of course) and also get 1 point. See Example 1.
 1... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 2. $\mathbb{E}b1\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 3. $\mathbb{E}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 4. $\mathbb{E}b1\uparrow$
 $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ 5. $\mathbb{E}c1$ $\mathbb{E}d5!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 7. $\mathbb{E}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$

0–1

Ex. 12-7

1. $\mathbb{E}h5!$

(2 points)

Only cutting off the king horizontally can save White here.

If 1. $\mathbb{E}h2?$ then 1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{E}d8\uparrow=$.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ f3 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ f2 4. $\mathbb{Q}c1!$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$
 5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{E}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3=$

Solutions

Ex. 12-8

The position is drawn – see Example 3.

1. ♖d4!=

(2 points)

Of course not 1. ♖d2? ♖f5 2. ♕f1† ♖g4

3. ♕g1† ♖f3–+.

1... ♖f6 2. ♕f1†

Since Black is protecting his pawn with the rook, you have to defend actively.

2. ♖d3? would be bad: 2... ♖f5 3. ♕f1† ♖g4

4. ♕g1† ♖f3–+.

2... ♕f5

2... ♖e6 3. ♕g1=

3. ♕g1!

But not 3. ♕b1? g4–+.

3... ♕f3 4. ♖e4! ♕a3

Or 4... ♕h3 5. ♕f1†! ♖g6 6. ♕f3!=.

5. ♕f1†

5. ♕g2 ♖g6 6. ♕h2!=

5... ♖g6 6. ♕f3=

6. ♕h1=

6... ♕a1

6... ♕a2 7. ♕f8=

7. ♖e3 ♖h5 8. ♕f2=

Ex. 12-9

1. ♕a6!

(3 points)

Only cutting off the king horizontally wins.

If 1. ♕d1? then 1... ♖e6=.

1... ♖d5 2. ♖a4 ♖c4 3. ♕c6† ♖d5 4. b5 ♕a8†

5. ♖b4 ♕b8 6. ♕h6 ♕a8 7. b6+–

Ex. 12-10

1... ♖e7!

(2 points)

Here all that is left is the transition to a pawn ending.

2. ♖c4 ♕d8 3. ♕xd8 ♖xd8=

Ex. 12-11

1. ♖h6! ♕f8 2. ♕e4!

(1 point)

The combined method. Here 2. ♕f1? ♕e6= would be wrong.

2... ♖d6 3. ♖g7 ♕f5

3... ♖d5 4. ♕e5†+–

4. ♖g6 ♕c5 5. f5+–

Ex. 12-12

1. ♕f6†!

(1 point)

See Example 6.

1... ♖e5

Or 1... ♖g5 2. ♕f8 ♕a8† 3. ♕f7 ♕a7†

4. ♖g8+–.

2. ♕h6 ♕a8† 3. ♕f7 ♕a7† 4. ♖g6 ♕a6†

5. ♖g5+–

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 21

- 18 points and above → **Excellent**
- 14 points and above → **Good**
- 10 points → **Pass mark**

If you scored less than 10 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Combinations based on decoying
- ✓ A blocked escape route
- ✓ A blocked pawn
- ✓ Fischer's mate

Blocking combinations

The idea behind *blocking combinations* is to decoy one or more of the opposing pieces onto unfavourable squares, where they block the way for their own king (or sometimes also a pawn or another piece).

We have already seen this important tactical motif in earlier books in this series. Smothered mate (Chapter 23 of *Build Up Your Chess 1*) is, for example, also a blocking combination.

Frequently, a blocking combination also makes use of the motif of decoying. So in Chapter 21 of *Build Up Your Chess 2* we in fact saw some blocking combinations, e.g. the study by Stamma and the games N.N. – Pillsbury and Karlson – Kopylov. So a strict separation between blocking and decoying combinations seems to me to be neither practical nor even possible.

A blocked escape route

In the following typical examples, the king's escape is prevented by its own pieces.

Diagram 13-1

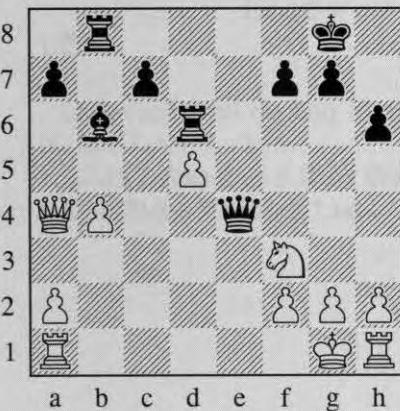


Diagram 13-1

A.Albin – O.Bernstein

1904

1... $\mathbb{W}e2$

Black attacks the f2-pawn and thus forces his opponent to block the f1-square.

2. $\mathbb{E}f1$

Or 2.h3 $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{E}g6\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{W}f2\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}g5\#$! 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $g6\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ $\mathbb{W}h4\#$) 5... $\mathbb{E}bb6-$.

2... $\mathbb{W}xf3\#$

Black wins at least a piece.

3. $gxf3$

White prefers a quick death.

3... $\mathbb{E}g6\#$

Diagram 13-2

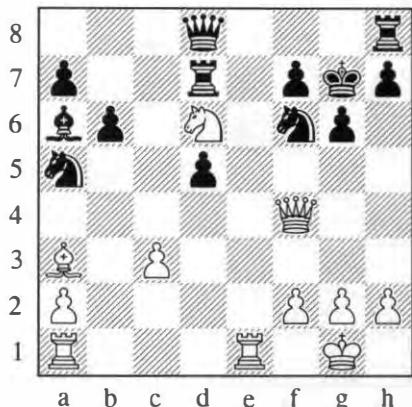
Variation from the game

R.Spielmann – G.Lisitsin

Moscow 1935

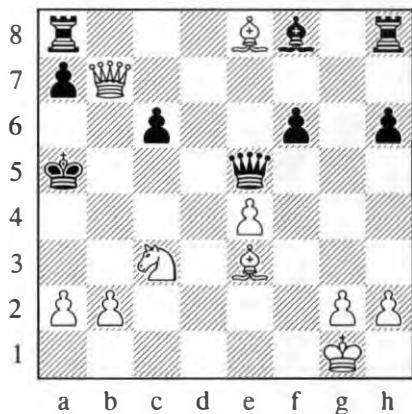
1. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ 1...gxfs 2. $\mathbb{W}g5\#$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h6 \mathbb{Q}h5$ 3. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$

The knight is forced to block the king's escape route.

3... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ **Diagram 13-2****Diagram 13-3****J.Blackburne – N.N.**

Simultaneous game 1912

Two black men are decoyed to the b4- and b6-squares, blocking in the king.

1. $b4\#$! $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$! $axb6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xa8\#$ **Diagram 13-3****Diagram 13-4****R.Schlappa – M.Reichelt**

West Germany 1967

1... $f5\#$!

A typical idea. The escape route via f5 is shut off.

2. $exf5 \mathbb{W}g2\#$ 3. $\mathbb{W}g3 \mathbb{W}e4\#$

0-1

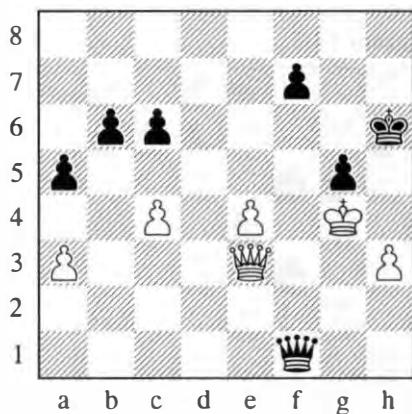
Diagram 13-4

Diagram 13-5

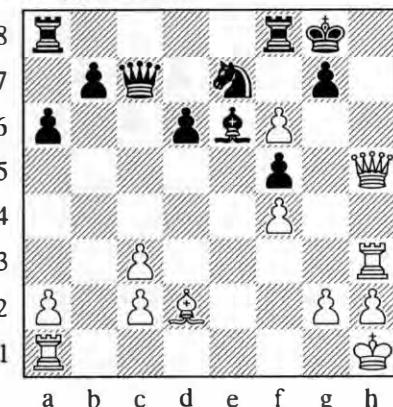


Diagram 13-6

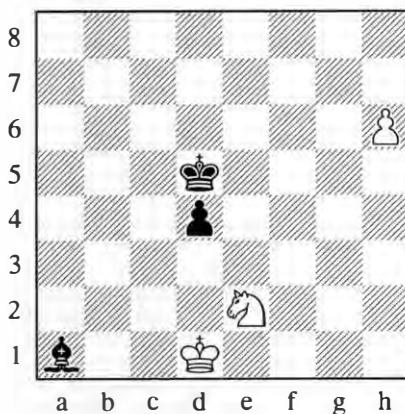


Diagram 13-7

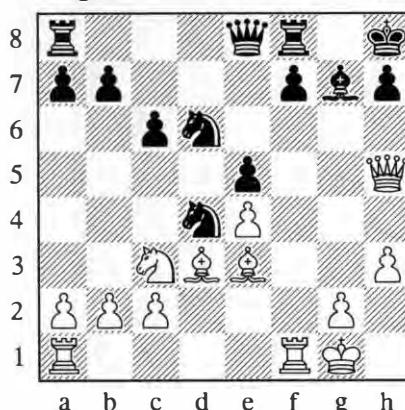


Diagram 13-5

Springer – Ebersbach

Berlin 1958

1.f7†!

A typical combination, to block the f7-square. The immediate 1... $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ is met by 1... $\mathbb{Q}f7$.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ **A blocked pawn**

Often the idea of blocking forms part of a combination involving promotion.

Diagram 13-6

W.Pavett

1862

1. $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$

But not 1.h7? d3= nor 1. $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$? $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 3.h7 d3†+.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3\!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 3.h7+–

The king blocks its own pawn, which in turn closes the long diagonal.

Fischer's mate

The following combination is also typical and very instructive.

Diagram 13-7

R.Fischer – P.Benko

USA Ch, New York 1963

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$ exd4 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6!!$

This move blocks the f-pawn and prepares the deadly attack on the h7-pawn.

If 2.e5, then 2... $f5\#$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$

2... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ is met by 3.e5+–.

3.e5 h6 4. $\mathbb{Q}e2+–$

Black resigned, in view of 4... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ (after 4... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ comes 5. $\mathbb{W}f5+–$) 5. $\mathbb{W}xh6$ followed by mate on h7.

And to finish, two more beautiful examples of blocking combinations.

Diagram 13-8

The end of a study by

A.Kazantsev

1953

Two black pieces are decoyed onto unfavourable squares.

1.a8 \mathbb{W} †! \mathbb{W} x a8 2. \mathbb{E} b6† \mathbb{Q} a7 3.b5 \mathbb{Q} b7

3... \mathbb{W} d8† 4. \mathbb{Q} xd8 \mathbb{Q} xb6 5.h7+–

3... \mathbb{W} b7† 4. \mathbb{E} xb7† \mathbb{Q} xb7 5.h7+–

4. \mathbb{E} a6†! \mathbb{Q} xa6 5.b6#

Diagram 13-8

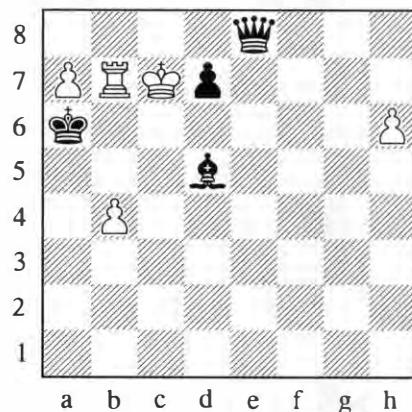


Diagram 13-9

Variation from the game

D.Kontic – M.Vukic

Niksic 1992

1. \mathbb{E} g5!!

Preparing the move g2-g3†.

1... \mathbb{E} xg5

Forced, but here the rook will shut in its own king.

1... \mathbb{E} e2† is followed by 2. \mathbb{Q} xe2 \mathbb{E} xg5 3. \mathbb{W} e3† \mathbb{Q} g4

4. \mathbb{W} xg5#.

2.g3†! \mathbb{Q} g4

2... \mathbb{Q} e4 3. \mathbb{W} e3#

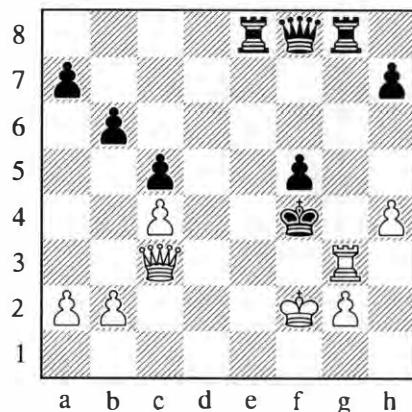
2... \mathbb{E} xg3 3. \mathbb{W} xg3† \mathbb{Q} e4 4. \mathbb{W} e3#

3. \mathbb{W} f3† \mathbb{Q} h3 4.g4†! \mathbb{Q} xh4

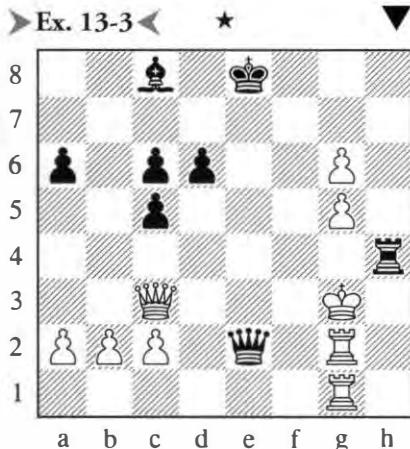
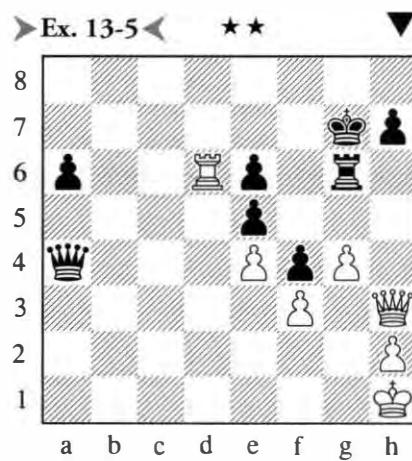
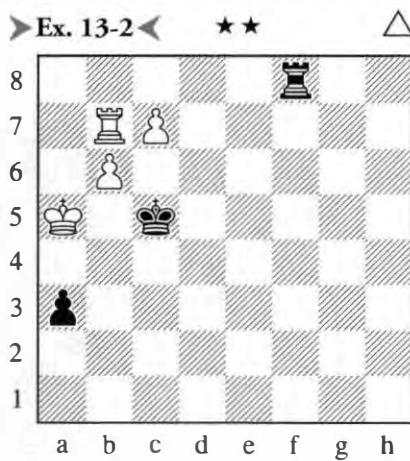
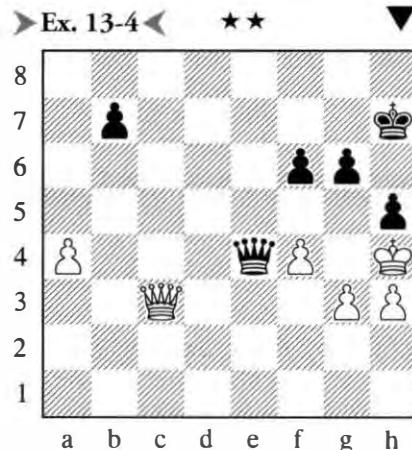
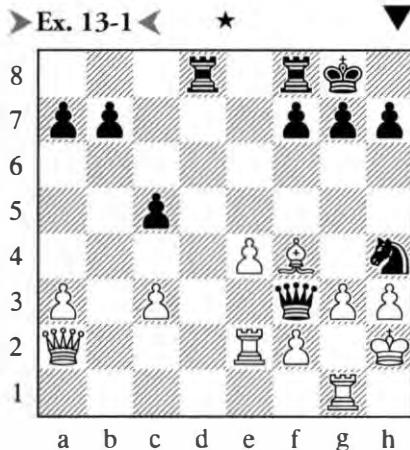
4... \mathbb{Q} h2 5. \mathbb{W} g2#

5. \mathbb{W} g3#

Diagram 13-9

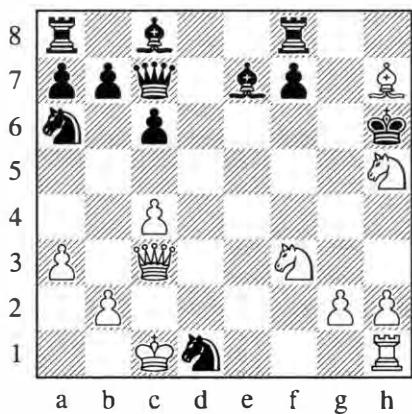


Exercises

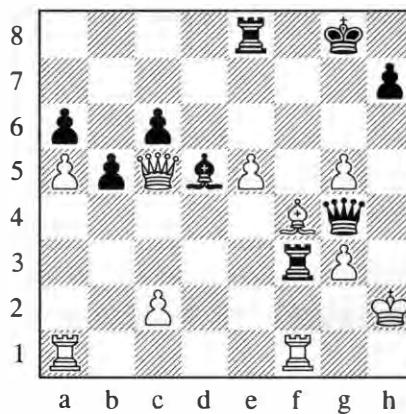


Exercises

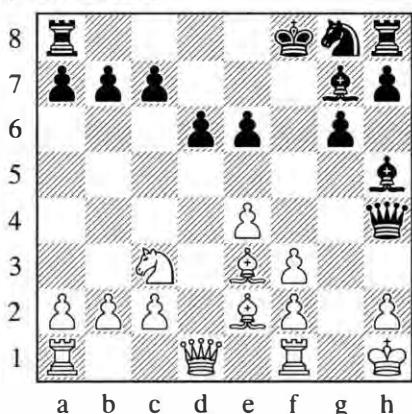
► Ex. 13-7 ◀ ★★ △



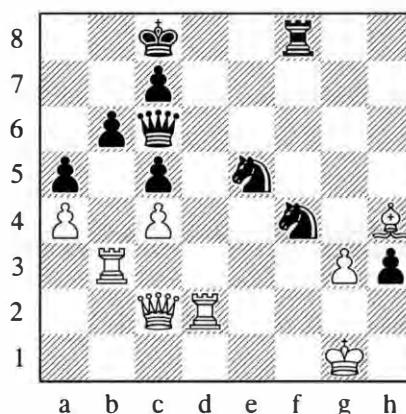
► Ex. 13-10 ◀ ★ ▼



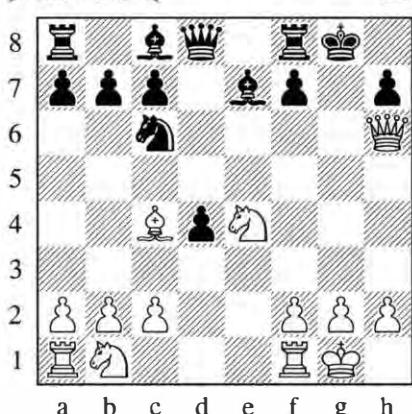
► Ex. 13-8 ◀ ★ ▼



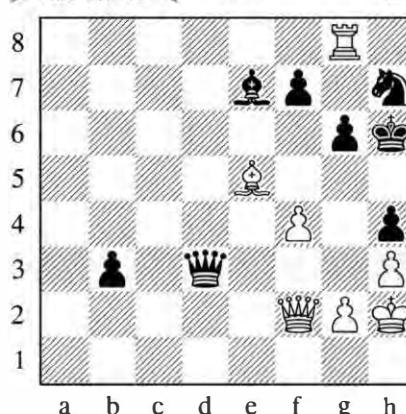
► Ex. 13-11 ◀ ★★ ▼



► Ex. 13-9 ◀ ★ △



► Ex. 13-12 ◀ ★★ △



Solutions

Ex. 13-1

O.Rodriguez Vargas – F.Olafsson

Las Palmas 1978

1... $\mathbb{W}g2\#$!!

(1 point)

White resigned, since 2. $\mathbb{B}xg2$ $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h1$
 $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$ leads to mate.

Ex. 13-2

P.Stamma

1737

1.c8 $\mathbb{W}\#$!!

(1 point)

1.c8 $\mathbb{Q}\#$!! also wins.

But not 1. $\mathbb{B}b8?$ which allows the c-pawn to be blocked: 1... $\mathbb{B}c8!$ 2. $\mathbb{B}xc8$ (2.b7 a2-+) 2...a2-+

1... $\mathbb{B}xc8$ 2. $\mathbb{B}c7\#$ $\mathbb{B}xc7$ 3.bxc7 a2 4.c8 $\mathbb{W}\#$ +–
 (another 1 point)

Ex. 13-3

G.Stoltz – H.Pilnik

Saltsjobaden 1952

1... $\mathbb{B}h3\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{B}f3\#$!! 3. $\mathbb{W}xf3$ $\mathbb{W}e5\#$

(1 point)

Ex. 13-4

P.De Rooi – H.Kramer

Beverwijk 1962

1... $\mathbb{g}5\#$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{W}e2\#$ 3.g4

Or 3. $\mathbb{W}f3$ $\mathbb{W}xf3\#$ 4.g4 $\mathbb{W}xh3\#$.

3... $\mathbb{W}e8\#$

(2 points)

Ex. 13-5

Efimov – Kim

Krasnoyarsk 1982

1... $\mathbb{W}a1\#$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$

Now the king blocks the diagonal retreat for the queen.

2... $\mathbb{B}h6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$

0–1

(2 points)

Ex. 13-6

Poliansky – Gerchikov

Archangelsk 1949

1. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 2.e7#

A typical idea, as seen in Diagram 13-5.

2... $\mathbb{B}xe7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$

(1 point)

Ex. 13-7

1. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$!

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 2. $\mathbb{g}4\#$! $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$! $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$
 (another 1 point)

Ex. 13-8

J.Dorfman – O.Romanishin

Cienfuegos 1977

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$!

(1 point)

White resigned, in view of 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$
 – Fischer's mate.

Ex. 13-9

Goldstein – Tomilin

USSR 1965

1. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$! $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

Fischer's mate. Black resigned, on account of 2... $\mathbb{E}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$
 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$.

(1 point)

Ex. 13-10

E.Epstein – Z.Veroci Petronic

Lipetsk 1968

The game finished 1... $\mathbb{W}h5\#$?! 2. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$
 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{W}g4\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{W}xf4\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5\#$
 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ 0–1.

Solutions

But Black had a much quicker route to victory:

1...♝f2†!!

(1 point)

This blocks the f2-square, allowing the d5-h1 diagonal to be used for a rapid mating attack.

2.♝xf2

Or 2.♝xf2 ♜h5† 3.♝g1 ♜h1#.

2.♝g1 is met by 2...♝g2† 3.♝h1 ♜h3#.

2...♜h5† 3.♝g1 ♜h1#

Ex. 13-11

E.Bogoljubow – M.Monticelli

San Remo 1930

1...♝e2†!

(1 point)

Black forces mate.

2.♝xe2

2.♝h2 ♜g2#

2...♝f1†! 3.♝xf1

3.♝h2 ♜h1#

3...♜h1† 4.♝f2 ♜g4#

(another 1 point)

Ex. 13-12

A.Pytłakowski – J.Szukszta

Katowice 1952

1.♜xh4†!

(2 points)

Only 1 point for the less effective 1.♝g7† ♜h5 2.♝h8 g5 3.f5 ♜d6† 4.♝h1+–.

1...♝xh4 2.♝g7† ♜h5 3.g4#

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 18

- **16 points and above** → Excellent
- **13 points and above** → Good
- **9 points** → Pass mark

If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ The difference between bishops and knights
- ✓ The side with the bishop pair has the advantage
- ✓ The side with the knight has the advantage
- ✓ The most important methods of play with the bishop pair
 - Playing against the knight
 - Exchanging correctly
 - Opening the position
- ✓ Playing against the bishop pair

Diagram 14-1

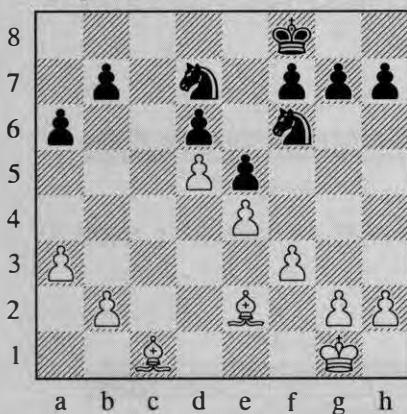
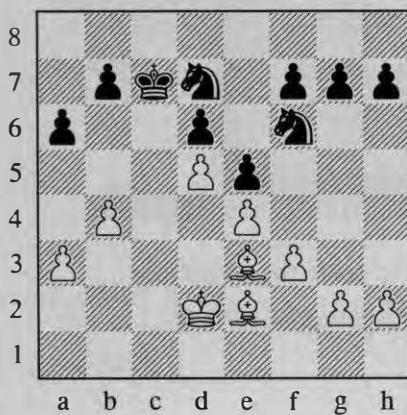


Diagram 14-2



The bishop pair

In most cases two bishops are stronger than two knights and very often stronger than a bishop and a knight. Why is that so, and what is the correct way to evaluate positions with the bishop pair?

In order to better understand this, we must first of all explain the difference in the ways the bishop and the knight are employed. In contrast to the long-legged bishop which can be effective at a distance, the short-range piece that is the knight must be close to the opposing forces in order to be active. The only way to do so, if it does not want to be driven off quickly, is to find protected squares close to the opposing position. – Reti ‘Masters of the Chessboard’

We looked at these differences in Chapter 6 of *Build Up Your Chess 2* – ‘Good and bad bishops’.

The potential activity of the knight is often the most important element in the evaluation of such positions.

The bishop pair is better:

- 1) in open positions;
- 2) in semi-open positions, if the knight does not have good and secure squares protected by its own pawns.

Diagram 14-1

S.Flohr – M.Botvinnik

Moscow/Leningrad(6) 1933

White is better, since here the knights are passively placed and do not have secure squares for the future.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \pm$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 5. b4

The immediate 5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ would be more prudent.
5... $\mathbb{Q}cd7$

Diagram 14-2

Black should try everything he can to close the position on the queenside. So 5... $\mathbb{Q}a4!!$ followed by ...b5 was worth considering, although Black still has problems. With 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ b5 7. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $bxa4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (9.b5 would be somewhat more complicated

after 9...axb5 10.♗b4 f5 11.exf5 ♗f6 12.♗xb5 ♗xd5 13.♗d2± 9...♗b7 10.b5+– White wins a pawn on the queenside. This advantage should suffice for victory.

6.g3?!

6.a4 would be more accurate.

6...♗b6 7.♗c2 ♗bd7?!

Here Black could have plugged the gap on the queenside by 7...a4! 8.♗b3 b5±, with clearly better chances for a draw than he obtained in the game.

Diagram 14-3

8.a4!± ♗b6 9.a5 ♗bd7

Black has no counterplay and simply has to wait. Flohr, on the other hand, prepares to open the game on the kingside.

10.♗c1 ♗d8 11.♗b2 ♗e8 12.♗d2 ♗c7 13.♗e3

Almost everything is ready for f3-f4.

13...♗e7 14.♗f1!

Flohr first brings his bishop onto the more active post on h3. From there the bishop can exert unpleasant pressure on the d7-knight.

14...♗b5 15.h4 ♗c7 16.♗h3 ♗e8

Diagram 14-4

The knight on d7 is effectively pinned. 16...♗f8?? is met by 17.♗c8+–.

17.f4!

Now comes the attack on the kingside. Flohr cleverly provokes weaknesses there.

17...f6 18.♗f5! g6

18...h6 is followed by 19.♗f3, intending ♗g4-h5-g6.

19.♗h3

The threat is f5 followed by fxg6, g4 and h5.

19...h6

With the hope of being able to close the kingside with 20.f5 g5. But now the h6-pawn becomes weak.

Diagram 14-5

20.♗c1!

Taking aim at the h6 weakness.

21...♗g7?!

21...♗c7 would be slightly better.

22.fxе5! dxе5

Black is forced to break the symmetry of the pawn structure. Here, as in most cases, it is to the advantage of the bishop pair.

Diagram 14-3

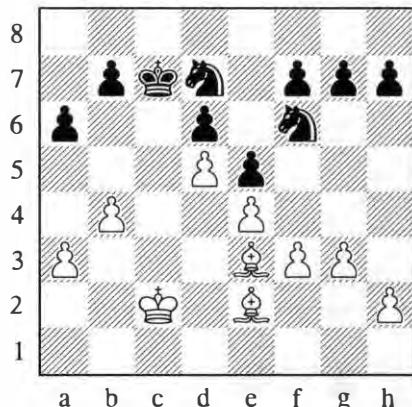


Diagram 14-4

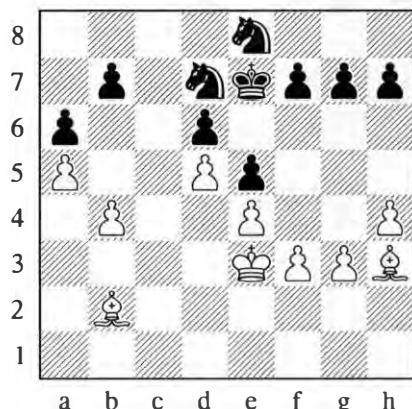
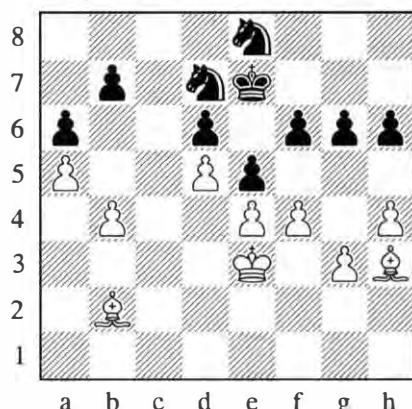


Diagram 14-5



22... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ is bad, due to 23. $\mathbb{Q}c8+-$.

The variation 22...fxe5 23. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ h5 24. $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}h6+-$ underlines the unfortunate position of the knight on g7.

23. $\mathbb{Q}f3$

But not 23. $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ unnecessarily allowing Black counterplay with 23... $\mathbb{Q}h5!$

23...h5

23...g5 is met by 24.hxg5 hxg5 25. $\mathbb{Q}e3$, when White's plan is $\mathbb{Q}g4$ followed by $\mathbb{Q}f1-c4-b3-a4$.

24. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 26.g4

Opening the game on the kingside even more.

26...hxg4# 27. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$

Diagram 14-6

29. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$

Preventing the activation of the knight.

29... $\mathbb{Q}c7$

29... $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$ is followed by 30. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}xd7+-$.

Black could get some practical defensive chances here with the active move 29...f5!?. After 30.exf5 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ gxh5 32. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$ (32... $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$? 33. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ exd4 34. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 35. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 36. $\mathbb{Q}xd4+-$) 33. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 34. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ there comes 34... $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$ and then ... $\mathbb{Q}cd5$.

However, White has a stronger continuation: 31.fxg6! (instead of 31. $\mathbb{Q}h3$) 31... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 32.g7 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 33.h5 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (or 33... $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$ 34. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}cx d5$ 35.h6 e4# 36. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 37.h7+-) 34. $\mathbb{Q}g5+-$

In the game, Botvinnik delays and plays ...f5 at a slightly less favourable point. But passive defence would be hopeless.

30. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ f5!?

Black is practically in zugzwang already. 30... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ is met by 31. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ and then $\mathbb{Q}f7$. And if 30... $\mathbb{Q}e7$, then 31. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$.

31.exf5 gxh5

31... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ is followed by 32. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ gxh5 33. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$.

32. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}d2$

White has achieved his aim. The position has become more open and, in addition, on the kingside White has a strong passed pawn.

33... $\mathbb{Q}7f6$ 34. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 35. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ b5#

Also worth considering was 35...b6?!, in order to exchange more pawns.

Diagram 14-6

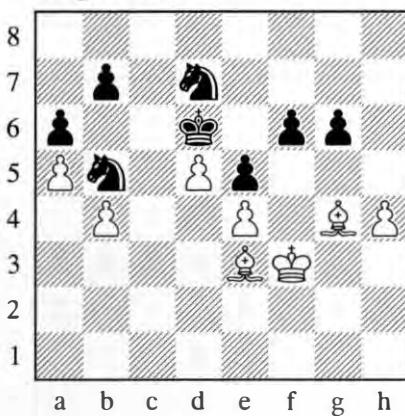


Diagram 14-7**36.♗d3!**

The pawns a6 and b5 are weak. Of course White does not want to exchange them.

36...♝e7

36...♝d6 would be more resilient: 37.♗f5 ♝e7

38.♗h3±

37.♝e4†!

This is even stronger than 37.h5 or 37.♗f7.

37...♝ed5

If 37...♝d6, then 38.♗b7+- Or 37...♝c7

38.♗g5+-.

38.♝g5 ♝h5

If 38...♝d6, then 39.♗xf6 ♝xf6 40.♗b7 ♝d5

41.♗xd5 ♝xd5 42.h5+-.

38...♝xe4 39.♗xe4 ♛d6 loses to 40.h5.

39.♛f3 ♝g3**Diagram 14-8****40.♝d2!**

This is simpler than 41.h5 ♝xh5 42.♗xh5 ♝xb4†.

40...♝d6 41.♝g4!

But not 41.h5? on account of 41...e4†=.

41...♝f6 42.♝c8+– ♜c6 43.♝e1 e4† 44.♝d4 ♝gh5

45.♝f5

45.♝xa6+– would also be good.

45...♝d6 46.♝d2

Black resigned. He is losing the e4-pawn and has no prospects of a draw.

In closed positions and in situations where the side with the knight controls some strong points, the knight can be more valuable than the bishop.

Diagram 14-9**O.Renet – A.Yusupov**

Dubai Olympiad 1986

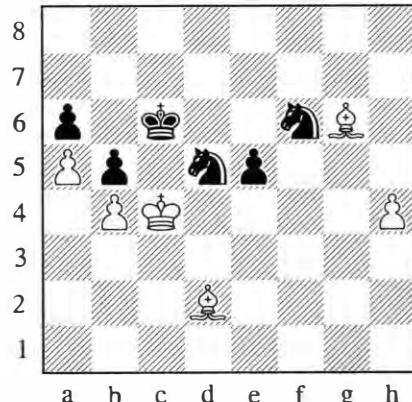
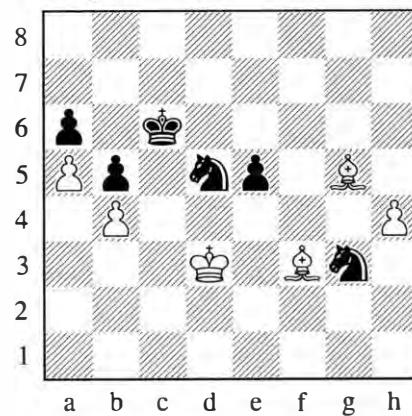
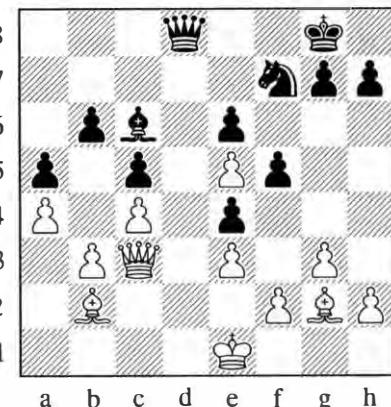
The position is closed. Neither bishop can find anything to do here, as all the diagonals are blocked.

1...g5

Black is playing for a win and prepares an attack on the kingside.

2.♝d2?

The exchange of queens leads to a practically lost ending. White should keep the queens and try

Diagram 14-7**Diagram 14-8****Diagram 14-9**

to open the position. So 2. $\mathbb{W}c2$, with the idea of continuing g4, would have been better.

2... $\mathbb{W}xd2\#$ 3. $\mathbb{B}xd2 \mathbb{Q}h6$

Provoking a pawn move, which will restrict the light-squared bishop even more.

4. $h3?!$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$

4... $f4!-+$ would have been even better. But Black waits a little longer, trying to improve his position and looking for a decision only after the time control.

5. $\mathbb{Q}e1$

5. $f3?!$ was necessary, in order to open up the position.

5... $\mathbb{Q}h5$

Now White can no longer play f3.

6. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{B}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \mathbb{B}g8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{Q}e7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{Q}f3$

10. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

These passive tactics lead to the loss of the game. Better was 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ exf3 11. e4 fxe4 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}f5\#$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xe4 \mathbb{Q}xg3\#$.

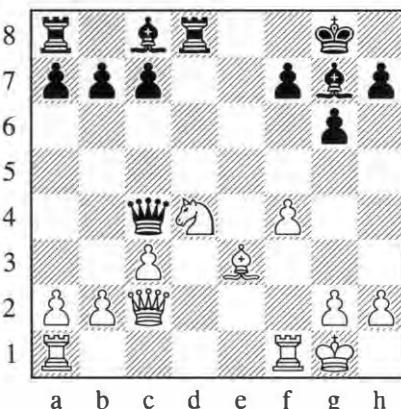
10... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ h5 12. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{Q}c6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \mathbb{Q}e7$

14. $\mathbb{Q}c3 f4!-+$

Having reached the time control, Black executed the pawn break and went on to win the game. You can find the remaining moves in Chapter 6 (Ex. 6-2) of *Build Up Your Chess 2*.

The side with the bishops profits not only from the advantage of the bishop compared to the knight, but also from **the superior cooperation of the two bishops, which complement each other** and, in contrast to a single bishop, can control squares of both colours.

Diagram 14-10



The most important methods of play with the bishop pair

1) Playing against a knight

Diagram 14-10

S.Rosenthal – W.Steinitz

Vienna 1873

The position is open and the black pawn structure is very sound. For that reason, the side with the bishop pair has a clear advantage here. The white knight does

have a good post on d4, but it won't be able to stay there for long. The threat is already 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$.

1. $\mathbb{B}f2$

'The method created by Steinitz for the exploitation of the advantage of the two bishops ... now consists of advancing the black pawns in such a way as to deprive the knight of all possible support points. By doing so, he condemns it to passivity and renders it almost completely worthless.' – Reti

1...c5! 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ b6 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 4. $\mathbb{B}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 5. $\mathbb{B}f1$

Diagram 14-11

5...f6!

The continuation of the strategy. Black can only permit himself such moves because he can control the light squares with his queen's bishop. Black shuts in his own bishop on g7, but in return both white minor pieces become badly placed.

5... $\mathbb{Q}xe5?$ would be wrong; after 6.fxe5 the weakness of the dark squares provides White with counterplay.

6. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ h5! 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{W}f7$

Preparing ... $\mathbb{Q}b7$.

8. f5?!

White unnecessarily weakens his f-pawn. The correct course was 8.b3 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 9. $\mathbb{W}g3\#$ and White can at least continue to offer some resistance.

8...g5 9. $\mathbb{B}ad1$

9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ is followed by 9... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{B}d2\#$ and White cannot do much against the pinning of the knight by the strong light-squared bishop.

But 9.h4 would have been more stubborn: 9...g4

10. $\mathbb{W}f4\#$

9... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 10. $\mathbb{W}g3$ $\mathbb{B}d5$

Now the f5-pawn is under attack.

11. $\mathbb{B}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 12. $\mathbb{B}d1$

12. $\mathbb{W}h3$ is met by 12...g4#.

12... $\mathbb{W}xf5\#$ 13. $\mathbb{W}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 14. b3 $\mathbb{B}e8$ 15. c4 $\mathbb{Q}f7$

The two bishops protect their king, whilst the major pieces carry on with the attack. 15... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 16. $\mathbb{B}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$ is also good.

16. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{B}e2\#$

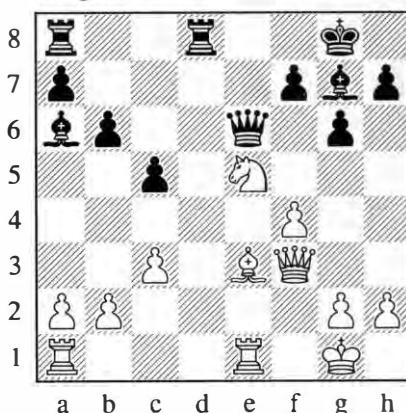
White loses another pawn.

17. $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{W}c2$

Threatening ... $\mathbb{B}xf2$.

18. $\mathbb{W}g3$ $\mathbb{W}xa2$ 19. $\mathbb{W}b8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 20. $\mathbb{W}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 21. h4 g4 22. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

Diagram 14-11



At last the knight spots a chance to get onto the good f4-square, but Black simply pins it!

22... $\mathbb{W}xb3$ 23. $\mathbb{W}c7$ $\mathbb{W}xd3$

0–1

2) Exchanging a bishop at a favourable moment

Diagram 14-12

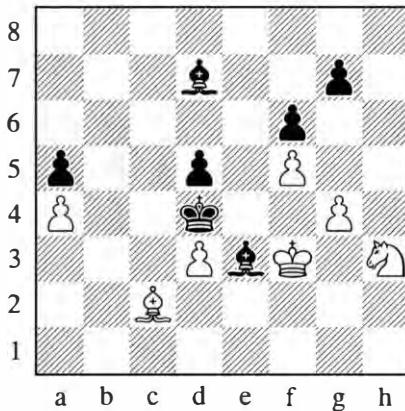


Diagram 14-12

S.Tarrasch – A.Rubinstein

San Sebastian 1912

The advantage of having the two bishops sometimes consists of being able to choose the correct moment to exchange one of them! Here Rubinstein exchanges his strong e3-bishop for the more passive bishop on c2, since he saw that after the capture of the a4-pawn the ending would be a very easy win!

1... $\mathbb{B}c3!$ 2. $\mathbb{B}xe3$ $d4\#!$

An important intermediate check.

3. $\mathbb{B}e2$

Or 3. $\mathbb{B}e4$ $\mathbb{B}c6\#-$.

3... $\mathbb{B}xc2-$

The a4-pawn is lost.

4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ a4
8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ a3 9. $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$

0–1

3) Opening the position

Diagram 14-13

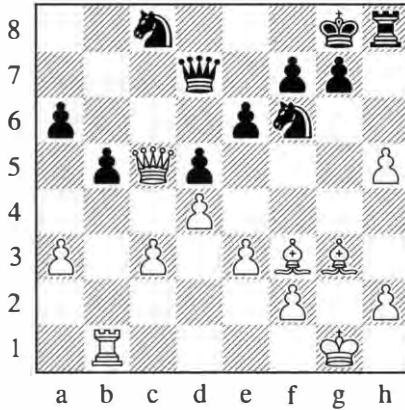


Diagram 14-13

A.Alekhine – M.Euwe

Netherlands 1938

Alekhine finds a tactical solution and opens up the position.

1.h6!

If 1.a4 is played immediately, then 1...bxa4 2. $\mathbb{E}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}h7\pm$.

1...gxh6

1... $\mathbb{E}xh6$ is followed by 2.a4! $\mathbb{Q}a7$ (2...bxa4 3. $\mathbb{E}b8-$) 3.axb5 $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 4. $\mathbb{E}a1$ $\mathbb{W}b7$ 5.c4±.

2. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3.a4 bxa4 4.c4! $\mathbb{Q}e7$

4...dxc4? loses to 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$.

5.cxd5 $\mathbb{Q}exd5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}a3$

Diagram 14-14

The black position collapses.

8...♝g8

Or 8...♝c3 9.♛f8+--.

9.e4+– ♜xg1† 10.♝xg1 ♜b5 11.exd5 ♜b1†

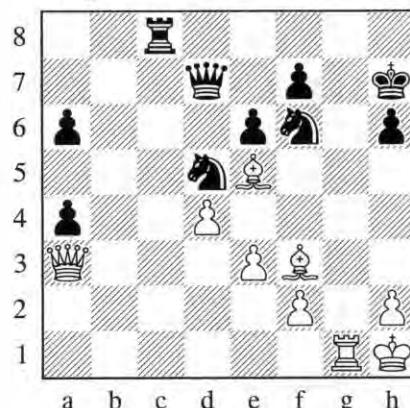
12.♝g2 ♜g6† 13.♝g3 ♜xd5 14.♝xd5 exd5

15.♛xa4 h5 16.h4

1–0

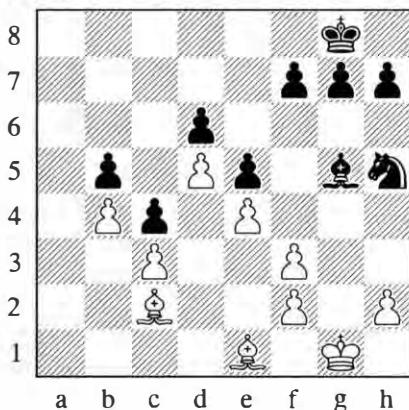
If you have to defend against the bishop pair, try:

- 1) to keep the game as closed as possible;
- 2) to exchange off one of the bishops;
- 3) to obtain secure squares for the knight.

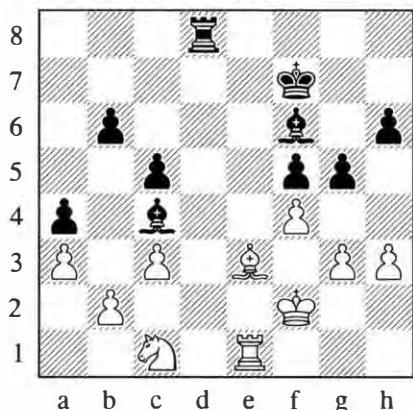
Diagram 14-14

Exercises

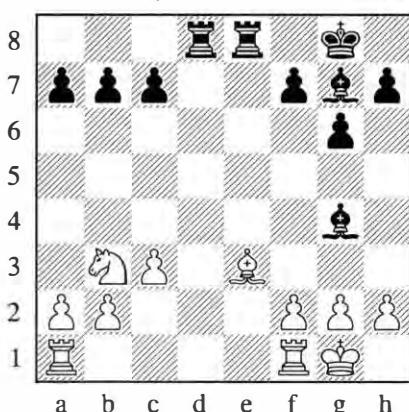
► Ex. 14-1 ◀ ★ ▼



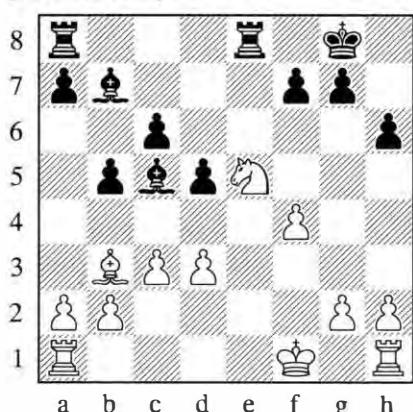
► Ex. 14-4 ◀ ★★★ ▼



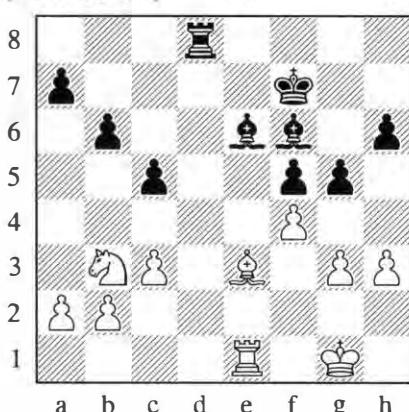
► Ex. 14-2 ◀ ★ ▼



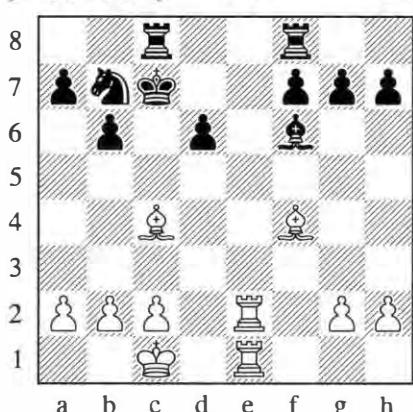
► Ex. 14-5 ◀ ★★ ▼



► Ex. 14-3 ◀ ★★ ▼

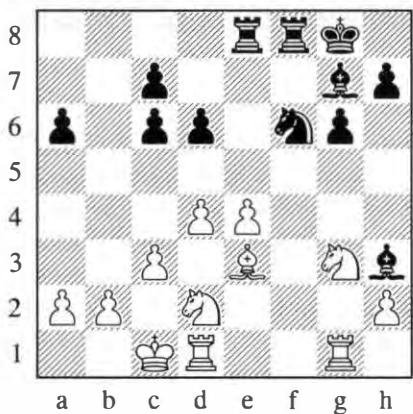


► Ex. 14-6 ◀ ★★★ ▲

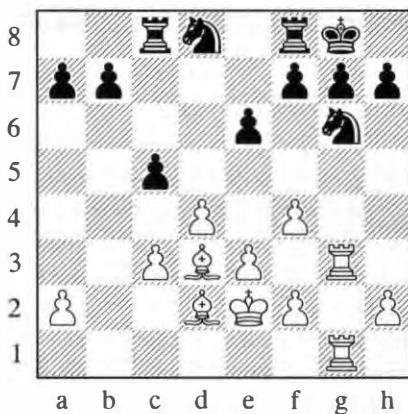


Exercises

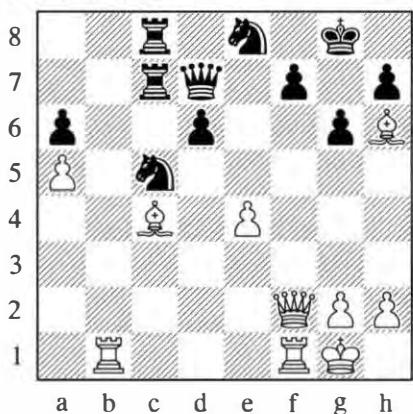
► Ex. 14-7 ◀ ★ ▼



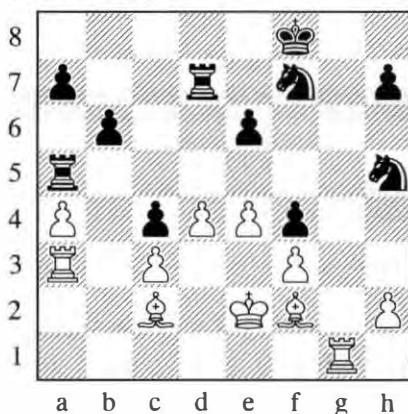
► Ex. 14-10 ◀ ★★★ ▼



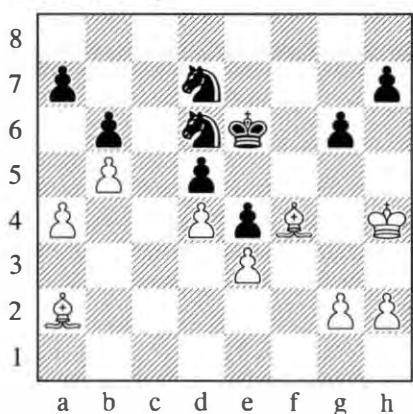
► Ex. 14-8 ◀ ★★ △



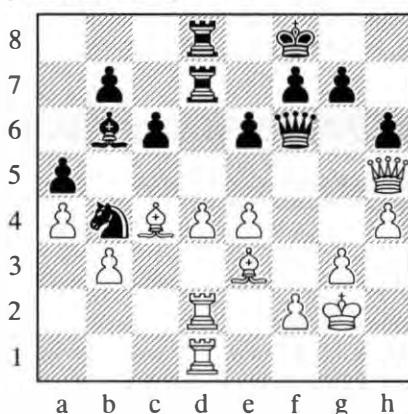
► Ex. 14-11 ◀ ★★ △



► Ex. 14-9 ◀ ★★ △



► Ex. 14-12 ◀ ★★ △



Solutions

Ex. 14-1

J.Klavins – V.Ragozin

USSR Ch semifinal, Riga 1952

1... $\mathbb{Q}c1!$

(1 point)

Intending ... $\mathbb{Q}f4$, shutting in both white bishops. The immediate 1... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ is not so good, in view of 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ and White threatens to free his dark-squared bishop with 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$

The black king now marches to h3.

3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ f6 4. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$
 7. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ –+ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ h6 10. $\mathbb{Q}b1$
 h5 11. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$
 14. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ cxd3†

0–1

Ex. 14-2

B.Englisch – W.Steinitz

London 1883

1...b6!

(1 point)

A typical move to restrict the opposing minor pieces.

2.h3 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$ c5 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ f6! 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$!
 6.f3 g5 7. $\mathbb{Q}xd8$

7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$? is bad, due to 7... $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ † 8. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ –+.

7... $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ h6! 9. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ f5 10.f4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$
 11.g3†

See Ex. 14-3.

Ex. 14-3

B.Englisch – W.Steinitz

London 1883

1...a5!

(2 points)

Black forces the knight further back.

2. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ a4

Intending ...a3.

3.a3 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ †

See Ex. 14-4.

Ex. 14-4

B.Englisch – W.Steinitz

London 1883

1...gx $f4$!

(2 points)

2 points also for 1... $\mathbb{Q}d5$, intending ...b5-b4 and the opening of the game on the queenside. Steinitz's plan is even stronger. He exchanges the dark-squared bishops in order to obtain the d2-square for his rook.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$!

(another 1 point)

3. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$

3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ is followed by 3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4.h4 $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ † 5.gxf4 (5. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ –+) 5... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (L.Abramov) 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ † 9. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ –+.

If 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$, then 3... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ † 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ –+.

3...hx $g5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5.h4

5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ is met with 5... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ followed by ...f4†.

Now Steinitz forces the transition to a winning pawn ending.

5...gx $h4$ 6.gx $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ † 7. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 11.c4 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ f4†!

Just not 12... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$? 13. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ =.

13. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ f3 14. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$

0–1

Ex. 14-5

S.Tarrasch – A.Rubinstein

San Sebastian 1912

1...f6!

(2 points)

Black forces the white knight back.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ (1 consolation point) would not be so strong, on account of 2.g3.

2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$

If 2. $\mathbb{Q}d7$, then 2... $\mathbb{Q}d6$.

Nor would 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 3.d4 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4.f5 $\mathbb{Q}ae8$ –+ be much better.

Solutions

2...h5! 3.Qf2 Qe3 4.Qd1? h4 5.g3 a5!?
 5...c5 6.Qf3 gives White counterplay.
6.Qf3 b4! 7.Qg2 bxc3 8.bxc3 Qa6 9.c4! Qad8

Of course not 9...dxc4? 10.Qxc6.

10.cxd5 cxd5 11.Qhd1 Qe7

Aiming to continue with ...Qc7-c2.

12.Qg4 hxg3 13.hxg3 Qd4 14.Qacl Qb7 15.Qc2 Qf7?! 16.Qf2 Qb2!

Black wants to exchange rooks. 16...a4 followed by 17...a3 would also be very strong.

17.Qxb2 Qxb2 18.Qd2

18.f5! would be more resilient, aiming to activate the knight quickly via h3-f4.

18...Qd4 19.Qh3

Better is 19.Qc2.

19...Qe6! 20.Qc2 Qd6?

But not 20...Qxd3?? 21.Qd2.

21.f5 Qc8! 22.Qd1 Qxc2† 23.Qxc2 Qe5 24.g4 Qe3+– 25.Qf3 Qd4 26.Qb3 Qb7

Black could win even more quickly with 26...Qxd3 27.Qxd5 Qf1 28.Qf2 Qxf2 29.Qxf2 Qxd5 30.Qxf1 Qd4 31.Qf2 Qc3+–.

27.Qe2 Qa6 28.Qc2 Qb5 29.a4

Or 29.Qb1 Qa4 30.Qf2 Qxf2 31.Qxf2 Qc3+–.

29...Qd7 30.Qf3

If 30.Qb3, then 30...g6!+–.

See Diagram 14-13.

Ex. 14-6

R.Fischer – M.Taimanov

Candidates Match(2), Vancouver 1971

1.b4!

(3 points)

An important idea – White deprives the knight of some squares. 1.Qa6 (2 points) would not be bad either, although Black can struggle on with 1...Qb8. Fischer wants an even more active post for his bishop, namely on d5.

1...a5

After 1...Qc3? White had prepared 2.Qe7† Qb8 3.Qd5+–.

2.Qd5

Threatening Qe7†.

2...Qb8 3.a3 Qfd8

3...Qc3? loses to 4.Qe7.

4.Qxf7 Qc3?! 5.Qd2 d5 6.Qd1±

Ex. 14-7

G.Marco – C.Schlechter

Monte Carlo 1904

1...Qg4!

(1 point)

After this the black bishops will be able to attack the white position without let or hindrance.

2.Qdel Qxe3 3.Qxe3 Qh6 4.Qe2 Qg4

5.Qeel

Or 5.Qeg2 Qf3 6.Qf2 Qe3+–.

6...Qf2 7.Qgf1 Qe2 8.Qg3 Qf3

0-1

Ex. 14-8

A.Alekhnine – R.Fine

Hastings 1936

1.Qa2!+–

(2 points)

White attacks the f7-pawn. For the positional solution 1.Qd5 you get 1 point.

1...Qxe4

If 1...Qe6, then 2.Qxe6+–.

1...d5 is met by 2.Qxd5 Qd6 3.Qa1+–.

The move in the game also loses quickly.

2.Qxf7 Qxf7 3.Qxf7† Qxf7 4.Qe6

1-0

Ex. 14-9

M.Botvinnik – S.Furman

Moscow 1961

1.Qxd6!

(1 point)

Otherwise Black's knight could prevent the penetration by the white king.

1...Qxd6 2.Qg5 Qe6 3.h3

Solutions

Or first 3... $\mathbb{Q}h6$.
3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}h6$

(another 1 point)

4... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ 6.exf4?? would lose to 6...e3.6... $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5?$

This loses without putting up any resistance. 7... $\mathbb{Q}f1$ is more stubborn, although after 8... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 9.g4 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 10... $\mathbb{Q}g5!$? $\mathbb{Q}el$ 11... $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ 12... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 13.g5 White is clearly better. In such unbalanced situations the bishop is at an advantage compared to the short-range knight.

8... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ g5 9... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ g49... $\mathbb{Q}f1?$ 10.g4#10.hxg4# $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 11... $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$

1-0

Ex. 14-10

Em.Lasker – M.Chigorin

Hastings 1895

1...c4!

(2 points)

1...f5 is equally good. The important thing is that Black must close the position. Only 1 consolation point for 1...cx d4 followed by ...f5.

2... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ f5!

(another 1 point)

3... $\mathbb{Q}c1$

White had a strong option available in 3.h4 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4.h5 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5.f3, preparing e3-e4. But Lasker waits for too long and loses the initiative.

3... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}a6!$ 5...a6 is not so good, because of 6... $\mathbb{Q}b1$.

6.a4 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 8... $\mathbb{Q}gg1$ $\mathbb{Q}ge7$ 9... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 10... $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}a5=$ 11... $\mathbb{Q}gb1$ b6 12... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ g6 13... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 14... $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 15... $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 16... $\mathbb{Q}bb1$ $\mathbb{Q}d6?!$

Black also hesitates. 16...g5! would have been more energetic: 17.fxg5 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 18... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 19... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 20... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4\#$ 17.f3 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 18... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ g5?

Now it is too late. White has made preparations to meet this thrust.

19... $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ 19...fxg5 is not so strong: 19... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 20... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 19... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 20.e4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 21... $\mathbb{Q}xf4!$ 21.exf5 would be less clear: 21...e5 22.dxe5 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 23... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 21... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 22... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ f4! 23... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 24... $\mathbb{Q}gl\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$

See Ex.14-11.

Ex. 14-11

Em.Lasker – M.Chigorin

Hastings 1895

White failed to find the correct:

1.e5!

(2 points)

1... $\mathbb{b}5$ 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 2.dxe5 $\mathbb{Q}xe5\#$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}e4+-$ 1...h6 2... $\mathbb{Q}g4+-$ and the black f-pawn will drop.2... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 2... $\mathbb{Q}g4!?\pm$ 2... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 4.dxe5 b4 5.cxb4 $\mathbb{Q}xe5\#$ 6... $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ gives Black counterplay.4... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 6... $\mathbb{Q}xb5\pm$

In the game White played the passive:

1... $\mathbb{Q}aa1?$

This guards against ...b6-b5, but loses the initiative.

1...e5! 2... $\mathbb{Q}ab1$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}b1?!$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}b5?!$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}ed8!$ 6... $\mathbb{Q}d2?$ 6... $\mathbb{Q}a2?!$ $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$; 6... $\mathbb{Q}c2!$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}b5$.6... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}xa4\#$ 8.dxe5 $\mathbb{Q}fxe5$ 9... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 10... $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 11... $\mathbb{Q}dd5$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 12... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$ 13... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 13... $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}cb4+-$ 13... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 14... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ $\mathbb{Q}ag1+-$ 15... $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ 16... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 16... $\mathbb{Q}g5$

Solutions

16. $\mathbb{B}xf4 \mathbb{B}6g2\#$
 17. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{B}el\#$
 16... $\mathbb{B}6xg5$
 0-1

Ex. 14-12

A.Miles – R.Hübner

Wijk aan Zee 1984

1.g4!+-

(2 points)

1... $\mathbb{B}c8$

1... $\mathbb{Q}xd4?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd4 \mathbb{B}xd4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd4 \mathbb{B}xd4$

4. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$

2.g5 hxg5 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg5 g6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h7$

1-0

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 24

20 points and above ➤ Excellent

16 points and above ➤ Good

12 points ➤ Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Candidate moves are missed
- ✓ The opponent's reply is not considered
- ✓ Alternatives in the early moves are missed
- ✓ Variations are ended too soon

Diagram 15-1



Typical mistakes in calculating variations

In Chapter 8 we mentioned some typical mistakes made in the calculation of variations. Here we shall discuss these errors in more detail. It is always better to learn from the mistakes of other players rather than making the same ones yourself! Of course, errors cannot always be avoided, but hopefully you will make a few less of them in the future after this lesson!

Candidate moves are missed

It often happens that you consider only one move and calculate only one continuation. When that happens, you can miss the best move.

Diagram 15-1

A.Yusupov – B.Gelfand

Munich 1993

1.♕b7?

A losing move, just after the time control! White did not stop playing at lightning speed, although he saw that he had already made 40 moves. In such situations it is often better to make a slight pause and then calmly take another look at the position on the board.

As the following variations show, White could in many lines have obtained a strong attack after the better move 1.♕e4:

- 1... ♔c8?! 2.♔f4 ♕xf4 3.♕xf4 ♔xd6 4.♕xd6±
 - 1... ♔e5?! 2.♔b7 ♕b5 3.♔f4! ♕xf4 (3... ♕xf4 4.♕e7† ♔g8 5.♕f6+–) 4.♕xf4! ♕xf4 5.♕e7†+–
 - 1... ♔a2?! 2.♔f4 ♕xf4 (2... ♕c2 3.♔xg6+–) 3.♕xf4±
 - 1... ♔a5?! 2.♔f4 ♕xf4 3.♕xf4±
 - 1... ♔a7?! 2.♔f4 ♕xf4 3.♕xf4 ♔d5 4.♕g3 ♔d4 5.♔e4 ♕c6 6.♕f2±
 - The strongest continuation for Black is very hard to find: 1... ♕e5! 2.♕xb4 ♕c5! 3.♕xc5 ♔xc5 4.♕e7 ♕b8 5.♔b5 ♕a5=
- 1... ♔a5**

Only at this point did White discover the central square e4!

2. $\mathbb{W}e4 \mathbb{B}e3+$

This tempo allows Black to consolidate his position. The technical phase is no problem at all for such a strong player as Gelfand.

**3. $\mathbb{W}b1$ b3 4. $\mathbb{B}d3$ $\mathbb{B}xd3$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xd3$ $\mathbb{W}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{W}g3$ g5
7. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{W}xg5$ 8. $\mathbb{W}d3\#$ $\mathbb{W}g6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ b2 10. g3 $\mathbb{B}d8$
11. $\mathbb{W}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 13. $gxf4$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d2$
 $\mathbb{Q}c4$**

0–1

The opponent's strongest reply is not taken into account

Often we simply don't look for the best moves for our opponent! It is very important to **consider all active moves for the opponent!**

Diagram 15-2

A.Alekchine – J.Blackburne

St. Petersburg 1914

After the game Alekhine said that he had simply forgotten about his bishop on b5!

1. $\mathbb{Q}d2??$

1. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ was better.

1... $\mathbb{W}a5!$ 2. a4 a6+ +

And Black won the bishop. Despite that, from this lost position the tough-minded Alekhine managed to save half a point!

Diagram 15-2

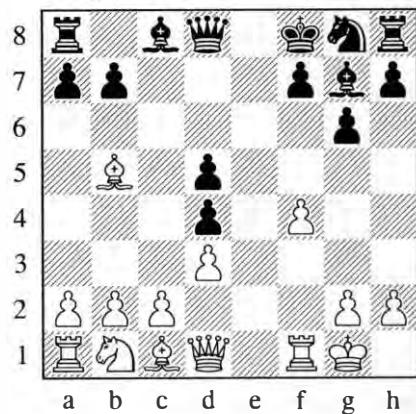


Diagram 15-3

A.Ilyin Zhenevsky – M.Kliatskin

Russia 1922

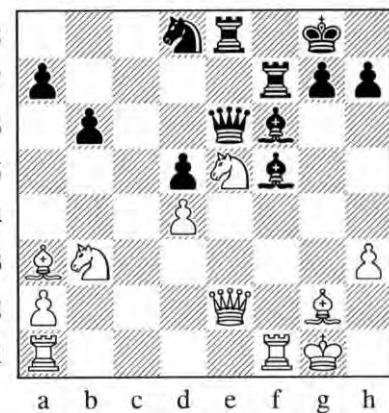
In a winning position, White unfortunately came up with an incorrect combination.

1. $\mathbb{W}b5?$

Better was 1. $\mathbb{Q}ae1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6+ +$.

Basically, in a position with a material advantage you should look for simple ways and not go in for too many combinations. White would ideally

Diagram 15-3



like to play something simpler than the above-mentioned variation. But sometimes you have to calculate variations in order to avoid allowing any counterplay.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd5??$

Ilyin Zhenevsky here makes another typical mistake – **he does not check through his previous calculations!** He could still spot his mistake and correct it, but he put too much trust in his first analysis. He had to play 2.dxe5±.

2... $\mathbb{W}g6\#$

White had overlooked this simple check. Now he even loses the game.

3. $\mathbb{Q}h1?!$

There was the slightly more stubborn 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7?$
4. $\mathbb{W}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3-$.

3... $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{W}xe4\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}e3\#$
0-1

Diagram 15-4

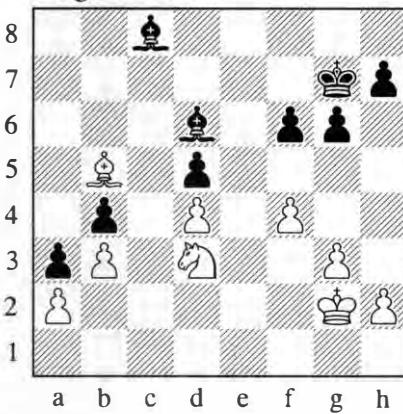


Diagram 15-4

A.Yusupov – V.Salov

Barcelona 1989

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3?$

White should guard against the positional threat of ... $\mathbb{Q}f5$. The correct move is 1. $\mathbb{Q}f2$, intending 1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3=$.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2??$

The losing move. White sets a trap, only taking into account the weak move 2... $\mathbb{Q}b1?$. But he is overlooking an active move for his opponent.

Better was 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}c2!$

And because of the threat of ... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$, White loses the game!

Of course not 2... $\mathbb{Q}b1?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa2??$ on account of 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2+-$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

Or 3. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}b1!-+$.

3... $\mathbb{Q}xb3-$

Alternatives in the early moves are missed

The first moves in a variation are the most important ones. Mistakes made there can no longer be corrected! (See Chapter 8 – ‘Calculating short variations’)

Diagram 15-5

B.Blumenfeld – Zhivzov

Moscow

1...♝e4??

An astonishing mistake, since Black had very correctly calculated a lot of variations here. However, he was concentrating simply on 3.♝h7† and not looking for alternatives for his opponent!

If 1...♝h3, then 2.♛xh3 ♜xe5 3.♛xh6 ♜e1† 4.♜xe1 gxh6±.

1...♝b7 is met by 2.♛g4±.

2.♝xe4

And Black resigned. Only now did he notice that 2...♜xe5 is simply answered by 3.♝xa8+– (but not 3.♝h7†? ♜xh7 4.♛xe5, due to 4...♛d3†–).

A variation is ended too soon

Although our opponent (or we ourselves) still has some active moves, we often stop calculating a variation too soon.

It sometimes has to do with our emotions, and we evaluate the position too soon or even resign prematurely!

Diagram 15-6

L.Rudenko – S.Rootare

Lugansk 1956

Black played:

1...b2??

1...♝xd5? 2.exd5 b2? would also have been bad, in view of 3.d6+–.

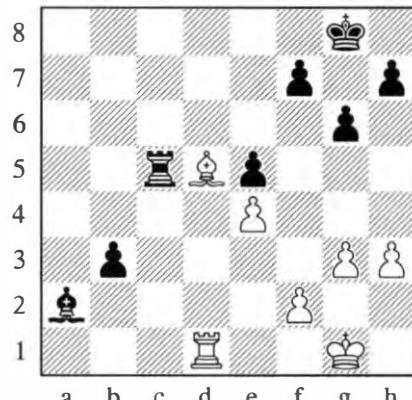
The correct route to victory was 1...♝f8! (threatening 2...♝xd5 3.exd5 b2–+) 2.♝d2 ♜e7 3.♝f1 ♜xd5! 4.exd5 ♜b1! 5.♝b2 ♜c2–+.

In response to 1...b2?? White actually resigned! After 2.♝xa2 ♜c1, both players had stopped calculating and evaluated the position as won

Diagram 15-5



Diagram 15-6

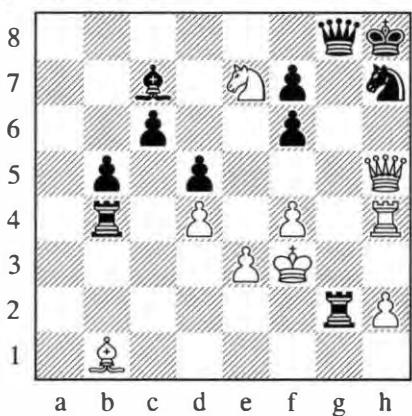


for Black. But after the simple 3...f1! followed by ♘b1, f3, ♖f2, ♖e2, ♗d1 and ♖d2, it is White that is winning! Of course both of them had totally overlooked 3...f1!.

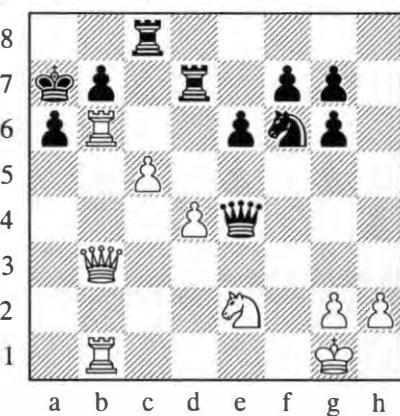
In the test you should try to avoid or to punish the mistakes which were made in these games!

Exercises

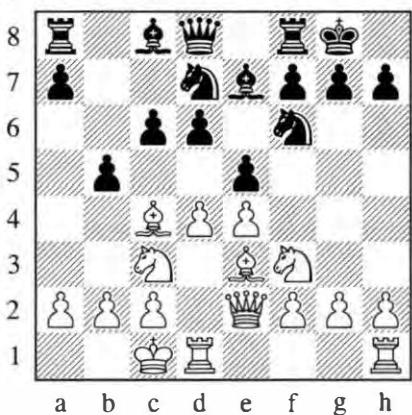
► Ex. 15-1 ◀ ★ ▼



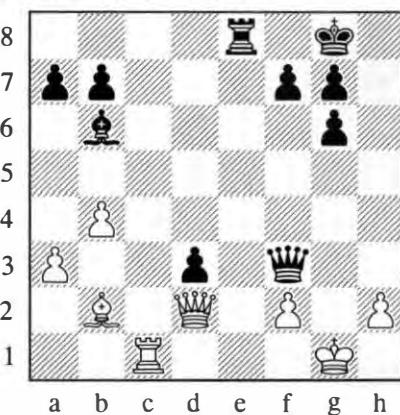
► Ex. 15-4 ◀ ★★★ ▼



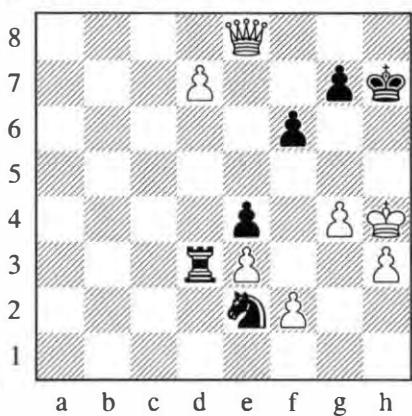
► Ex. 15-2 ◀ ★★ △



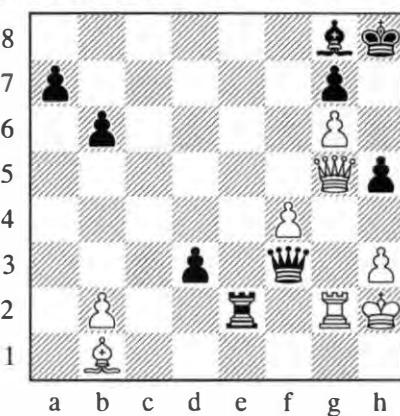
► Ex. 15-5 ◀ ★★ ▼



► Ex. 15-3 ◀ ★ △

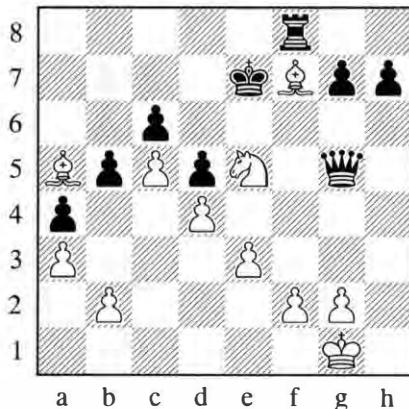


► Ex. 15-6 ◀ ★★ ▼

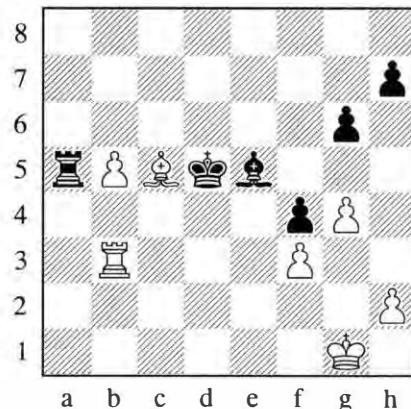


Exercises

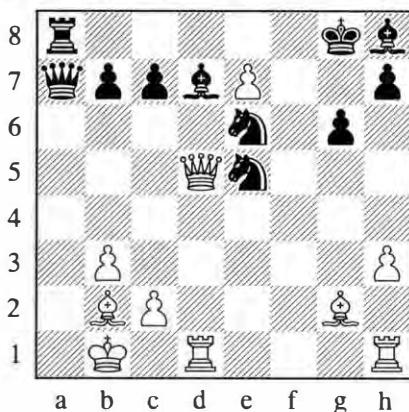
► Ex. 15-7 ◀ ★★



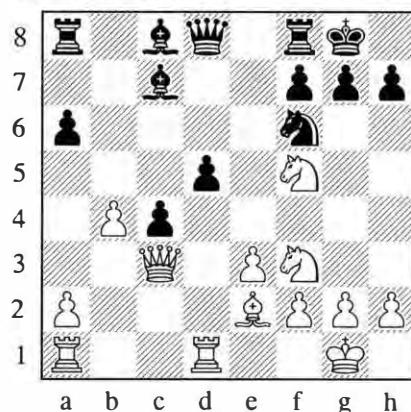
► Ex. 15-10 ◀ ★★



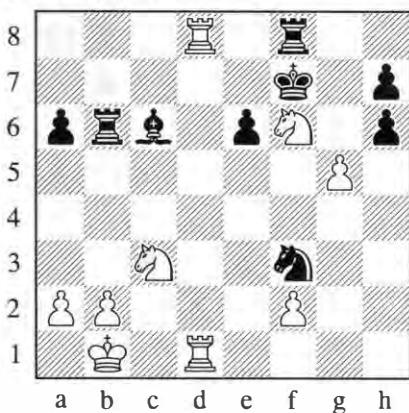
► Ex. 15-8 ◀ ★★★



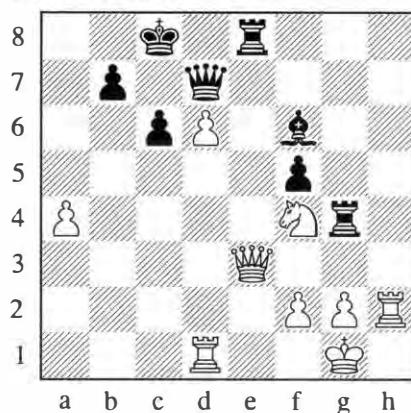
► Ex. 15-11 ◀ ★



► Ex. 15-9 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 15-12 ◀ ★★★



Solutions

Ex. 15-1

A.Kotov – V.Smyslov

Budapest Candidates 1950

1... $\mathbb{E}f2\#!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{E}b2\#$

0–1

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{E}xa6\#!$

(another 1 point for seeing this threat)

2... $\mathbb{Q}b8$

2... $bxa6$ is followed by 3. $\mathbb{W}b6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$

4. $\mathbb{W}xa6\#$ $\mathbb{E}a7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xc8\#.$

3. $\mathbb{W}a4$

1–0

Ex. 15-2

N.Grekov – A.Ilyin Zhenevsky

Moscow 1920

1.dxe5!

(1 point)

In the game, White found the clearly weaker

1. $\mathbb{Q}d3?!$.

1...dxe5

If 1... $bxcc4$, then 2.exf6 (2.exd6!+– is even better) 2... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xc4+–$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$ $bxcc4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{W}e8$ 4.e5±

(another 1 point)

Ex. 15-3

Block – Felderhof

Amsterdam 1912

White played:

1.d8 $\mathbb{W}??$

Almost all roads lead to Rome. White wins after 1. $\mathbb{W}xe4\#$ (or 1.g5+– or 1. $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 2.g5+–) 1... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 2.g5#! (2. $\mathbb{W}xd3??$ g5#) 2... $fxg5\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$.

1...g5#! 2. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}f4\#!$ 3.exf4 $\mathbb{E}xh3\#$

(1 point for spotting this trap)

Ex. 15-4

M.Tal – M.Botvinnik

World Ch(17), Moscow 1960

Botvinnik was in time trouble and did not find the single move which meets the white threat.

1... $\mathbb{W}d5??$

The correct move is 1... $\mathbb{Q}a8!–+$.

(2 points)

Ex. 15-5

S.Fazekas – R.Spielmann

1938

In the game, Black went wrong with 1... $\mathbb{E}e2??$

2. $\mathbb{E}c8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3. $\mathbb{E}h8\#!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}h6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$

5. $\mathbb{W}xg7\#.$

He could have won quickly:

1... $\mathbb{W}g4\#!$

(2 points)

By defending the c8-square, Black secures his back rank.

An alternative way to prepare ... $\mathbb{E}e2$ is by 1... $f6!–+$ (also 2 points), while the technical solution 1... $\mathbb{E}xf2\#$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xf2$ $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{E}e2\#$ (1 point) is also good enough. 2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{E}e2$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xd3$ $\mathbb{E}xb2–+$

Ex. 15-6

Croes – E.Mednis

USA 1959

In the game, Black played 1...d2?? 2. $\mathbb{W}h6\#$ $\mathbb{E}xh6$ 3.g7#.

The most poetic solution is:

1... $\mathbb{W}xg2\#!$

1 point for the more prosaic 1... $\mathbb{E}xg2\#$

2. $\mathbb{W}xg2$ $\mathbb{W}xf4\#–+$.

2. $\mathbb{W}xg2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5!$

(2 points)

3. $\mathbb{W}xe2$ $dxe2–+$

Solutions

Ex. 15-7

Golubev – A.Kotov

Black played:

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf7??$

There is an easy win after 1... $\mathbb{W}f6$ or 1... $\mathbb{W}f5$.

(1 point for either move)

But no point for the tentative 1... $\mathbb{W}xe5?$ 2.dxe5 $\mathbb{Q}xf7$. It is not necessary to give up so much material. The resulting endgame is not all that easy to win!

2. $\mathbb{Q}d8\#!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$

1-0

(another 1 point for spotting this trap)

Ex. 15-8

D.Sahovic – M.Matulovic

Belgrade 1969

In the game, White played 1. $\mathbb{Q}xe5??$ $\mathbb{W}a1\#$!

2. $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ $\mathbb{Q}xa1\#$.

(1 point for this variation)

The correct move is:

1. $\mathbb{W}xe6\#!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}f7$

1... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ is followed by 2. $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 3.exd8 $\mathbb{W}\#$) 3.e8 \mathbb{W} +-.

2.e8 $\mathbb{W}\#!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe8$

If 2... $\mathbb{Q}xe8$, then 3. $\mathbb{W}xd7$ +-.

3. $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$ +-

(another 1 point)

Ex. 15-9

F.Vallejo Pons – V.Epishin

Dos Hermanas 2003

White simply played 1. $\mathbb{Q}xf8\#?$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 2.gxh6 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h5\#?$ $\mathbb{B}b4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}ce4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ and the players agreed on a draw.

Much stronger was:

1. $\mathbb{Q}1d7\#!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd7\#$ +-

(2 points)

Ex. 15-10

R.Hasangatin – P.Harikrishna

Abu Dhabi 2003

White played:

1. $\mathbb{Q}f2\#?$

White should settle for a draw with 1. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (or 1. $\mathbb{Q}f8=$) 1... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}a8=$.

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}a1\#$

White now realized that his rook would be trapped after 2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$, so he resigned.

(another 1 point for seeing this trap)

Ex. 15-11

A.Huzman – G.Kasparov

Rethymnon 2003

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{W}e8$

1... $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$; 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$

1-0

Even a great player can have an off day.

Ex. 15-12

E.Williams – D.Harrwitz

London(8) 1852

In the game there followed 1. $\mathbb{W}a7\#$! $\mathbb{W}xd6=$

(1 point for seeing this defence)

Black's idea is of course 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$, while 2. $\mathbb{W}a8\#$ is well met by 2... $\mathbb{W}b8\#$.

1. $\mathbb{Q}h7\#$ also allows Black to defend after 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 3.fxe3.

The correct move is:

1. $\mathbb{Q}h8!!$

(2 points)

Now the white king gets an escape square and Black's defensive idea ... $\mathbb{W}xd6$ is thwarted.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xh8$

1... $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}a7$ +-

2. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 3. $\mathbb{W}a5\#$ b6 4. $\mathbb{W}xb6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$

5. $\mathbb{W}a6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}a5\#$ +-

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 24

- **20** points and above ➤ Excellent
- **16** points and above ➤ Good
- **12** points ➤ Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Resources for the attacking side
- ✓ Linking motifs
- ✓ Various combinations

Diagram 16-1



Diagram 16-2



Removing the defence

Removing the defence is one of the most important resources in an attack. A piece which is protecting other pieces or squares near the king is removed by a tactical operation. Of course this does not necessarily involve a sacrifice. We can attack an important defensive piece, exchange it, deflect it or simply take it.

Removing a defender is often a preparatory step for other tactical operations, such as double attacks, decoying, etc.

Diagram 16-1

A.Tolush – E.Geller

USSR Ch, Moscow 1950

1... $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$

The motif behind this combination is to achieve control over the e2-square.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$

2.bxc3 is followed by the fork 2... $\mathbb{W}e2-$ -.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ is slightly more stubborn: 2... $\mathbb{W}e2$ (or 2...fxe5 3.bxc3 $\mathbb{W}xc3-$ -) 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ fxe5 4.bxc3 $\mathbb{W}xh2-$ - 2... $\mathbb{Q}c7-$ -+ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{W}xe4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{W}xc2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{W}e2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$

0-1

Diagram 16-2

A.Tolush – P.Keres

USSR Ch, Leningrad 1947

White wants to attack the knight on b4, which is protecting its colleague on d3, in order to win one of the knights. But Black has a strong reply.

1.a3? $\mathbb{Q}xb2!$

Removing the defender of the c3-knight. Here Black is exploiting in instructive fashion the weakness of White's back rank.

2.axb4

If 2. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$, then 2... $\mathbb{Q}xc3-$ - mate after ... $\mathbb{Q}c1\#$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 3.bxa5 bxa5 4.h3 $\mathbb{Q}b3?$

Either 4... $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$ or 4... $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$ would be simpler.

5.♕d2?

White does not seize his chance. The correct move is 5.♕e5! and if 5...a4, then 6.♖xa4! ♕xe3 7.♕d7! ♕xa4 8.♕xf8 ♕c3 9.♕b8=.

5...♗fb8 6.♕d4 ♗3b6†

Black has an extra pawn and went on to win the game.

Diagram 16-3**R.Fuchs – A.Hennings**

East Germany 1972

Black finds a little combination which exploits the unfavourable positioning of his opponent's pieces.

1...♗xc2!

This directly removes one defender of the d3-square and in addition deflects the rook away from its defence.

2.♗xc2 ♜xd3† 3.♔f2 ♕d4!

This attack gives Black a decisive advantage. The white rook can no longer do the double job of controlling the d2-square and defending the knight on c3.

4.♗c1 ♜d2†**0–1**

Removing the defence during an attack on the king is one of the most frequently used tactics. You can also interpret the destruction of the castled position (Chapter 16 of *Build Up Your Chess 2*) as being the removal of the defence. But in this chapter we are mainly considering combinations which are directed against a specific piece.

Diagram 16-4**H.Ahues – Steneberg**

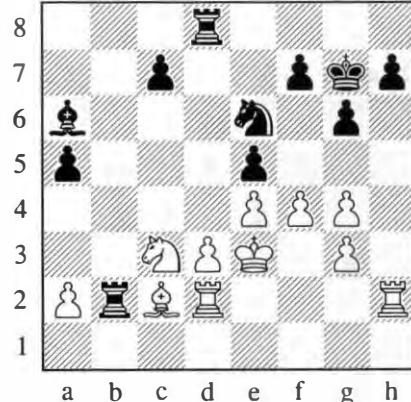
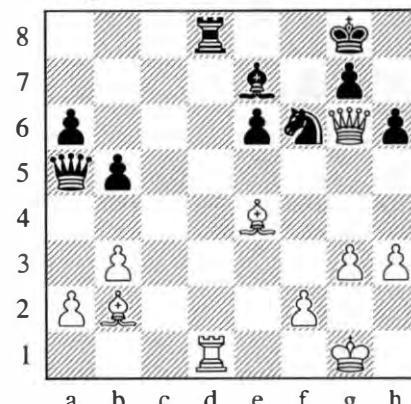
Berlin 1930

1.♕xf6!

The knight on f6 is protecting the h7-square and so has to be removed.

1...♗xd1†

1...♗xf6 is answered by 2.♗d7! which threatens ♘h7† followed by ♘h8#. If 2...♗xd7, then simply 3.♘e8#.

Diagram 16-3**Diagram 16-4**

2.♕g2 ♜f8

2...♜xf6 3.♛e8#

3.♕xg7!

White opens up the king's position further.

3...♜xg7 4.♛xe6† ♜f8

Or 4...♚h8 5.♛e8† ♚f8 6.♛xf8#.

5.♛g6

And Black cannot simultaneously protect both the f7- and e8-squares.

5...♝d8 6.♛f7#

Diagram 16-5

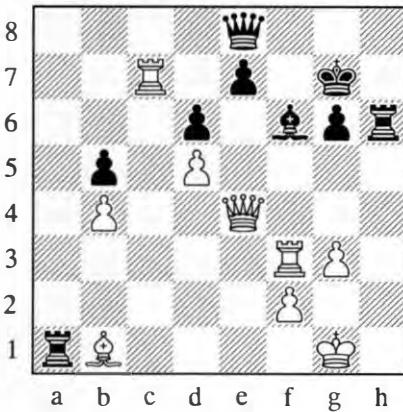


Diagram 16-6



Diagram 16-5

L.Stein – M.Filip

Moscow 1967

1.♜xf6!+–

Removing the important defender.

1...♝xb1†

1...♚xf6 would be bad: 2.♛e6† (or simply 2.♛d4† followed by ♛xa1) 2...♝g5 (2...♝g7 3.♜xe7†+–) 3.f4† ♚h5 4.♜h3#

2.♛xb1 ♜xf6 3.♛e4!

Threatening ♛e6†.

3...♞f7 4.♛d4†

Black resigned, on account of 4...♝g5 5.♛e3† ♚h5 6.g4†.

Diagram 16-6

E.Vasiukov – B.Djurasevic

Belgrade 1961

White finds an elegant solution and removes both defenders of the g7-pawn.

1.♜xe6! ♜xe6 2.♜xf8! ♜xf8 3.♜xg7† ♚h8 4.♜xg6†

Black resigned, because he also loses his queen after 4...♚f6 5.♜xf6.

And to finish, two more typical combinations aimed against the knight on f6.

Diagram 16-7

B.Spassky – E.Geller

Candidates Match(6), Sukhumi 1968

1.♕xf6!

The knight was protecting the h7-square. The combination by White, however, destroys the defence and opens up the king's position.

1...exf6 2.♗h7† ♕f8 3.♕xf7!

An important continuation. The g6-point is now weakened too.

3...♝xc2

3...♝xf7 is followed by 4.♕h6 ♜g8 5.♕f4 ♜xc2 (or 5...d5 6.♗xg6† ♔f8 7.exd5+-) 6.♕f1 ♜xg2† 7.♗xg2 ♜c2 8.♗xg6† ♔e7 8.♗xg7 ♜e3† 10.♗f2 ♜xf1 11.♗xf6† ♔d7 12.♗xg8+-.

4.♕h6

Removing another important defensive piece – the bishop on g7.

4.♝xc2 ♜xf7 5.♕h6 ♜g8 is not so clear.

4...♝xc1†

4...♝xh6 is met by 5.♕xh6 ♜e8 6.♕g8 ♜xc1† 7.♕xcl ♜f8 8.♕e7+-.

If 4...♗xd3, then 5.♗xg7† ♜e8 6.♝xc2 ♜xc2 7.♕f4 with a decisive attack. For example: 7...♗d4† 8.♗h2 f5 9.e5 ♜xg2 10.♗xd6†+-

5.♕xc1 ♜xf7

Or 5...♝xh6 6.♝xh6 ♜e8 7.♕g8+-.

6.♗xg7† ♜e8 7.g5!

7.e5! would also be good: 7...♝xg2 8.e6+-

7...f5 8.♗xg6† ♜d7 9.♗f7† ♜c6 10.exf5†

1-0

Diagram 16-8

A.Bisguier – B.Larsen

Zagreb 1965

1.♝xf6! ♜h8

Other moves lose even more quickly:

a) 1...♝xf6 2.♗g7! ♜xg7 (2...♝xg5 3.♗h8#)

3.♗h7#

b) 1...exf6 2.♗xg7+-

Diagram 16-7

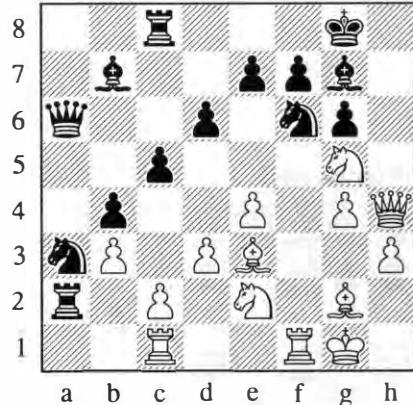
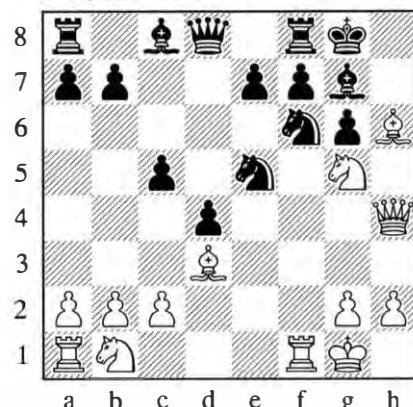


Diagram 16-8



2. $\mathbb{Q}f1+-$

The simplest solution. The threat is now $\mathbb{Q}g7$ or $\mathbb{Q}xf8$.

2... $\mathbb{E}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$

Threatening $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ followed by $\mathbb{W}xh8\#$.

3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$

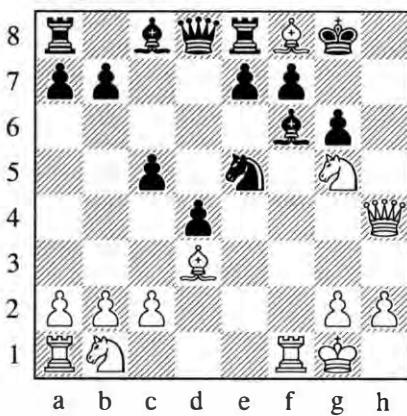
3... $e6$ can be met by 4. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ $\mathbb{E}xe7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xh8\#$ or simply 4. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 5. $\mathbb{E}xf7\#$ and mate next move.

Diagram 16-9**4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$**

Not again! The same motif carried out twice is something special.

4... $\mathbb{E}xf6$ 5. $\mathbb{W}h6!$

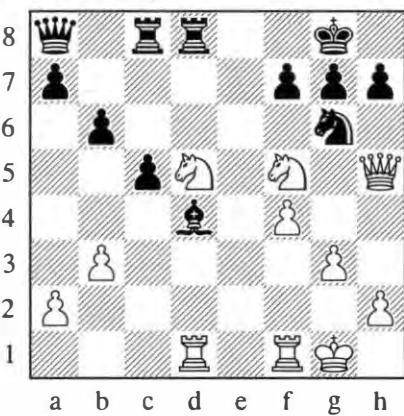
But not 5. $\mathbb{W}h7\#?$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8+-$.

5... $\mathbb{E}xf8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ **Diagram 16-9**

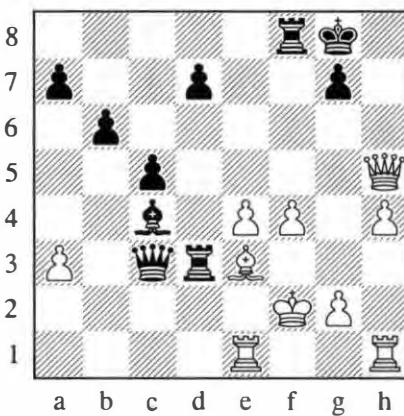
Exercises

16

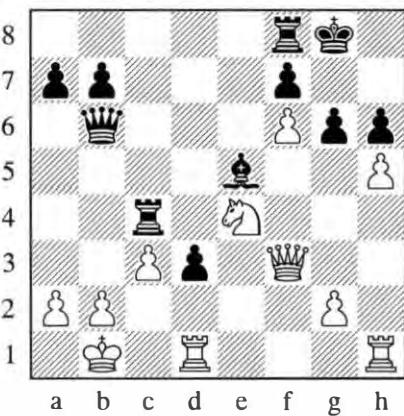
► Ex. 16-1 ◀ ★★ △



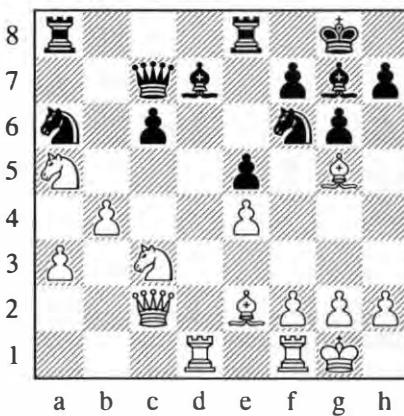
► Ex. 16-4 ◀ ★★ ▼



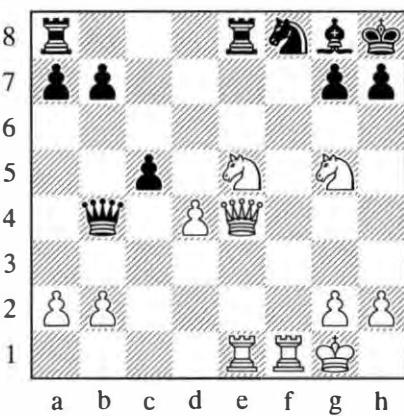
► Ex. 16-2 ◀ ★★ ▼



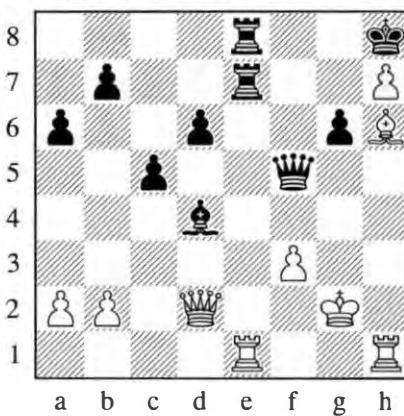
► Ex. 16-5 ◀ ★ △



► Ex. 16-3 ◀ ★ △

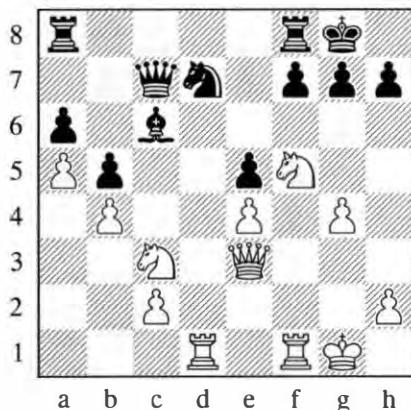


► Ex. 16-6 ◀ ★★ △

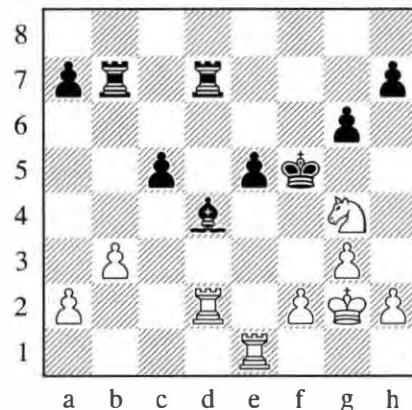


Exercises

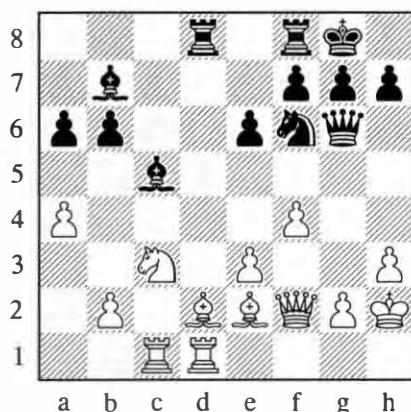
► Ex. 16-7 ◀ ★ △



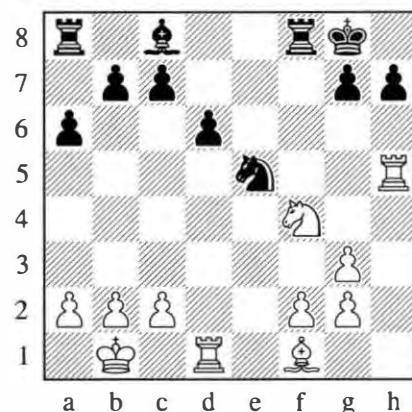
► Ex. 16-10 ◀ ★ △



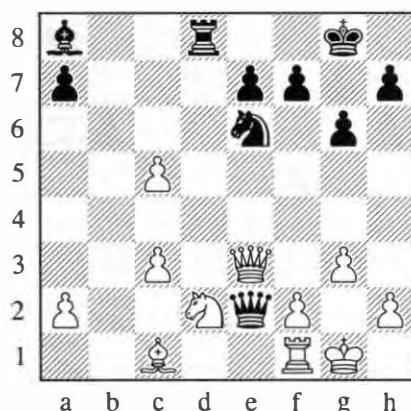
► Ex. 16-8 ◀ ★ ▼



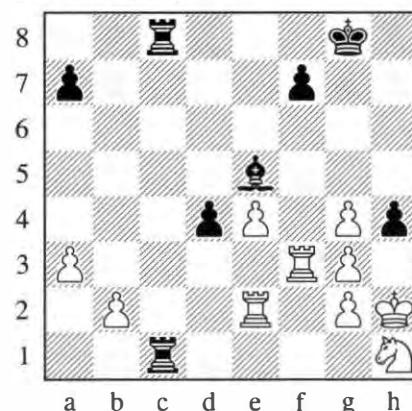
► Ex. 16-11 ◀ ★ △



► Ex. 16-9 ◀ ★★ ▼



► Ex. 16-12 ◀ ★★ ▼



Solutions

Ex. 16-1

F.Dus Chotimirsky – A.Bannik

USSR Ch semifinal, Vilnius 1949

1. $\mathbb{E}xd4!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{E}cx d4$

If 1... $\mathbb{E}xd5$, then 2. $\mathbb{E}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$!+–.

1... $\mathbb{Q}h8?$ is followed by 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ $gx f6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}h6$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{E}d7$ $\mathbb{E}cf8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{E}g7$ 6. $\mathbb{E}b7!$ $\mathbb{W}d8$

7. $\mathbb{E}d1$ +–.

2. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$!

(another 1 point)

2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$

Or 2... $gx f6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}h6$ +–.

3. $\mathbb{W}xh7$ $gx f6$ 4. $\mathbb{E}el$

1–0

Ex. 16-2

G.Sax – J.Van der Wiel

Biel 1985

1... $\mathbb{E}xe4!!$

(1 point)

Removing the defender of the c3- and f2-squares.

2. $\mathbb{W}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$

Now White will be mated after 3. b3 $\mathbb{W}f2!$.

(another 1 point for this variation)

And 3. $\mathbb{E}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ 4. $hx g6$ $\mathbb{W}xf6$ +– is also hopeless.

0–1

Ex. 16-3

M.Carlson – R.Eberlein

Biel 1979

1. $\mathbb{E}xf8!$

Black resigned, on account of 1... $\mathbb{E}xf8$ (1... $\mathbb{E}xe5$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$! $hx g6$ 3. $\mathbb{W}h4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$.

(1 point for this variation)

Ex. 16-4

I.Efimov – R.Andreoli

Varallo 1989

1... $\mathbb{E}xe3!$

(1 point)

Removing the defence of the d2-square.

1... $\mathbb{E}d2\#$ would not be so forcing, due to 2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$.

2. $\mathbb{E}xe3$ $\mathbb{W}d2\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$

3. $\mathbb{E}e2$ $\mathbb{W}xf4\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}xe2$ +–

3... $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$! 4. $\mathbb{E}xe2$ $\mathbb{W}xf4\#$

(another 1 point)

Ex. 16-5

P.Hohler – G.Tcherniak

Munchenstein 1959

1. $\mathbb{Q}xa6!$

Or first 1. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$.

1... $\mathbb{E}xa6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$

(1 point)

Black resigned, as he is losing a piece after 3... $\mathbb{W}d8$ (or 3... $\mathbb{W}d6$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$ $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 5. $\mathbb{E}xd7$.

Ex. 16-6

Parence – Tilson

Great Britain 1964

1. $\mathbb{W}xd4\#$! $cxd4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$

(1 point)

2... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$

2... $\mathbb{E}xg7$ 3. $\mathbb{E}xe8\#$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 4. $\mathbb{E}xg8\#$

3. $\mathbb{E}xe7\#$ $\mathbb{E}xe7$

3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ also offers no hope: 4. $\mathbb{E}xe8$ $\mathbb{W}c2\#$ (4... $\mathbb{W}g5\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{W}d2\#$ 6. $\mathbb{E}e2$ +–) 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ +–

4. $h8\mathbb{W}\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $\mathbb{E}h7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}c8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$

6... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 7. $\mathbb{W}xf5\#$ $gx f5$ 8. $\mathbb{E}xe7$ +–

7. $\mathbb{W}f8\#$

1–0

(another 1 point for this variation)

Solutions

Ex. 16-7

R.Nezhmetdinov – Romanov

Arkhangelsk 1950

1. $\mathbb{W}g5$ $g6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$

First 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$ and then 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$ is equally good.

2... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$

(1 point)

3... $\mathbb{Q}xd7$

3... $\mathbb{W}xd7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ –

4. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$

Threatening $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$. Also winning is 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$.

5... $\mathbb{W}a7\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

1–0

Ex. 16-8

V.Zheliantdinov – A.Mikhailchishin

Lvov 1995

1... $\mathbb{Q}xd2!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3!$

(1 point)

White resigned. 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ is met by 3... $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ (or 3... $\mathbb{W}h6!-$) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}e3-$.

Ex. 16-9

W.Uhlmann – H.Liebert

Groeditz 1976

1... $\mathbb{Q}xd2!!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}g5?!$ would not be so accurate, because of 2. $h4!$.

White resigned, on account of 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ (or 2. $\mathbb{W}xd2$ $\mathbb{W}f3-$) 2... $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ (threatening ... $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$) 3. $\mathbb{W}xg5$ (or 3. $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xd2\#-$) 3... $\mathbb{W}f3-$.

(another 1 point for these variations)

Ex. 16-10

T.Petrosian – B.Ivkov

Teslic 1979

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$

(1 point)

Black resigned, in view of 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 3. $h3\#$.

Ex. 16-11

Zavernyaev – Paromov

Arkhangelsk 1963

1. $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$

1–0

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ is met by 2. $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xc8+$ –

If 1... $dxe5$, then 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ $hxg6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh3\#$.

(1 point for this variation)

Ex. 16-12

A.Bisguier – R.Fischer

New York 1965

1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$

This threatens 2... $hxg3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$.

Black had a second way to win: 1... $\mathbb{Q}xh1\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ $\mathbb{Q}c1\#$ (2... $hxg3?$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e1\pm$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $hxg3\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}c6?$ 5. $g5\pm$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 7. $gxg3$ $d3-$ + (also 2 points)

2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh1\#$!

(2 points)

White resigned, on account of 3. $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ $\mathbb{Q}c1\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$.

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 18

- 15 points and above ➤ Excellent
- 12 points and above ➤ Good
- 9 points ➤ Pass mark

If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Bishop against knight
- ✓ The advantages of the bishop
- ✓ Capablanca's rule
- ✓ Rook and bishop
- ✓ The advantages of the knight
- ✓ The correct positioning of the pawns
- ✓ Queen and knight

Good and bad bishops

This subject has already been treated in Chapter 6 of *Build Up Your Chess 2*.

In this chapter, we shall consider only those positions in which one side has a bishop and the other side has a knight. These pieces are of nominally the same strength (= 3 pawns). But they have very different abilities. For example, **the bishop is a long-range piece which plays only on squares of one colour, whereas all the squares are open to the short-range knight**. The result of these differences is that in some situations the bishop is stronger and in others the knight has the advantage.

The bishop is stronger, whenever...

- 1) the position is open;
- 2) play is taking place on both sides of the board;
- 3) the pawn structure is unbalanced – the bishop can, for example, support a passed pawn better than a knight while at the same time fighting against opposing passed pawns.

In its struggle against the knight, **more often than not the bishop is at an advantage**. For that reason, you have to think very carefully in the opening before exchanging a bishop for a knight.

To maximize the activity of the bishop, your pawns should be correctly positioned. Capablanca's rule – **put the pawns on squares of the opposite colour to that of your bishop** – is very important. It means that you can protect those squares which cannot be controlled by the bishop. Though, like almost all rules in chess, this is not an absolute rule, it does apply in the majority of cases.

However, in order to be able to defend the pawns with the bishop, **we must sometimes place some pawns on the 'wrong' squares**.

In most cases the rook, which works in straight lines, forms a better team with the bishop than with the knight.

Diagram 17-1

A.Yusupov – V.Anand

Linares 1992

In order to play for a win, White must retain his bishop! The position is open and the bishop is slightly more effective than the knight, which does not have a protected outpost.

1. $\mathbb{W}h5!$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 2. $\mathbb{B}xc8$ $\mathbb{W}xc8$ 3. $\mathbb{B}c1$ $\mathbb{W}d7$

It is advantageous for White to exchange the queens and keep the rooks!

4. $\mathbb{W}d1!$ $\mathbb{W}xd1\#$

Or 4... $\mathbb{W}b7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}c2\pm$.

5. $\mathbb{B}xd1$ $\mathbb{B}d8$

Diagram 17-2

If Black now manages to exchange the rooks, then he can put his knight on c6 and his king on e6, which should keep things level without any difficulty.

6. $\mathbb{B}c1!$

The rook is actively posted on the c-file and can penetrate via c6.

6... $h5$ 7. $\mathbb{B}c6$ $a5$ 8. $\mathbb{B}b6$ $\mathbb{B}d5$ 9. $\mathbb{B}f1$

$9.b3?$ $\mathbb{B}d1\#$ 10. $\mathbb{B}h2$ $\mathbb{B}a1$ 11. $\mathbb{B}xb5$ $\mathbb{B}xa3$ 12. $\mathbb{B}xh5$ $\mathbb{B}xb3$ 13. $\mathbb{B}xa5$ would lead to an endgame with all the pawns on one wing, in which White has only minimal chances of a win. White hopes to achieve more from this game.

9... $g5$ 10. $\mathbb{B}e2$

Diagram 17-3

10... $g4?$

Here Black would do better to quickly put his queenside pawns on light squares. The correct approach is 10... $a4\pm$ and if 11. $\mathbb{B}f3$, then simply 11... $\mathbb{B}e5!$

11. $hxg4$ $hxg4$

Diagram 17-1

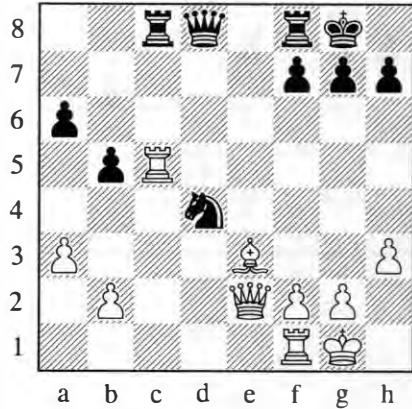


Diagram 17-2

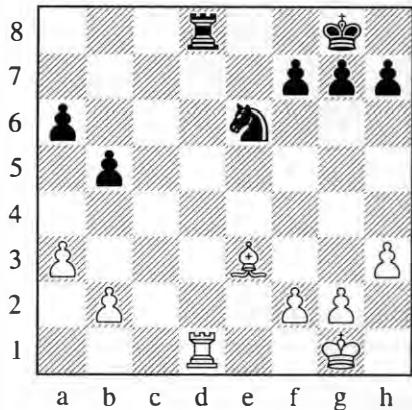


Diagram 17-3

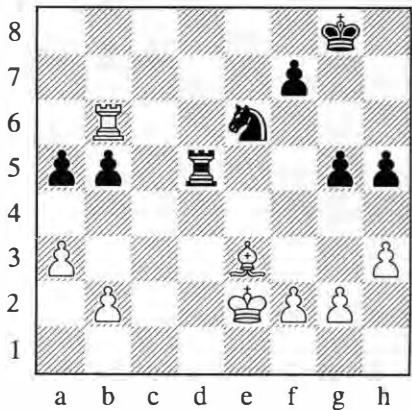
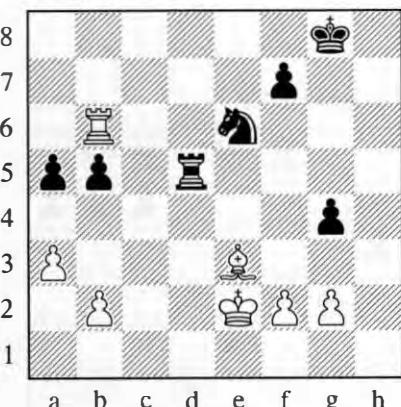


Diagram 17-4**Diagram 17-4**

You may recognize this position, which was already treated in *Build Up Your Chess 2*, Ex. 2-2. White should fix at least one of the black queenside pawns on a dark square, so that he is then able to attack it with the bishop.

12.b3!± ♜e5 13.♗d3 f5 14.g3

White restricts himself to defensive measures on the kingside and limits further advances of the black pawns.

14...♝f7 15.♝a6 b4 16.axb4?!

Shortly before the time control White chooses a safe plan, but in doing so lessens his advantage. The only one to gain from an exchange of pawns here is the defender! 16.a4 would have been better, and if 16...♝c5†, then 17.♗d4 ♜xe3 18.♝a7†!+– (Anand).

16...axb4 17.♝b6

The b4-pawn is fixed on a dark square and can be attacked by all the white pieces.

17...♜e4 18.♝c6 ♜e5 19.♝c4 ♜e4†

19...f4 20.gxf4 ♜xf4 would be bad, on account of 21.♗d4! ♜g6 22.♝xg6 ♜xe3 23.♝xe3 ♜xg6 24.♝f4 ♜h5 25.f3+– (Anand).

20.♝d5 ♜f6 21.♝c4 ♜xc4 22.♝xc4 ♜e5

22...f4? 23.gxf4 ♜f5

23.♝xb4

23.♝d2?!

23...f4!

Diagram 17-5

As expected, White has won the b4-pawn. Black tries to exchange some pawns on the kingside.

24.gxf4†?!

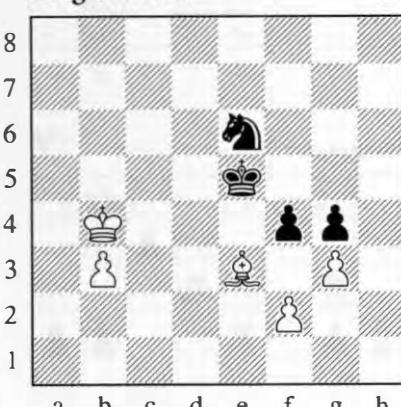
After 24.♝a7 fxe3 25.fxe3 ♜d6 there is the danger that Black can construct a typical fortress by placing his king on b7 and then playing his knight between f3 and h2.

24...♜xf4 25.♝c4

With such reduced material, White has great difficulties winning the game.

25...♞h5?

25...♝e4! would have been correct: 26.b4 ♜d3 27.b5 g3! and if 28.fxe3 ♜xe3 29.♝d5?! ♜b4† 30.♝e5 ♜f3 31.♝d4, then not 31...♞xg3? 32.♝c4 ♜c2 33.b6 ♜e3† 34.♝c5+–, but 34...♞c2†!! 35.♝c5 ♜e1!! 36.b6 ♜d3† 37.♝d6 ♜b4=.

Diagram 17-5

After missing this fantastic opportunity, Black can no longer save the game. White plays very cautiously, preventing the final pawn swap and switching play between the kingside and the queenside – the g4-pawn can also be attacked!

26.♗a7! ♗e6 27.♗b8 ♗f6 28.♗d4 ♗d5 29.♗g3 ♗b4 30.♗c5 ♗d3† 31.♗c4

White tries (successfully!) to force the knight to less favourable positions.

31...♘e1 32.b4 ♘c2 33.b5 ♘d7 34.♗e5 ♘e1 35.♗d5 ♘d3

Diagram 17-6

36.♗d4??

36.♗d6!+– is stronger. This typical situation, in which the bishop deprives the knight of a lot of squares, would have led to a win at once.

36...♗f4† 37.♗e4 ♘e2 38.♗e5 ♘c8 39.♗e3 ♘c1 40.♗b2 ♘b3 41.♗d4??

Overhasty play with 41.♗f4 ♘b7 42.♗xg4 ♘b6 43.f4 ♘d2! 44.f5 ♘e4 45.♗f4? would give Black drawing chances: 45...♗d6 46.f6 ♘xb5 47.♗e5 ♘c6 48.♗a3 ♘f7† 49.♗e6 ♘g5† 50.♗e7 ♘h7 51.f7 ♘d5=

Instead of 45.♗f4? there is a win after the more complicated 45.♗e5! ♘xb5 46.♗f4 ♘c5 47.f6 ♘d7 48.f7 ♘c6 49.♗f5 ♘d5 50.♗b2 ♘d6 51.♗a3† ♘d5 52.♗b4 ♘c6 53.♗e6 ♘c7 54.♗e7 ♘c6 55.♗d6+– and Black is in zugzwang.

41...♘c1 42.♗d2

White pushes the knight away.

42...♗b3† 43.♗c3 ♘a5

43...♗c1 is followed by 44.♗e3 g3 45.f4 g2 46.f5 ♘e2† 41.♗b4+–.

44.♗e5 ♘d7 45.♗f4?? ♘c8 46.♗d4 ♘b7 47.♗c5 ♘a7

47...♗b3† 48.♗c4! ♘a5† 49.♗b4+–

Diagram 17-7

48.♗b4! ♘b7 49.♗c7

The knight is trapped. 49...♗a8 is met by 50.b6 with zugzwang.

1–0

Diagram 17-6

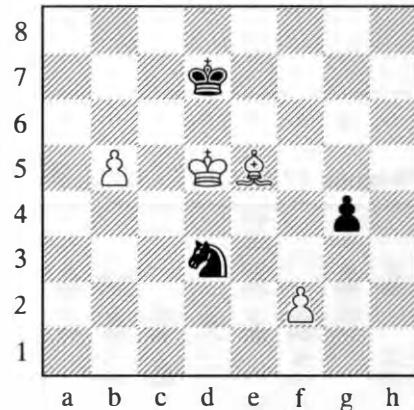
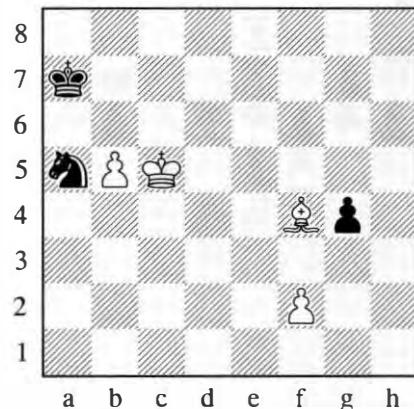


Diagram 17-7



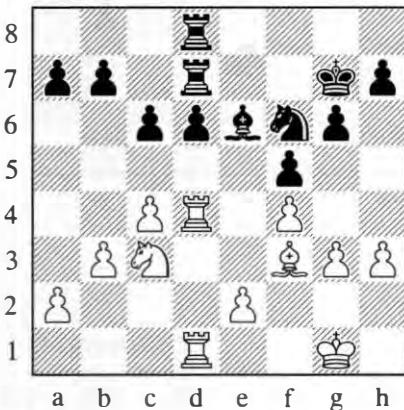
The knight is stronger, whenever...

- 1) the position is closed;
- 2) play is on one side of the board;
- 3) the opposing side has some pawn weaknesses.

The knight is a close-quarter fighter, and it must get close to its opponents. For that, it needs **outposts**. The knight is very good at **constructing a fortress**, or a **barrier against the opposing king**.

A safe pawn set-up in the struggle against the bishop is, of course, one in which the pawns are positioned **on squares of a different colour from that of the bishop**. However, sometimes 'wrongly' posted pawns can limit the activity of the bishop.

The knight and the queen work very well together and are often stronger than queen and bishop.

Diagram 17-8**Diagram 17-8****A.Yusupov – V.Cmilyte**

Mainz (rapid) 2004

1...a6?

Black unnecessarily places her pawn on a square of the same colour as the bishop.

2.♗g2±

White prepares the breakthrough in the centre by means of e2-e4 and as a precaution protects the h3-pawn.

2...d5?!

Passive play would have been better for Black. This just further weakens the dark squares. The probable intention of constructing a fortress is impossible, because Black has too many weaknesses.

3.c5 ♖e4?!**Diagram 17-9****4.♘xe4**

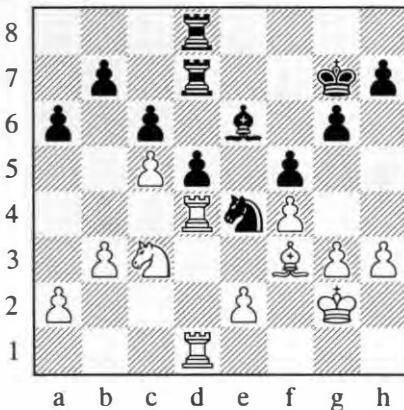
In a closed position the knight is superior to the bishop.

4...dxe4 5.♗xd7† ♗xd7 6.♗xd7† ♗xd7 7.♘f2 ♗f6 8.♘e3 ♗e6 9.♘d4±

Black is preventing further penetration by the opposing king, but White can still take effective action with his knight.

9...h6!

Positioning the first pawn correctly! Black needs

Diagram 17-9

this chance for counterplay on the kingside (...g6-g5 and then possibly a king march).

10.h4

Diagram 17-10

10...h5?

After this move, which once more sets up all the pawns wrongly, Black's position can no longer be saved.

11.Qa4 Qd5 12.Qb6 Qe6 13.e3

The only way to lay siege to a fortress! Black is in zugzwang and must allow the knight onto d6.

13...Qg8

If 13...a5, then 14.Qc3! followed by Qb2-a3-a4 will pick off the a-pawn.

14.Qc8 Qe6 15.Qd6 b5

15...b6 loses after 16.Qc4 b5 17.Qe5.

16.Qb7 Qf6

Diagram 17-11

17.Qc3!+-

Since the black king cannot find a way into the white camp, its counterpart can casually wander over to the queenside.

17...Qe6 18.Qb4 Qd5 19.Qa5

Just look at the position of the white pawns on the queenside! The important c4-square is under control, and although the a2- and b3-pawns are on light squares, there is no way for the black bishop to attack them properly.

19...Qe6 20.Qb6

This is even simpler than 20.Qxa6 Qc8+-.

20...Qc8 21.Qa5 Qd7 22.b4!

Black cannot simultaneously protect the pawns on c6 and a6.

22...Qe8 23.Qxa6 Qd7 24.Qb6 Qe8 25.Qc7

1-0

V.Savon – B.Spassky

USSR Ch, Baku 1961

1.Qf3 d5 2.g3 c5 3.Qg2 Qc6 4.0-0 e5 5.d3 f6 6.e4 d4 7.Qh4 Qe6 8.f4 Qd7 9.Qd2 0-0-0 10.a4 Qd6 11.Qc4 Qc7 12.Qd2 Qge7 13.f5?

Diagram 17-12

This allows his opponent to carry out an exchange operation that suits him.

Diagram 17-10

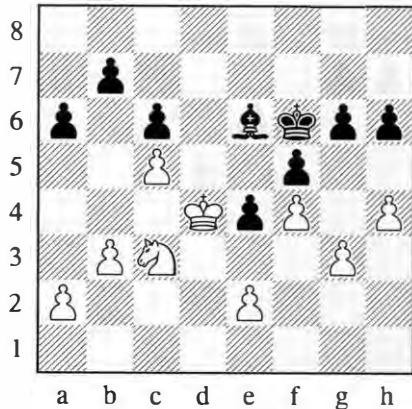


Diagram 17-11

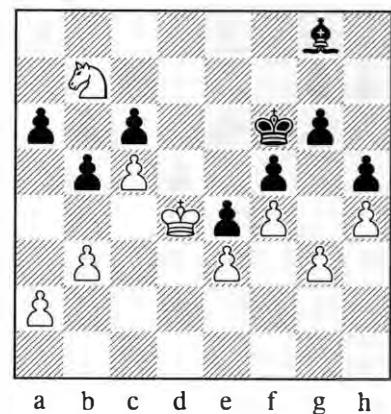
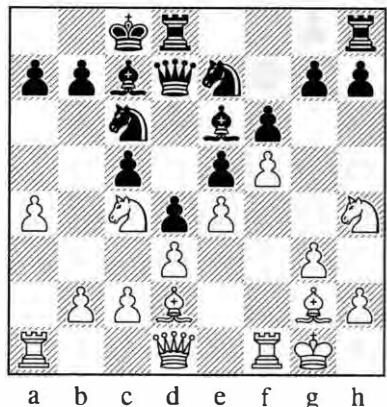


Diagram 17-12



Positional play 3

Diagram 17-13

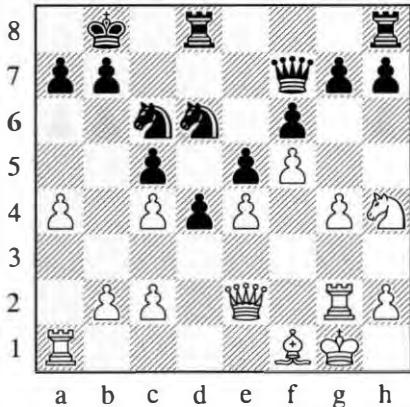


Diagram 17-14

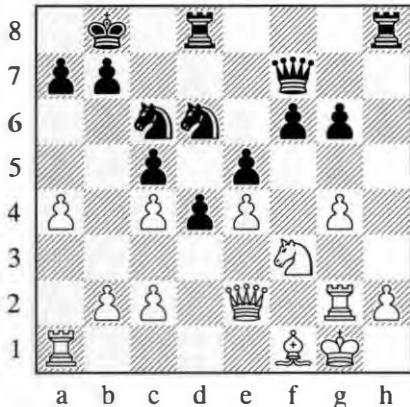
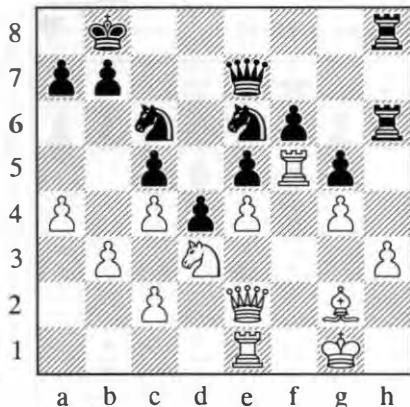


Diagram 17-15



13...Qf3 would be better, or 13.b3.

13...Qxc4 14.dxc4 Qa5!

Black exchanges both his bishops. The exchange of the dark-squared bishops is particularly important, since it leaves his opponent with a bad bishop.

15.Qf2

15.Qc1 is bad, due to 15...d3??.

15...Qxd2 16.Qxd2?? Qb8

Black intends Qc8-d6 followed by preparing ...g6.

17.Qf3 Qc7 18.Qf1 Qc8 19.g4?!

First 19.Qd3 and then Qg2, Qh1, Qag1 and only then g4-g5 would be a better plan.

19...Qd6 20.Qg2 Qf7 21.Qe2

Diagram 17-13

21...g6

Why is Black opening the game on the kingside? The side with the knight also needs some open files for the major pieces. White is not particularly well coordinated at the moment.

22.fxg6?! hxg6 23.Qf3

Diagram 17-14

23...g5!

Black makes any counterplay by means of g4-g5 more difficult and obtains full control over the f4-square.

24.Qf2 Qe6 25.Qel Qh6 26.b3 Qe7

After having provoked the move b2-b3, he takes the precaution of protecting the c5-pawn.

27.Qd3 Qe8!

Setting off on the route Qe8-c7-e6-f4.

28.Qg2 Qc7 29.Qel Qe6 30.Qf5 Qdh8 31.h3

Diagram 17-15

31...Qb4!

Black wants to transfer his knight to f4, so he first exchanges the knight on d3.

32.Qef1 Qxd3 33.Qxd3 Qf4

A strategic triumph for Black. The knight is much better than the g2-bishop. In addition, White faces some specific problems, for example the h3-pawn is too weak. White tries for relief with an exchange sacrifice, but Spassky has no problems storming the white fortress.

34.Qxf4 gxf4 35.Qf2 Qc7 36.Qd2 Qg8 37.Qe2 Qg5 38.Qxg5 fxg5 39.Qf3 Qb6 40.Qf1 Qb4! 41.Qxb4 cxb4 42.Qg2

Good and bad bishops

Intending ♘d3.

42...d3!—+

Black opens the way for his king.

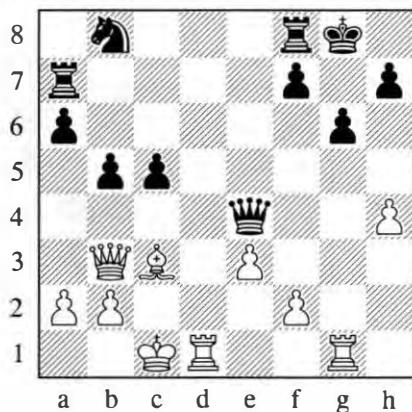
43.♘xd3 ♕c7 44.♗f1 ♕d6

After ♕c5-d4 the black king will decisively penetrate the opposing camp.

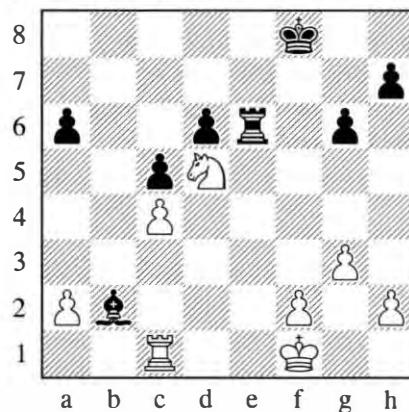
0–1

Exercises

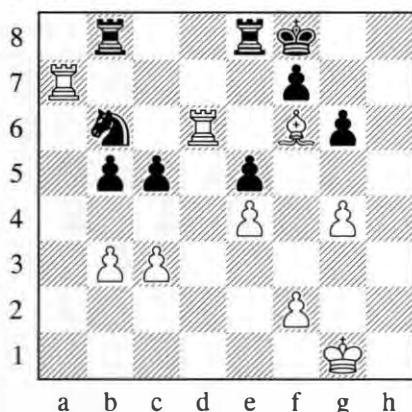
► Ex. 17-1 ◀ ★★ ▲



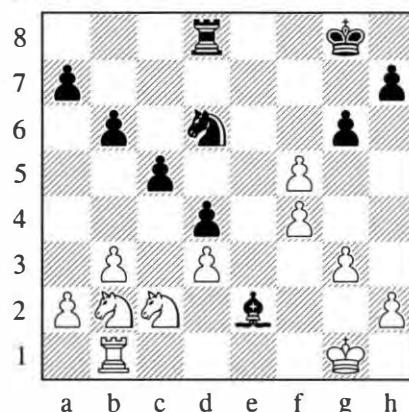
► Ex. 17-4 ◀ ★★ ▲



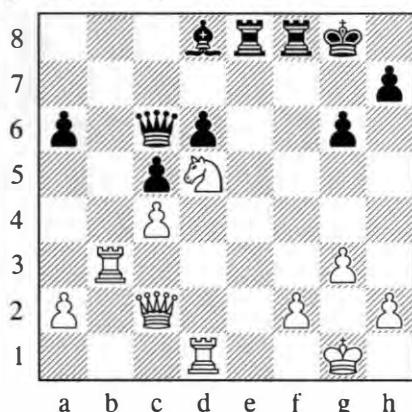
► Ex. 17-2 ◀ ★ ▲



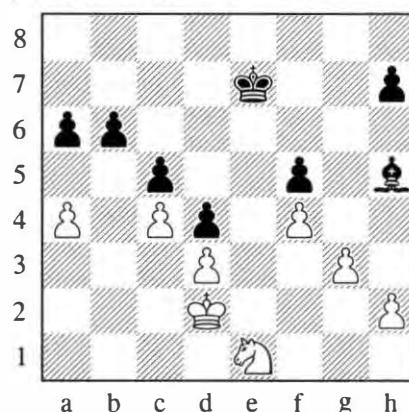
► Ex. 17-5 ◀ ★★ ▼



► Ex. 17-3 ◀ ★★★ ▲

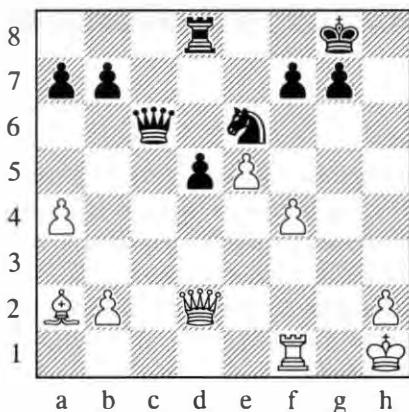


► Ex. 17-6 ◀ ★★★★ ▼



Exercises

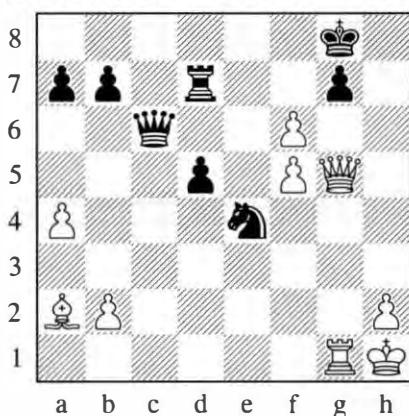
► Ex. 17-7 ◀ ★★★ △



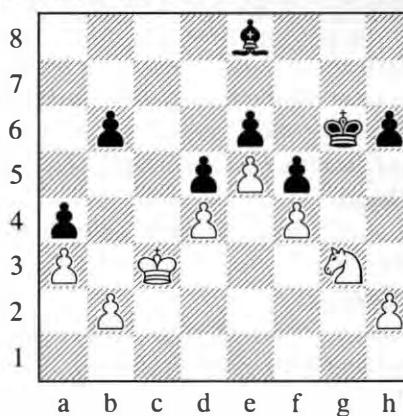
► Ex. 17-10 ◀ ★★ ▼



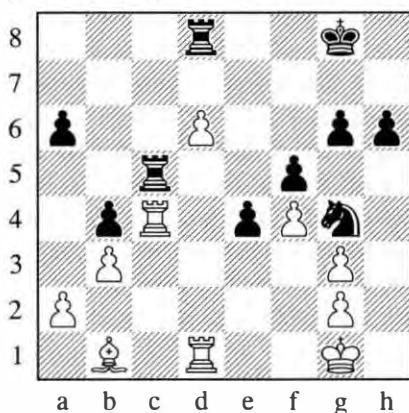
► Ex. 17-8 ◀ ★★ △



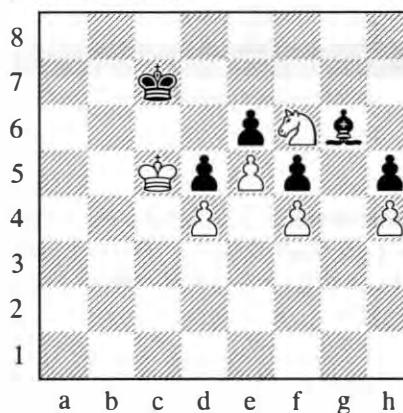
► Ex. 17-11 ◀ ★★ △



► Ex. 17-9 ◀ ★★ ▼



► Ex. 17-12 ◀ ★ △



Solutions

Ex. 17-1

I.Zaitsev – B.Spassky

Rostov on Don 1960

1.h5!?

(2 points)

White wants to attack. But his strong c3-bishop needs the support of the other pieces.

1... $\mathbb{Q}d5?!$ would not be so good: 1...b4! 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$

1 consolation point for the solid 1. $\mathbb{W}d5$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 2. $\mathbb{B}xd5$ c4, when White has good compensation for the pawn. However, the move in the game sets Black greater problems.

1...b4?

Black does not have time for this!

After 1...c4?!, 2. $\mathbb{W}a3$ $\mathbb{E}d7?!$ 3. $\mathbb{B}xd7$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$

4. $\mathbb{W}d6\#$ the black position remains in danger.

The immediate 1... $\mathbb{E}d7?!$ would be better, in order to swap off the rooks more quickly and thus weaken the white attack.

White now attacks very energetically.

2.hxg6 hxg6

Or 2... $\mathbb{B}xc3$ 3. $\mathbb{G}xf7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4. $\mathbb{E}g8\#$ $\mathbb{E}xg8$ 5. $\mathbb{F}xg8\#$.

3. $\mathbb{B}d6!$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$

If 3... $\mathbb{B}xc3$, then 4. $\mathbb{B}dxg6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 5. $\mathbb{E}g7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ (5... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}xc3+-$) 6. $\mathbb{E}7g3+-$.

4. $\mathbb{W}c4!!$

Black resigned, on account of 4... $\mathbb{W}xc4$ 5. $\mathbb{E}h1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6. $\mathbb{E}h8\#$.

Ex. 17-2

S.Gligoric – W.Lombardy

Munich Olympiad 1958

1. $\mathbb{E}d3!$

(1 point)

The best solution. The threat is $\mathbb{E}h3-h8\#$.

1... $\mathbb{E}e6$ 2.g5 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{E}h3+-$ $\mathbb{E}xf6$ 4. $\mathbb{G}xf6$ c4 5. $\mathbb{B}xc4$ bxc4 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{E}c8$ 7. $\mathbb{E}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 8. $\mathbb{E}xe5$

1-0

Ex. 17-3

U.Andersson – W.Browne

Wijk aan Zee 1983

1. $\mathbb{W}b2!$

(3 points)

Aimed against ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$.

White's advantage is not so clear if he chooses one of the following moves:

- a) 1. $\mathbb{E}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{E}xe8$ $\mathbb{W}xe8\pm$
- b) 1.f4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{E}b6$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$ $\mathbb{E}xf6$
- c) 1. $\mathbb{E}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$
- d) 1. $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{E}b6$ $\mathbb{W}a4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$ $\mathbb{E}xf6$
- 4. $\mathbb{E}xd6$ $\mathbb{E}xd6$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xd6$ $\mathbb{W}xc4=$

You only get 1 consolation point suggesting any of these.

1... $\mathbb{W}a4$ 2. $\mathbb{E}c1$ $\mathbb{E}e6$ 3. $\mathbb{E}b8$ $\mathbb{W}e8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{W}f7?!$ 5. $\mathbb{E}b7!$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{E}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 7. $\mathbb{E}xf8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8\pm$

See Ex.17-4.

Ex. 17-4

U.Andersson – W.Browne

Wijk aan Zee 1983

1. $\mathbb{E}e1!$

(2 points)

The exchange of rooks removes any last dream of counterplay for Black.

1. $\mathbb{E}c2?$ would not be so good: 1... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ $\mathbb{E}b7$ and the white knight is badly placed on a6.

If 1. $\mathbb{E}b1$ (1 point) 1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2.f3? (to prevent ... $\mathbb{E}e4$), then 2...g5 3. $\mathbb{E}b6$ g4±.

1... $\mathbb{E}xe1\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 4.f4 h5?! 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6.h3 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 8.g4 $\mathbb{H}xg4$ 9. $\mathbb{H}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 10.a4 $\mathbb{Q}a1$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 12.f5! $\mathbb{G}xf5\#$ 13. $\mathbb{G}xf5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ d5†

Or 14... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xd6\#+-$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ a5 19. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}b7$

1-0

Solutions

Ex. 17-5

V.Smyslov – M.Tal

Moscow 1964

1...gxsf5!

(2 points)

Control of the c4-square is important, to prevent the white knight reaching the ideal square on e5, as would happen after 1...Qxf5?!, 2.Qf2 Qg4 3.Qc4.

2.Qe1 Qh5 3.Qc4 Qxc4 4.bxc4 Qe8+ 5.Qf2 Qxel 6.Qxe1?!

Better is 6.Qxe1 followed by Qf3.

6...Qf8 7.Qd2 Qe7 8.Qe1 a6 9.a4+

See Ex. 17-6.

Ex. 17-6

V.Smyslov – M.Tal

Moscow 1964

1...a5!

(3 points)

Fixing the weakness on a4.

The obvious 1...Qe8 is not so good, on account of 2.a5! and if 2...bxa5, then 3.Qf3! followed by Qe5=. Black cannot breach this fortress!

(another 1 point for this variation)

2.Qc2 Qe8 3.Qb3 Qc6! 4.Qa3 Qf6 5.Qb3

In this minor piece ending, the long-legged black bishop is more useful than the white knight.

5...Qg6 6.Qa3 Qh5 7.h3 Qg6 8.Qb3 Qg7

9.Qa3 Qf6 10.Qb3 Qe8!

The bishop wants to get to d1.

11.Qg2

11.Qf3 Qh5 12.Qe5 Qd1† (the bishop reaches d1 with tempo) 13.Qa3 Qe6 14.Qc6 Qc2 15.Qe5 h6 16.g4 Qd1 and White is in zugzwang (Tal): 17.gxf5† Qxf5 18.Qd7 Qxf4 19.Qxb6 Qe3+.

11...Qh5 12.Qc2 Qe2 13.Qe1 Qf1 14.Qf3

After 14.h4 the bishop would return to c6, after which the black king could penetrate the kingside via h5-g4: 14...Qe2 15.Qd2 Qh5

16.Qc2 Qe8 17.Qb3 Qc6+–

14...Qxh3+–

But not 14...h6? because of 15.h4=.

The remaining moves of this exciting game follow without comments.

15.Qg5 Qg2 16.Qxh7† Qg7 17.Qg5 Qg6
 18.Qd2 Qc6 19.Qc1 Qg2 20.Qd2 Qh5
 21.Qe6 Qg4 22.Qc7 Qc6 23.Qd5 Qxg3
 24.Qe7 Qd7 25.Qd5 Qxa4 26.Qxb6
 Qe8 27.Qd5 Qf3 28.Qc7 Qc6 29.Qe6
 a4 30.Qxc5 a3 31.Qb3 a2 32.Qc1 Qxf4
 33.Qb2 Qe3 34.Qa5 Qe8 35.c5 f4 36.c6
 Qxc6 37.Qxc6 f3 38.Qe5 f2

0–1

Ex. 17-7

M.Botvinnik – V.Smyslov

World Ch(12), Moscow 1954

1.f5!

(2 points)

White plays very energetically. Neither 1.Qc1? nor 1.Qg1 would be so strong, on account of 1...Qxa4.

1...Qc5 2.Qg5

(another 1 point)

2...Qd7

If 2...f6, then 3.Qg2 fxe5 4.b4! Qd3 5.f6+–.

3.Qg1 f6 4.exf6 Qe4+–

See Ex. 17-8.

Ex. 17-8

M.Botvinnik – V.Smyslov

World Ch(12), Moscow 1954

1.f7†!

(1 point)

Nothing is achieved by 1.Qf4 Qxf6 2.Qb8† Qh7=.

1...Qxf7

1...Qxf7 clearly loses after 2.Qxg7† Qe8 3.Qh8† Qe7 4.Qg7† Qd6 5.Qg6†.

2.Qd8† Qh7 3.Qxd5 Qf2† 4.Qg2

(another 1 point)

Solutions

4... $\mathbb{W}f6$

4... $\mathbb{W}c2$ 5. $\mathbb{W}h4!+-$
 5. $\mathbb{W}xf6$ $\mathbb{B}xf6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{B}xf5!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{B}f4$
 8. $\mathbb{B}g4$
 1-0

Ex. 17-9

A.Alekhine – S.Tartakower

Folkestone Olympiad 1933

1... $\mathbb{Q}e3!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{B}xc4?$ would be bad: 2. $bxc4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 3. $\mathbb{B}d4$
 Nor would 1... $\mathbb{B}b5$ be logical; White can reply 2. $\mathbb{B}c6$.

2. $\mathbb{B}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ 3. $\mathbb{B}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$
 $\mathbb{Q}d4$

(another 1 point)

6. $\mathbb{B}c4$ $\mathbb{B}xd6!+$

Ex. 17-10

M.Euwe – S.Reshevsky

World Ch, The Hague/Moscow 1948

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$

(1 point)

This is clearly stronger than 1...e4. Black is fighting for an advantage. The white bishop will be restricted by the black pawns.

2. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $f6\bar{=}$

(1 point)

Protecting the e5-pawn.

3.b5 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{B}fd1$ $\mathbb{B}d6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 6. $\mathbb{B}dc1$
 $c5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c3$

Or 7. $bxc6$ $\mathbb{B}xc6\bar{=}$.

7... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$

Transforming the advantage. Black now has an advantage in space and controls the only open file.

8. $\mathbb{B}xc3$ e4 9. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ f5 11. $\mathbb{Q}e1$
 $\mathbb{B}ad8\bar{=}$

Ex. 17-11

G.Pfeiffer – C.Guimard

Dubrovnik Olympiad 1950

1.b3!

(2 points)

Extending the operational field of the king.

1... $axb3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$

White now plans $\mathbb{Q}b4$ followed by a4-a5.

2... $\mathbb{Q}f7$

If 2...h5, then 3. $h4!+-$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b5$
 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 7.a4 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8.a5 $bxa5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$
 10. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ h5

10... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}g8!+-$

11. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$

12... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}a6\#$

13. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$
 16.h3 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 18.h4! $\mathbb{Q}f7$

18... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}g5!+-$

19. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g6!+-$

See Ex. 17-12.

Ex. 17-12

G.Pfeiffer – C.Guimard

Dubrovnik Olympiad 1950

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$

(1 point)

This obvious sacrifice quickly decides the game.

1... $exd5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$

2... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3.e6! $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5!+-$

3.e6 $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 5.d5 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 6.d6 $\mathbb{Q}c2$
 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 8.e7! $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 9.d7! $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f7$
 1-0

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 26

- **21** points and above ➤ **Excellent**
- **17** points and above ➤ **Good**
- **13** points ➤ **Pass mark**

If you scored less than 13 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Opening repertoire
- ✓ White repertoire with 1.d4
- ✓ The Torre Attack

Closed openings

It is important for club players to build up a suitable opening repertoire. This repertoire should emphasize the strengths of the player and, if possible, disguise his weaknesses.

However, a club player generally does not have a lot of time to deal with numerous specific variations. So he should choose his openings cleverly and perhaps avoid some modern variations for which too much theory has to be learned.

The following examples are only suggestions, You can experiment with these openings, but you do not have to play them if you do not like the type of game they produce.

One of the advantages of this repertoire for White with 1.d4 is the fact that the position is not opened up too soon and that you have the time to mobilize your main forces. In addition, we also have the opportunity to choose some openings which are based less on specific variations and more on strategic ideas.

Torre Attack (1.d4, 2.♘f3, 3.♗g5)

The Torre Attack is a good example of an opening system. White employs this set-up against a lot of different defences. In my experience, the Torre Attack is best against the Nimzo-Indian and Queen's Indian defences. The system is solid and playable against the King's Indian Defence, but not particularly aggressive. In that case I recommend systems with e2-e4.

Usually in the Torre Attack, White tries to support his central d4-pawn.

He later plays e3, c3 and develops his queen's knight to d2. Unlike the Colle-Zukertort Opening (3.e3), the dark-squared bishop is positioned outside the pawn chain, which practically eliminates the danger of being left with a bad bishop.

In the following sample games and in the test you will find some of the important ideas behind this opening.

The Torre Attack is of course also related to the Trompovsky Opening (2.♗g5). So you can play both systems turn about or even combine them.

A.Yusupov – Konstantinov

Riga 1977

This old game illustrates the typical attacking ideas for White.

1.d4 ♜f6 2.♘f3 e6 3.♗g5 c5 4.e3 cxd4

4...b6? is a known mistake, but one which we will not treat until Ex. 18-8.

5.exd4 d5?

Diagram 18-1

The combination of 4...cxd4 and 5...d5 is wrong! If Black wants to play ...d5 he should not exchange on d4 first. White is the only one to get any advantage, since he can more quickly make use of the semi-open e-file.

5...b6 would be a better move.

5...♝b6 is also interesting. However, White has at his disposal a typical pawn sacrifice: 6.♘bd2 ♛xb2 7.♗d3 and White has an initiative, Spassky – Osnos, USSR Ch, Leningrad 1963.

6.♘bd2 ♜e7

6...b6 is met by 7.c3 (7.♗d3 ♜a6), and now 7...♜a6? would lose to 8.♗xa6 ♜xa6 9.♛a4†.

7.♗d3 ♜d7

Black should prefer either 7...♝c6 or 7...0–0.

8.0–0 0–0

If 8...♝b6, intending ...♝b5, then simply 9.♛e2.

9.c3

9.♛e2!?

9...♝c6

Better is 9...♝b6 10.♛e2 ♛xb2 11.♕ab1 ♛xc3 12.♕xb7.

10.♛e2

Diagram 18-2

White's strategy is simple: control the centre, **occupy e5 with the knight, protect the e4-square securely and then attack on the kingside**.

10...♞c8?!

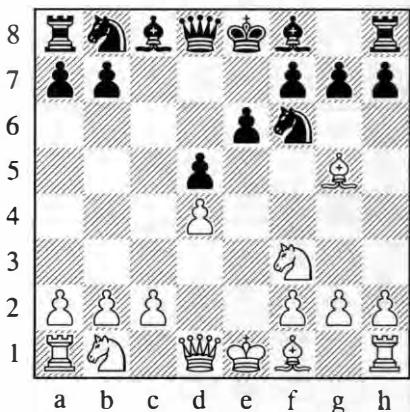
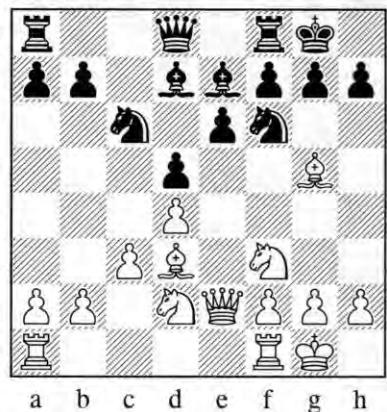
Better is 10...♝e8.

11.♘e5 ♜e8

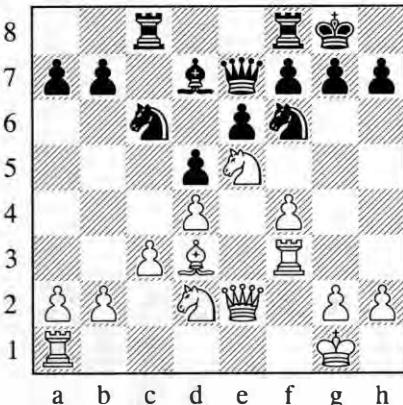
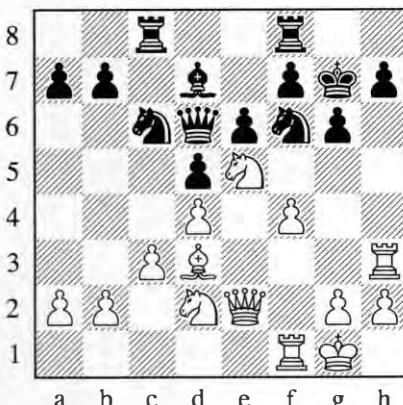
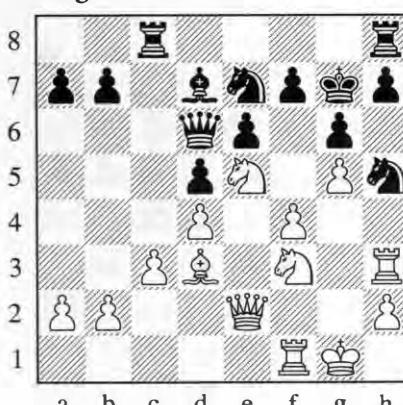
11...♞xe5 is followed by 12.dxe5 ♜e8 13.♗e3 ♜c5 14.♗b3 ♜xe3 15.♛xe3±.

12.♗xe7

Nor would 12.♗f4?! be bad, to keep more pieces on the board.

Diagram 18-1**Diagram 18-2**

Opening 3

Diagram 18-3**Diagram 18-4****Diagram 18-5****12...Nxe7**

Recapturing with the knight was better.

13.f4±

If Black now takes on e5, the f-file will be opened.

13...Qf6?!

Black is playing without a plan himself and he is not trying to hinder his opponent's plans either. Now the white attack on the kingside develops almost without let or hindrance. Black had to play 13...Qd6, intending ...f5.

14.Qf3**Diagram 18-3**

White commences the typical transfer of the rook to h3.

14...g6 15.Qaf1 Ng7 16.Qh3!?

16.Qg3?! with the idea of playing f5, is also possible.

16...Qd6**Diagram 18-4****17.g4**

Another typical attacking idea, which is justified by the numerous white forces assembled on the kingside. The pieces support the attack and at the same time protect their own king.

17...Nh7 18.Qd3 Nh8

After 18...Qfg8 White would have a nice way to win: 19.Qxd7 Qxd7 20.Qe5+ f6 21.Qg5! fxg5? 22.Qxh7+ Qf6 23.dxe5#

19.g5 Nh5?**Diagram 18-5**

Now White achieves what he wanted and opens lines on the kingside.

19...Qe8 20.Qg4± would have been slightly better.

20.Qxh5! gxh5 21.Qh4 Qg6

Or 21...Qe8 22.Qxh5 h6 23.f5 exf5 24.Qxf5 with a strong attack.

22.Qxh5 Qxe5 23.fxe5 Qf8

If 23...Qe7, then 24.Qf6+– threatens Qh6.

24.Qg4!

White prepares another breakthrough by g5-g6.

24...Qg8

24...Qg8 is met by 25.Qxh7+–.

After 24...Qe8 25.g6 hxg6 26.Qxg6 fxg6 27.Qxf8 Qxf8 28.Qxe6 Black loses too many pawns to be able to resist.

25.g6! hxg6 26.Qxg6 Qh6

26...fxg6 27.Qxf8#+

27.Qxf7# Qh8 28.Qg6# Qxg6 29.Qxg6 Wh6

30.Qf3

Two pawns down and with his king exposed, Black has no chance and he resigned. 30...Qg8 is simply answered by 31.Qh3#.

G.Kasparov – F.De la Fuente

Galicia simultaneous 1991

1.d4 Qf6 2.Qf3 e6 3.Qg5 d5 4.Qbd2 Qe7 5.e3 c5
6.c3 Qbd7 7.Qd3

Diagram 18-6

As you can see, even the strongest player in the world plays this variation. White develops the pieces according to the standard pattern and is ready to occupy e5.

7...b6

Black chooses a very popular and harmonious set-up.

7...Qc7 is met either by 8.Qf4 or by 8.Qc1, intending c3-c4.

8.Qe5?!

Kasparov improves on known theory. Normally here White first castles: 8.0-0 Qb7 9.Qe5 Qxe5 10.dxe5 Qd7 11.Qxe7 Qxe7 12.f4 f6 13.exf6 gxf6 14.e4 with very interesting play.

8...Qxe5 9.dxe5 Qd7 10.Qxe7 Qxe7 11.f4 Qb7

12.Qe2

White wants to prepare the move e3-e4.

12...f6 13.exf6 gxf6

13...Qxf6 14.Qb5# Qd7 15.Qf3 is good for White, since he possesses the excellent e5-square.

14.e4 0-0-0 15.exd5 Qxd5

Diagram 18-7

16.Qe4!

After the exchange of light-squared bishops Black is left without effective counterplay. White can make use of the weakening of the light squares around the black castled position in order to penetrate with the queen.

16...Qd6 17.0-0± Qc6

17...Qb8 would be better.

18.b4! Qhg8 19.b5 Qb7 20.c4 Qxe4 21.Qxe4#

Diagram 18-6

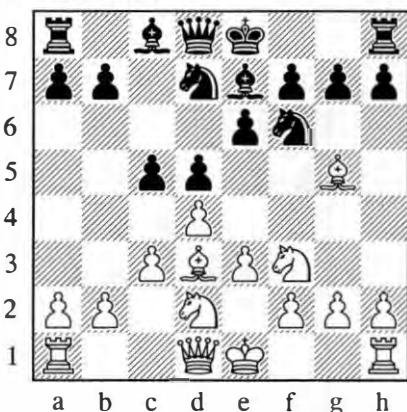


Diagram 18-7

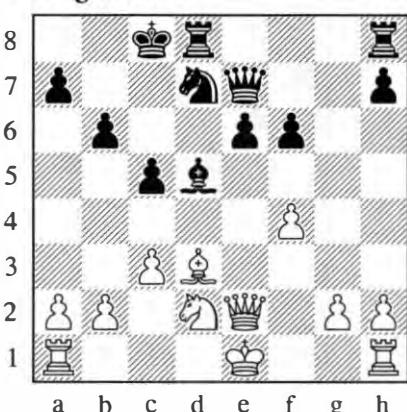


Diagram 18-8

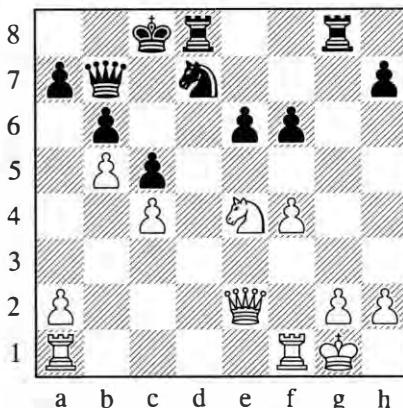


Diagram 18-8

In only a few moves White has strengthened his position on the queenside. Black gets no time to counter on the g-file.

21...♝b8 22.♜ad1 ♜g6 23.g3

23.♞d6 would be even stronger, but in simultaneous play Kasparov proceeds more cautiously than usual.

23...♝dg8 24.♝d3 f5 25.♞d6 ♜c7 26.♝fd1

Amongst other things, White is threatening simply to play a4-a5 on the queenside.

26...♛f6 27.♛xe6 ♜g4

Or 27...♛e4 28.♛e5+–.

28.♛xf5 ♜f6 29.♛e4 ♜d7 30.♛c6

30.♞f7 ♜xf7 31.♝d8† ♜c7 32.♛a8 leads directly to mate.

30...♜xc6 31.bxc6 a6 32.♝e1 ♜d8 33.c7†! ♜xc7 34.♝e8† ♜xe8 35.♝xe8 b5 36.♝d5 ♜c6 37.cxb5 axb5 38.♝dd8 ♜b6 39.♝b8† ♜a5 40.♝ec8

1-0

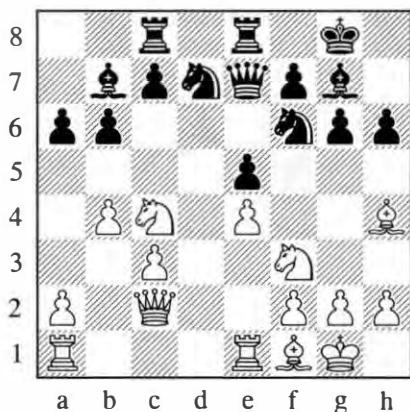
Naturally Kasparov's opponent did not play very strongly in this game, but it is very difficult to find a suitable antidote to the white plan.

For those players who prefer slightly more aggressive and less well known systems, I suggest the Barry Attack (1.d4 ♜f6 2.♝f3 g6 3.♞c3 d5 4.♝f4). This opening can be played against the King's Indian Defence, or against the Grünfeld Defence. In combination with the Veresov Opening (1.d4 d5 2.♞c3) you then have an almost complete repertoire with 1.d4.

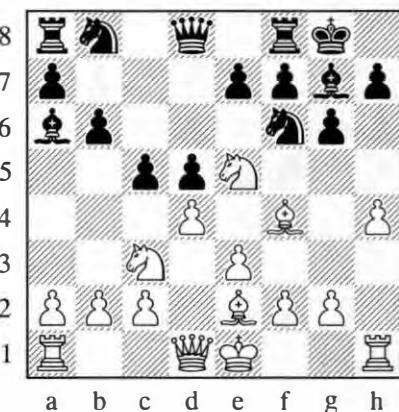
The strategic ideas of the Barry Attack and the Torre Attack are similar. White often takes advantage of the control of the centre and obtains an outpost on e5 for his knight. Unfortunately in one chapter we cannot discuss all the ideas of this opening, but in the test you will find some examples of the Barry Attack.

Exercises

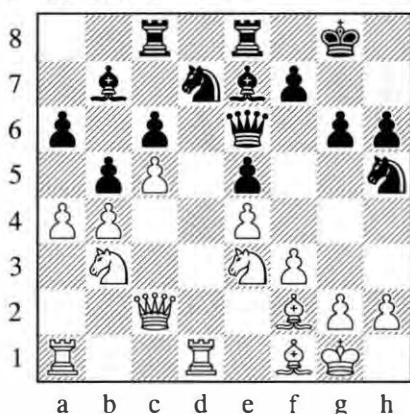
► Ex. 18-1 ◀ ★★ △



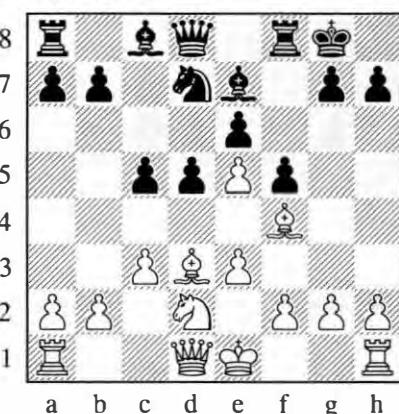
► Ex. 18-4 ◀ ★★ △



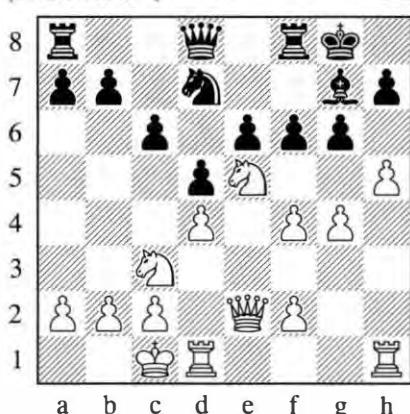
► Ex. 18-2 ◀ ★★ △



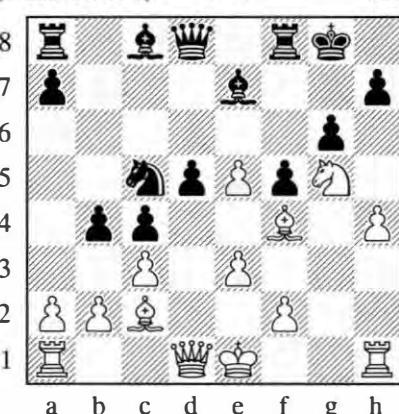
► Ex. 18-5 ◀ ★ △



► Ex. 18-3 ◀ ★ △

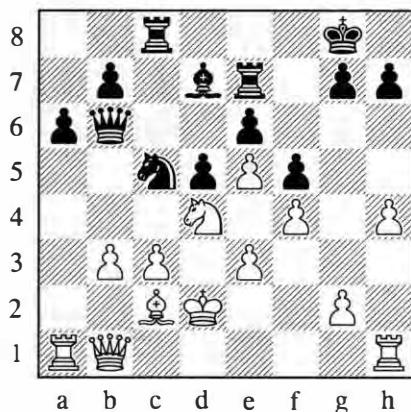


► Ex. 18-6 ◀ ★★ △

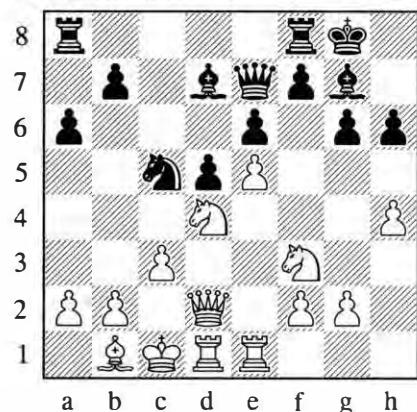


Exercises

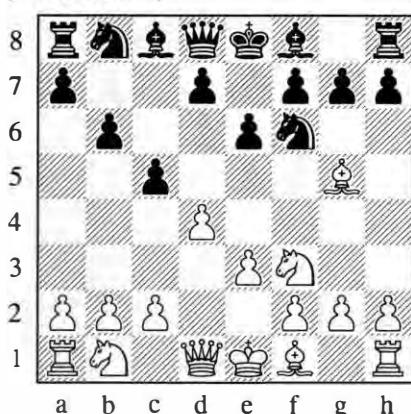
► Ex. 18-7 ◀ ★★



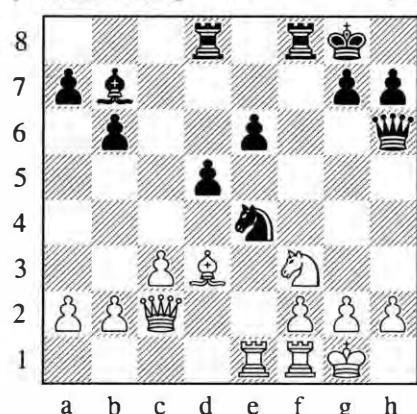
► Ex. 18-10 ◀ ★



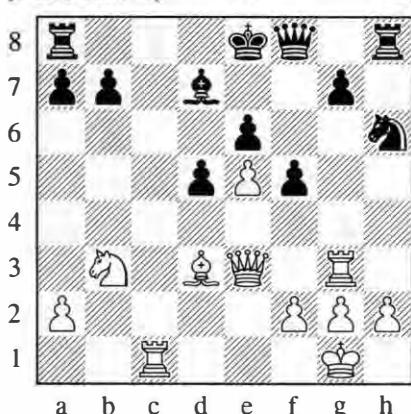
► Ex. 18-8 ◀ ★★★★



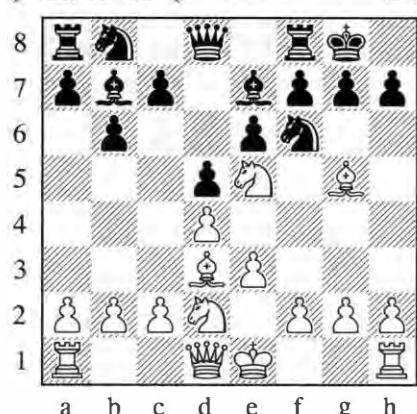
► Ex. 18-11 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 18-9 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 18-12 ◀ ★★



Solutions

Ex. 18-1

G.Kasparov – S.Martinovic

Baku 1980

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ g6 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$ d6
5.e4 0–0 6.c3 $\mathbb{Q}bd7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ e5 8.dxe5 dxe5
9.0–0 b6 10. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ h6 12. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$
13. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}fe8$ 14.b4!± a6 15. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}ac8$!?

Diagram Ex. 18-1

16.a4!±

(2 points)

A typical move, which gains even more space on the queenside.

16... $\mathbb{Q}ad1$ (1 point) is not so strong. Black can reply 16...b5 17. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$, intending to play ...c5 with counterplay.

16... $\mathbb{Q}e6$

If 16...c5, then 17.b5±.

17. $\mathbb{Q}fd2$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 18.f3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$!?

Better is 18... $\mathbb{Q}f8$.

19. $\mathbb{Q}f2$! $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}df6$?! 21.c4!± c6

22. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 23.c5 b5 24. $\mathbb{Q}ed1$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$

See Ex. 18-2.

Ex. 18-2

G.Kasparov – S.Martinovic

Baku 1980

25. $\mathbb{Q}c4$!

(2 points)

The knight is heading for d6.

Other good moves such as 25. $\mathbb{Q}a5$!? $\mathbb{Q}c7$ ± or 25. $\mathbb{Q}f5$!± earn 1 point.

25... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ +– $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 27.axb5 $\mathbb{Q}xb5$
28. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}bxh7$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}xa2$
31. $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$

31... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ is met by 32. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ +–.

32.c6 $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 34. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ † $\mathbb{Q}g7$
35. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 36. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 37. $\mathbb{Q}xb8$! $\mathbb{Q}xb8$
38. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ b4 39. $\mathbb{Q}c7$

1–0

Ex. 18-3

M.Hebden – L.Williams

British Ch, Swansea 1995

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ g6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5.e3
0–0 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ c6 9.h4
 $\mathbb{Q}bd7$ 10.0–0–0 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 11.g4 $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 12.exf4 e6
13.h5 f6?

Diagram Ex. 18-3

14. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$!

(1 point)

14... $\mathbb{Q}e8$

14... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ loses after 15. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ † $\mathbb{Q}h7$
16. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ † $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 17.f5† $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ † $\mathbb{Q}xg4$
19. $\mathbb{Q}dg1$ † $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ #.

15.h6

Or 15. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ +–.

15... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ f5 18.g5
 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}dh1$ $\mathbb{Q}ag8$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}e2$
 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}a3$! $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ a6 24. $\mathbb{Q}d6$
 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}g1$!? $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}f3$
 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$

1–0

Ex. 18-4

D.Pira – M.Hebden

Seville 1987

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ g6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5.e3
0–0 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ c5 7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ b6?! (better is 7... $\mathbb{Q}c6$)
8.h4 $\mathbb{Q}a6$

Diagram Ex. 18-4

White does not want to exchange his strong light-squared bishop. Since he also does not want to castle short after playing h2-h4, he can allow himself the following move!

9. $\mathbb{Q}f3$?

(2 points)

9... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 10.h5 $\mathbb{Q}bd7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g4$
 $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h3$

14. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$? would also be interesting:
14... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ † $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ † $\mathbb{Q}f7$
17.0–0–0 gives White a powerful attack.

14... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 16.exf4 cxd4 17. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ ±

Solutions

Ex. 18-5

T.Petrosian – V.Liublinsky

USSR Ch, Moscow 1949

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ c5 4.e3 $\mathbb{Q}e7$
 5. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$ d5 6.c3 $\mathbb{Q}bd7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 0–0?! 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$
 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ (8... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 9.h4!) 9.dxe5 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4?$
 (10. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 11.f4 f6 12.exf6 $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$?
 e5 14. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$) 10...f5 (10...f6?! 11. $\mathbb{W}h5$ g6?!
 [11...f5±] 12. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ hxg6 13. $\mathbb{W}xg6$! $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 14.h4
 fxg6 15. $\mathbb{W}h5$! $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ ±)

Diagram Ex. 18-5

11.h4!

(1 point)

A natural attacking move.

11...c4 12. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ b5

For 12... $\mathbb{Q}c5$, see Petrosian – Bannik below.

13. $\mathbb{Q}f3$

13.g4?!

13... $\mathbb{Q}c5$

13...b4 is followed by 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ (14... $\mathbb{Q}c5?$ 15. $\mathbb{W}h5$ h6 16. $\mathbb{W}g6$ +–) 15.hxg5 and if 15... $\mathbb{W}e7$? then 16. $\mathbb{E}xh7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 17. $\mathbb{W}h5$! $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 18.g6 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 19.exf6 gxf6 20. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 21. $\mathbb{W}h7$!+–.

14.g4?!

14. $\mathbb{Q}d4$? would be a solid alternative.

14...b4 15.gxf5

15.cxb4?! does not promise much:
 15... $\mathbb{Q}d3$! 16. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$! 17. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ cxd3
 18. $\mathbb{W}xd3$ fxe4 (or 18...a5?!)

15. $\mathbb{Q}d4$? was again worth considering.

15...exf5 16. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ g6?

White has been taking risks. The principled continuation would now have been 16...h6!
 17. $\mathbb{W}h5$ $\mathbb{W}b6$! (or 17... $\mathbb{W}e8$?). Instead of that,
 Black just weakens his position.

See Ex. 18-6.

Ex. 18-6

T.Petrosian – V.Liublinsky

USSR Ch, Moscow 1949

17.h5!

(2 points)

17... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ †

17... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ is bad, due to 18. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{W}xg5$
 19. $\mathbb{W}xd5$! $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 20. $\mathbb{W}xc5$ +–.

18. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ cxd3 19.hxg6 hxg6

19... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ is met by 20. $\mathbb{E}xh7$!+– (but not
 20. $\mathbb{W}h5$? h6!).

20. $\mathbb{W}xd3$ bxc3 21.bxc3 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$
 $\mathbb{W}a5$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 24. $\mathbb{W}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 25.e6† $\mathbb{E}xe6$
 26. $\mathbb{Q}d8$

The prosaic 26. $\mathbb{E}h7$ † also wins quickly.

1–0

Ex. 18-7

T.Petrosian – A.Bannik

USSR 1951

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ c5 4.e3 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$
 d5 6.c3 $\mathbb{Q}bd7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 0–0?! 8. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$
 9.dxe5 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ f5 11.h4! c4 12. $\mathbb{Q}c2$
 $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (13.g4 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ =) 13... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}d4$
 (14. $\mathbb{Q}g5$?!) 14... $\mathbb{W}b6$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}g5$?! (15. $\mathbb{E}b1$?=)
 15... $\mathbb{E}f7$? (15... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$! is correct: 16.hxg5 $\mathbb{W}xb2$
 17. $\mathbb{E}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 18. $\mathbb{W}h5$! $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 19.g6 $\mathbb{W}xa1$ †
 20. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{E}f7$!+– and the white attack has been
 thwarted) 16. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 17. $\mathbb{W}b1$! $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 18.b3
 cxb3 19.axb3 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 20.f4!± $\mathbb{Q}c8$ (20...h5?!)
 21. $\mathbb{Q}d2$! a6

Diagram Ex. 18-7

22.g4!

(2 points)

A powerful attacking move, which forces the
 opponent to exchange off his strong knight.

22... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ † 23. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ fxe4

The white knight is stronger than the
 opposing bishop.

24. $\mathbb{W}a2$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 25. $\mathbb{E}hc1$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 26. $\mathbb{W}a5$ $\mathbb{W}d7$?

26... $\mathbb{W}xa5$ had to be played: 27. $\mathbb{E}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ ±

27. $\mathbb{W}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 28. $\mathbb{E}gl$!

Of course not 28.f5? exf5 29.e6 $\mathbb{W}c7$ with
 counterplay.

28... $\mathbb{W}e8$ 29. $\mathbb{E}ac1$! $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 30.h5 $\mathbb{W}d7$ 31. $\mathbb{E}h1$

h6? 32. $\mathbb{E}h2$ $\mathbb{E}ee8$ 33. $\mathbb{E}g1$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 34. $\mathbb{W}d6$
 $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 35.exd6 $\mathbb{E}cd8$ 36.g5 e5 37.fxe5 $\mathbb{E}xe5$
 38.gxh6 gxh6 39. $\mathbb{E}g6$ $\mathbb{E}g5$ 40. $\mathbb{E}xh6$! $\mathbb{Q}g7$
 41. $\mathbb{E}e6$!+–

Solutions

Ex. 18-8

T.Petrosian – J.Kozma

Munich Olympiad 1958

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ c5 4.e3 b6?!

Diagram Ex. 18-8

5.d5!

(3 points)

White takes the chance to strengthen his position in the centre.

5... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 9. $\mathbb{W}xd5\pm$

(another 1 point)

9... $\mathbb{Q}c6$

If 9... $\mathbb{W}xb2?$ then 10. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{W}b4\uparrow$ 11.c3! $\mathbb{W}xc3\uparrow$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{W}c1\uparrow$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e2+-$ (Petrosian).

10. $\mathbb{Q}c4$

Or 10.0–0–0±.

10... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 11.0–0–0

11.0–0?±

11... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 0–0 13.c3

13. $\mathbb{Q}hd1$ b5 would not be so clear.

13... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}hd1$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$

16. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ d6 17. $\mathbb{Q}d2$

After 17. $\mathbb{Q}g5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ f5 the white rook on g5 is misplaced.

17...f5 18.f4 g6 19.g3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 20.e4 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$

21. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$

22... $\mathbb{Q}c4\uparrow$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ d5 24. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$

25. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6\pm$

23.b3 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}f2$

Intending 26. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}e4+-$.

25...h5

25... $\mathbb{Q}f8\uparrow$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}de8\pm$

26. $\mathbb{Q}d2\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$

29. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7\uparrow$

29...c4! would be more resilient: 30.bxc4 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}d4\uparrow$ (Petrosian)

30. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5\uparrow$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}xd5+-$ $\mathbb{Q}de8$ 32. $\mathbb{Q}el$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ b5 34.h3 a5 35.g4 $\mathbb{Q}hg4\uparrow$ 36. $\mathbb{Q}hg4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 37.f5 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 38. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 39. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f8\uparrow$

39... $\mathbb{Q}xf5\pm$

40. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 41. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\uparrow$

1–0

Ex. 18-9

B.Spassky – V.Osnos

USSR Ch, Leningrad 1963

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ c5 4.e3 b6?!

$\mathbb{W}xb2$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ cxd4 (after 6... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7.0–0 cxd4 8. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{W}xa2$ 9.exd4 White has compensation for the pawns) 7.exd4 $\mathbb{W}c3$ 8.0–0 d5 9. $\mathbb{Q}el$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (9... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ [intending 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ and 12.c4] 10... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e4\uparrow$ with a dangerous attack) 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 12.c3 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ (12...0–0? runs into 13. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 14... $\mathbb{Q}xh7\uparrow$; Black could try 12... $\mathbb{Q}d7\uparrow$ followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ and ...0–0–0) 13.dxe5 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 15. $\mathbb{W}g4$ gives White an attack – Bondarevsky) 14. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ h6 (14... $\mathbb{Q}d7\uparrow$) 15. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ (16...0–0–0? 17.a4) 17. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ hxg5 18. $\mathbb{W}g4$ $\mathbb{W}xc3$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 20. $\mathbb{W}xg5$ $\mathbb{W}b4$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{W}f8$ (21... $\mathbb{W}e7$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}e3$, followed by $\mathbb{Q}c1$; 21...g6 22. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{W}f8$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}c1$) 22. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ f6 (22... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}xc8\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}b5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}c3\uparrow$) 23. $\mathbb{W}e3$ f5

Diagram Ex. 18-9

24. $\mathbb{Q}c5\uparrow$

(1 point)

White attacks very energetically.

24...f4 25. $\mathbb{Q}g6\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 26. $\mathbb{W}a3\uparrow$

(another 1 point)

Black resigned, since he has no satisfactory defence against $\mathbb{Q}xb7\#$.

Ex. 18-10

A.Yusupov – K.Bischoff

Munich 1990

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ h6 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 5.e4 d6 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7\uparrow$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2\uparrow$ a6 8.0–0–0 $\mathbb{W}e7$ (8...c5?! 9.e5) 9. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ g6 (9...c5 10.dxc5 gives White some pressure down the d-file) 10. $\mathbb{Q}hel$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 11.h4 0–0 (11...c5?! 12.e5 d5 13.dxc5 $\mathbb{Q}xc5\pm$) 12.e5 d5 13. $\mathbb{Q}e2\pm$ c5 14.c3 cxd4 15. $\mathbb{Q}exd4\uparrow$ (after 15.cxd4 $\mathbb{Q}b6\uparrow$ Black can seek counterplay with ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ -b5) 15... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Solutions

Diagram Ex. 18-10

17.h5??

(1 point)

White weakens his opponent's castled position with this move.

17.♕e3 ♜fc8 18.h5 would be less accurate, since Black then has the option of 18...♝e8.

17...g5 18.♕e3

18.♕h2 f5!

18...♜fc8?!

18...g4? would be better, obtaining counterplay after 19.♕h2 ♜g5, e.g. 20.♕xg4? ♜xg4 21.♗g3 ♜xh5 22.♗f4 ♜h8 23.♗h3 ♜xe5 24.♗xh6† ♜g8 25.♗h7†=.

19.♕h2

Next will come ♜g4. White is now clearly better and there is almost nothing to stop his kingside attack.

Ex. 18-11

A.Yusupov – S.Hmadi

Tunis izt 1985

1.d4 ♜f6 2.♘f3 e6 3.♗g5 c5 4.e3 ♜e7 5.c3 b6 6.♘d3 ♜b7 7.0–0 ♜c6 8.♘bd2 0–0 9.e4 (Other possibilities are 9.♗e1, 9.♗e2 or 9.a3) 9...cxd4 10.♘xd4 (Black can meet 10.cxd4 with 10...♘b4= Petrosian, or 10...h6! 11.♗h4 ♜h5= Adorjan) 10...d5 (after 10...♘e5 there follows 11.♗c2 d5 12.f4± when Black must avoid 12...♝eg4 13.e5 ♜e3 14.exf6!±) 11.♘xc6 ♜xc6 12.e5 ♜e4 13.♗xe7 ♜xe7 14.♘f3 f6 15.♗e2 ♜b7 16.exf6 ♜xf6 17.♗ael ♜ad8 18.♗c2 ♜h6

Diagram Ex. 18-11

19.♗e3?!

(2 points)

White strengthens the position of the knight on f3 and prepares for operations down the e-file.

19...♝f4 20.♗e2 ♜h5

20...♝df8 is met by 21.♗xe4±.

21.♘d4 ♜xe2 22.♗xe2 ♜f6 23.♗fe1
e5? 24.♘b3 a5 25.f3 a4 26.♘c1 ♜d6
27.♗xe5+–

White has an extra pawn and the better position.

Ex. 18-12

J.Timman – E.Geller

Linares 1983

1.♘f3 ♜f6 2.d4 d5 3.♗g5 e6 4.♘bd2 ♜e7 5.e3 0–0? (5...♘bd7) 6.♘d3 b6 7.♗e5 ♜b7

Diagram Ex. 18-12

8.♗xf6!±

(2 points)

An interesting idea, which also belongs in our positional arsenal. Before playing f4, White swaps off the f6-knight, so that it can't occupy the e4-square.

8.f4 (1 point) is not so accurate, due to 8...♘e4=. Also 1 point for the moves 8.♗f3 and 8.0–0.

8...♝xf6 9.f4 ♜xe5! 10.fxе5 ♜h4† 11.g3 ♜h6 12.♗e2 ♘c6 13.0–0 ♘b4 14.♗f4!
♘xd3 15.♗xd3 a5 16.♘f3 ♜a6 17.♗c3 ♜e2

17...c5 18.dxc5 ♜fc8 19.c6±

18.♗c6 ♜h5 19.♗g2 ♜ae8 20.♗e1 ♜a6
21.♗g4 ♜g6 22.♗h1

22.♗f2 f6!

22...♗e7 23.g5 ♜h5 24.♗g2 ♜b8 25.♗f2
♗g6 26.♗f6 ♜e4 27.♗f4 ♜g6 28.♗c1 ♜c8?
29.♗f6 ♜e4 30.g6!+– ♜f8

30...fxg6 31.♗f4+– or 30...gxg6 31.exf6
♗ee8 32.gxf7† ♜xf7 33.♗g5†+– (Timman).

31.♗f4 fxg6

31...♗xg6 32.♗g1 ♜h5 33.♗h4 ♜f5

34.♗g5+– (Timman)

32.♗xe4 dxе4 33.♗xe4 c5

33.♗c4 34.♗g4 h5 35.♗xg6 ♜ef7
36.♗xf7† ♜xf7 37.♗g3+– (Timman)

34.c4

1–0

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 23

- 19 points and above ➤ Excellent
- 15 points and above ➤ Good
- 11 points ➤ Pass mark

If you scored less than 11 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Reasons for clearing
- ✓ Clearing a square
- ✓ Clearing a file
- ✓ Clearing a diagonal

Diagram 19-1



Diagram 19-2



Line clearing

It is not only our opponent's pieces which can cause us problems during a game – sometimes our own pieces get in our way. Then the only thing which will help is a clearing operation. We try to get the offending piece out of the way, if possible with tempo, in order to make use of an important square, rank, file or diagonal with our other forces. You have already come across some examples of clearing combinations. Of course, clearing is employed in conjunction with other tactical ideas. For example, we have already seen a lot of ideas involving clearing when discussing such subjects as the discovered attack or combinations along a rank or file.

Here are some more typical examples.

Diagram 19-1

N.N. – Mason

USA 1848

1... $\mathbb{Q}b5!$

Black clears the 8th rank for the queen, in order to execute a well-known mating combination (Damiano's mate).

2.axb5 $\mathbb{Q}hg3\#$! 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3\#$ 4.hxg3 $hxg3\#$
5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$! 6.bxc5 $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$!

Of course, this combination is not just a clearing one, but also a combination involving decoying.

7. $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$! 9. $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5\#$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$

Diagram 19-2

G.Lisitsin – E.Zagoriansky

Moscow 1936

White needs the g7-square for the queen. So there follows:

1. $\mathbb{Q}h7\#$!

With mate next move.

1–0

Diagram 19-3**E.Bogoljubow – J.Capablanca**

Bad Kissingen 1928

Capablanca prepares a clearing combination.

1...e5!

The simplest route to victory. Now when Black moves the e4-knight, he will be threatening mate by means of ...e5–e4.

2.Qa1

2.dxe5 loses to 2...Qc4 followed by ...Qc5#.

2...Qb6c4

This is even stronger than 2...Qf2?? 3.Qxf2 e4† 4.Qxe4 dxe4†–+.

3.Qa5 Qc5†!

And the black e-pawn will deliver mate.

0–1**Clearing a square****Diagram 19-4****A.Alekhine – A.Rubinstein**

Karlsbad 1923

White clears the e4-square and at the same time attacks the f7-pawn. Thus the white queen gets the chance to reach the kingside quickly.

1.Qg6!! W e5

Now White wins material.

But 1...fxg6 loses after 2.We4. For example, 2...Qxb4 3.Wh4† Qg8 4.Wh7† Qf8 5.Wh8† Qe7 6.Wxg7† Qe8 7.Wg8† Qf8 8.Wxg6† Qe7 9.Wxe6#.

1...Qb7 can be met by either 2.Wc4+– or 2.Qxf7† Wxf7 3.Wxe6+–.

2.Qxf7† Wxf7 3.Qxf7 Wf5 4.Qfd1+– Wxd1† 5.Qxd1 Wxf7 6.Wxc8 Qh7 7.Wxa6 Wf3 8.Wd3†

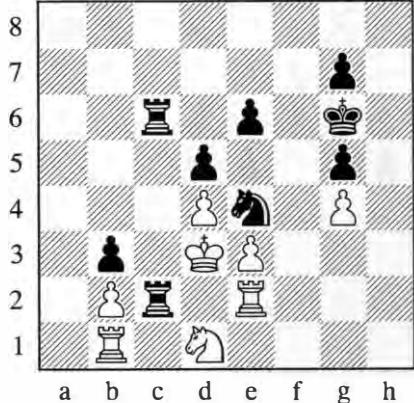
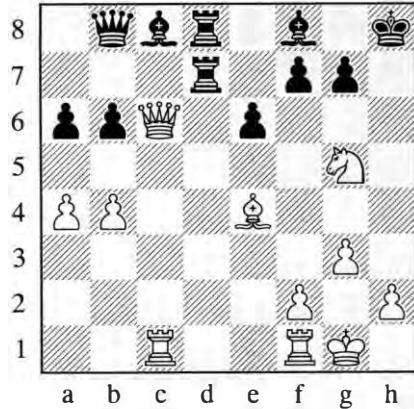
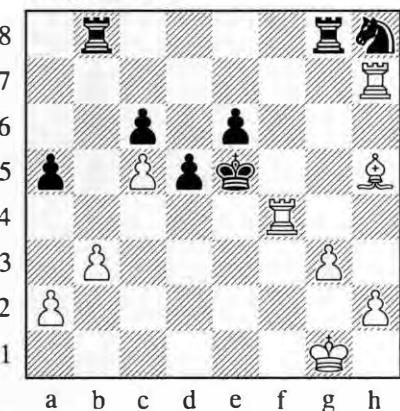
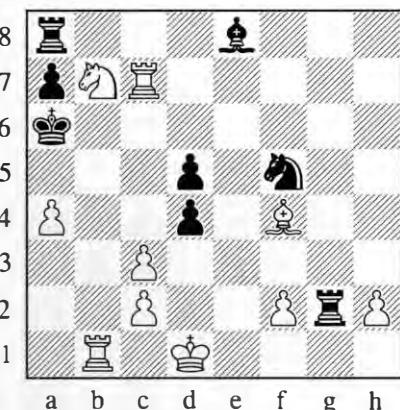
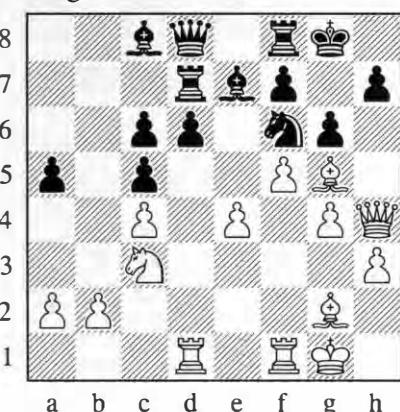
1–0**Diagram 19-3****Diagram 19-4**

Diagram 19-5**Diagram 19-6****Diagram 19-7****Diagram 19-5****Shadurskis – Patek**

Correspondence game 1966

White clears the h5-square for the rook to create a mating threat.

1. $\mathbb{R}g6!$

Black resigned, since the only way to prevent mate ($1... \mathbb{Q}f8$) involves a great loss of material.

Diagram 19-6**B.Ivkov – L.Portisch**

Bled 1961

White clears the c7-square for the bishop and delivers mate in three moves.

1. $\mathbb{B}c6\#!$

Black resigned, in view of $1... \mathbb{Q}xc6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$.

The clearing of a square is often achieved by a pawn move.

Diagram 19-7**D.Bronstein – A.Vajda**

Budapest 1949

1. $e5!$

Opening the d-file and clearing the e4-square for the knight.

1... $dxe5$ 2. $\mathbb{B}xd7$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$

$3... \mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $f x g6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ leaves Black with no hope.

4. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $g5$

Nor does this trick help Black.

5. $\mathbb{Q}xd8+$ $g x h4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$

Or 6... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 7. $\mathbb{B}d1+-$.

7. $\mathbb{B}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 8. $\mathbb{B}xd7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}e4$

1–0

Diagram 19-8

V.Smyslov – L.Szabo

Hastings 1954

1.c6!

The double threat of a fork with $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ as well as the advance c6-c7 is, of course, too much for Black.

1...exf4†1...bxc6 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ –**2. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ bxc6**2... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ is simply met by 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ –.

3. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ cxb5 5.h4 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$
7. $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$ – b4 8.axb4 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$

Black resigned. 9... $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ is followed by 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$ and then $\mathbb{Q}xa7$.

Clearing a file

Diagram 19-9

P.Ostermeyer – S.Hamann

Reykjavik 1975

White sacrifices his pawns, in order to open files against the black king.

1.h4 $\mathbb{Q}xh4$

Otherwise White will play g4-g5.

2.f6! $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 3.g5! $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 3...hxg5 4. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ **4. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{W}xg5$** 4...hxg5 5. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ **5. $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$**

Diagram 19-10

H.Westerinen – B.Larsen

Havana 1967

1... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$!

Black decisively clears the d-file for the rook.

2.gxf3 $\mathbb{R}d5\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{R}xe1\#$

Diagram 19-8

1.c6!

The double threat of a fork with $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ as well as the advance c6-c7 is, of course, too much for Black.

1...exf4†1...bxc6 2. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ –**2. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ bxc6**2... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ is simply met by 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ –.

3. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ cxb5 5.h4 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$
7. $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$ – b4 8.axb4 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$

Black resigned. 9... $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ is followed by 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$ and then $\mathbb{Q}xa7$.

Diagram 19-8

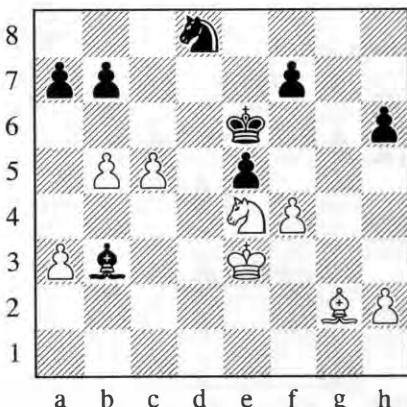


Diagram 19-9

P.Ostermeyer – S.Hamann

Reykjavik 1975

White sacrifices his pawns, in order to open files against the black king.

1.h4 $\mathbb{Q}xh4$

Otherwise White will play g4-g5.

2.f6! $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 3.g5! $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 3...hxg5 4. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ **4. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{W}xg5$** 4...hxg5 5. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ **5. $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$**

Diagram 19-9

1... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$!

Black decisively clears the d-file for the rook.

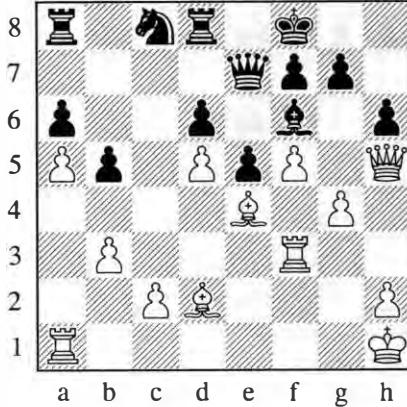
2.gxf3 $\mathbb{R}d5\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{R}xe1\#$ 

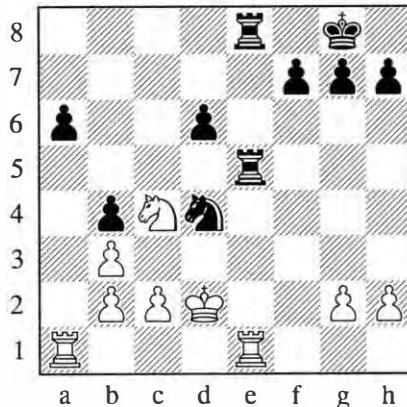
Diagram 19-10

H.Westerinen – B.Larsen

Havana 1967

1... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$!

Black decisively clears the d-file for the rook.

2.gxf3 $\mathbb{R}d5\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{R}xe1\#$ 

Clearing a diagonal

Diagram 19-11

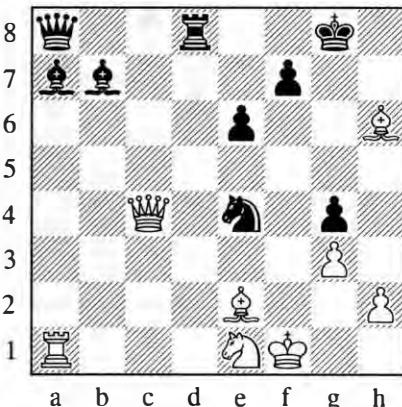


Diagram 19-11

F.Sideif-Sade – Z.Sturua

Borzhomi 1984

1... $\mathbb{Q}a6!$

Black opens the long diagonal a8-h1 for his strongest piece and prepares the further blow ... $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$. There is no sensible defence, so White resigned. A possible continuation would be 2. $\mathbb{W}xa6$ $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ $\mathbb{W}h1\#$.

Diagram 19-12

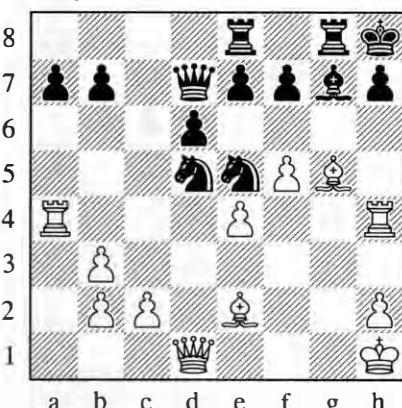


Diagram 19-12

P.Romanovsky – I.Rabinovich

Moscow 1935

Black has just taken the white knight on d5. Instead of recapturing the knight, White plays a clever intermediate move which clears the d1-h5 diagonal for his queen.

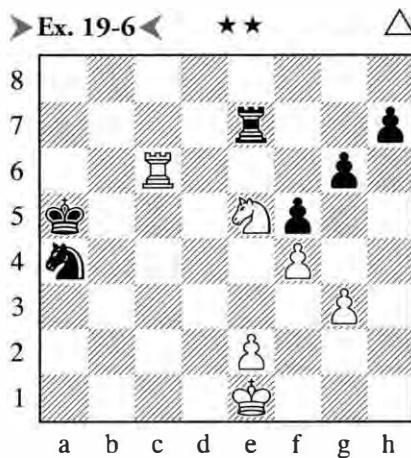
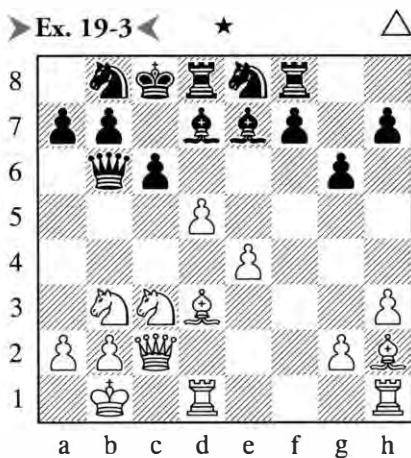
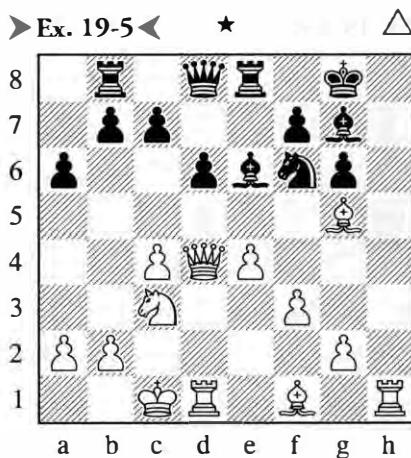
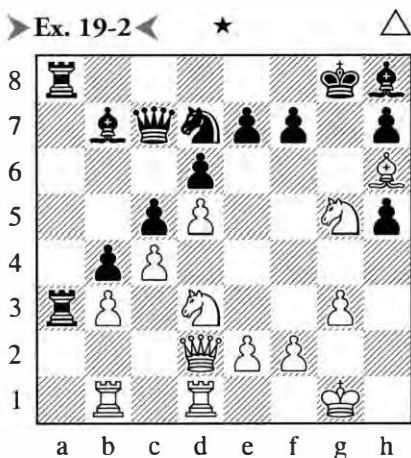
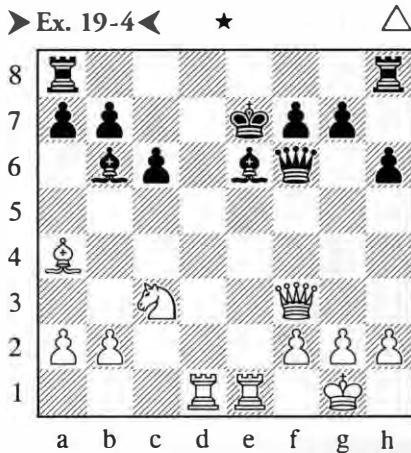
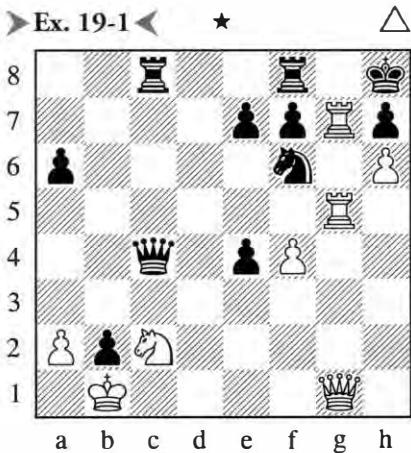
1. $\mathbb{Q}b5!!$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$

It is not possible to meet the threat of $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ without loss of material. 1... $\mathbb{W}xb5$ loses after 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xh6\#$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ would also be good.2... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 3. $\mathbb{exd}5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 3... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe8+-$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 8. $\mathbb{W}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 9.f6!

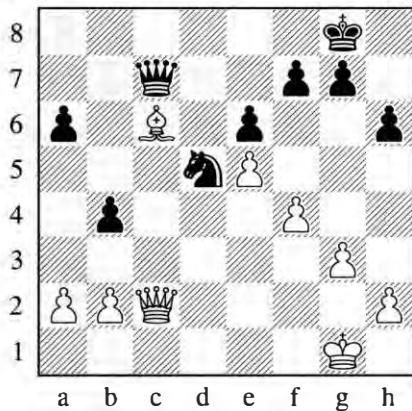
1–0

Exercises

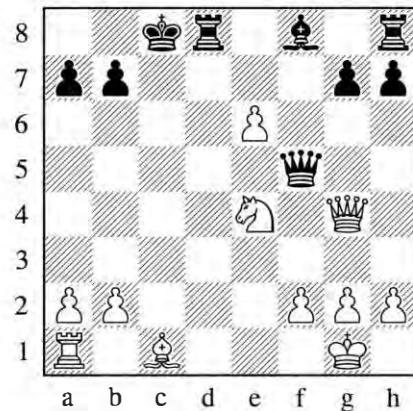


Exercises

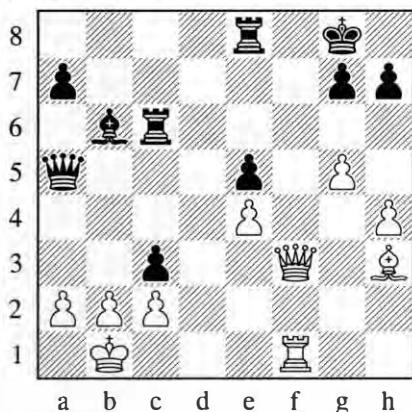
► Ex. 19-7 ◀ ★



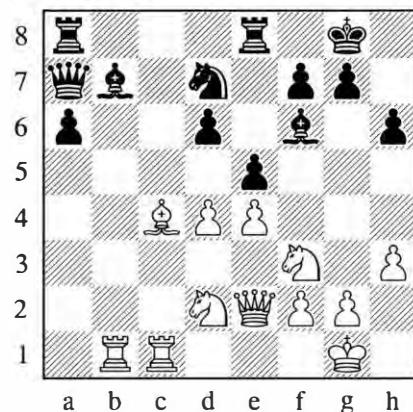
► Ex. 19-10 ◀ ★★★



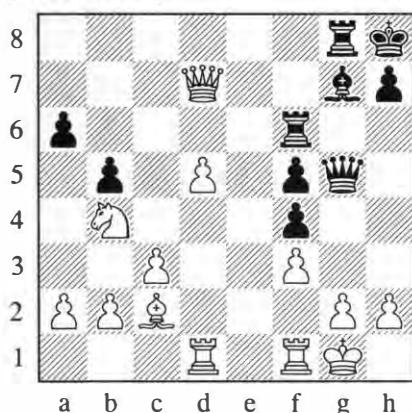
► Ex. 19-8 ◀ ★★



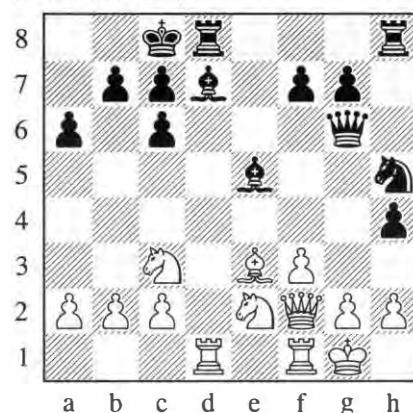
► Ex. 19-11 ◀ ★



► Ex. 19-9 ◀ ★



► Ex. 19-12 ◀ ★★



Solutions

Ex. 19-1

Meemsoth – Heisenbuettel

Bremen 1958

1. $\mathbb{E}c5!+-$

File clearing.

1... $\mathbb{W}xc5$ 2. $\mathbb{E}xh7\#$ 3. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$

(1 point)

Ex. 19-2

Popov – Atanasov

Bulgaria 1954

1. $\mathbb{Q}e6!!$ $fxe6$ 2. $\mathbb{W}g5\#$

If 3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$, then 4. $\mathbb{W}f3\#$ (4. $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$ also wins)

4... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 5. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$

6. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2+-$.

4. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$

(1 point)

Black resigned, on account of 5... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ (or 5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8. $\mathbb{W}g5\#$)
6. $\mathbb{W}g8\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}xf8\#$.

Ex. 19-3

D.Bronstein – A.Medina Garcia

Gothenburg 1955

1. $d6!$

(1 point)

This clears the d5-square for the knight.
Black resigned, because after 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$
the black queen is trapped.

Ex. 19-4

J.Kliavinsh – V.Zhuravliov

Riga 1968

1. $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$

(1 point)

White clears the third rank for the queen.

1... $cxd5$ 2. $\mathbb{W}a3\#$

3. $\mathbb{W}d6\#$

1-0

Ex. 19-5

V.Zilberstein – Tulin

USSR 1982

1. $e5!$

White brings the queen to h4 with gain of tempo.

1... $dxe5$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h4$

(1 point)

Black resigned, since 2... $\mathbb{W}e7$ is met by 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4+-$.

Ex. 19-6

R.Hübner – J.Penrose

Cheltenham 1971

1. $\mathbb{E}xg6!$

(1 point)

Black resigned. White has cleared the c6-square for the knight, and if 1... $hgx6$, then of course 2. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#+-$.

No better is 1... $\mathbb{E}xe5$ 2. $fxe5$ $hxg6$ 3. $e6+-$ and the white passed pawn cannot be stopped.

(another 1 point for this variation)

Ex. 19-7

Prokhorovich – G.Ravinsky

Moscow 1958

1... $b3!$

(1 point)

Clearing the b4-square. Now after 2. $axb3$ there is simply 2... $\mathbb{Q}b4+-$.

Instead 1... $\mathbb{Q}e7?$ would be bad, due to 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$. But first 1... $\mathbb{W}b6\#$, and only then 2... $b3!$ would be just as good.

0-1

Ex. 19-8

A.Hennings – V.Savon

Örebro 1966

The white attack looks very strong. But there is an unexpected defensive resource.

Solutions

1...Qf2!

(1 point)

1...Qf6 loses after 2.gxf6+-.

2.Qxf2 Wd8!±

(another 1 point)

1...Wc7 (also 1 point) is just as good.

3.bxc3 Qf8! 4.Wxf8† Wxf8 5.Qxf8† Qxf8+–

6.Qb2 Qe7 7.Qb3 Qd6 8.c4 Qc5 9.Qf5 g6

10.h5 gxh5 11.exf5 Qd6 12.g6 Qe7 13.Qb4

e4 14.Qc3 Qf6 15.Qd4 Qxf5

0-1

Ex. 19-9

L.Zinn – E.Sveshnikov

Decin 1974

1...Qf7!

(1 point)

Clearing the long diagonal. White resigned, in view of 2.Wxf7 Qd4† 3.cxd4 Wxg2#.

Ex. 19-10

A.Shashin – Kolevit

Moscow 1974

1.Qf4!!

(2 points)

Preparing Qc1†.

Of course 1.We2? is bad, due to 1...Wxe4+–.

1...Qd5

Clearing the d8-square for the king.

After 1...Wxg4 Black gets mated: 2.Qc1† Qc5 3.Qxc5#

2.Qc1† Qd8 3.Qg5† Qe7 4.Qd6!!

(another 1 point)

Black is threatened with Qc8# and after 4...Qxd6 White simply plays 5.Wxf5.

1-0

Ex. 19-11

M.Matulovic – G.Tringov

Belgrade 1965

1.Qxf7†! Qxf7 2.Qc7+–

(1 point)

2...Qab8 3.Qxd7† Qg6

Or 3...Qg8 4.Wc4† Qh8 5.Wf7 Qf8 6.Qxb7+–.

4.Qh4†! Qh7

4...Qxh4 loses after 5.Wg4† Qg5 6.Wf5† Qh5 7.Qf3.

5.Wg4 Qed8 6.Qc7 Wxd4 7.Qf5

Black resigned, on account of 7...Wxd2 8.Qxg7† Qh8 9.Wg6.

Ex. 19-12

K.Kling – R.Erler

Correspondence game 1976

1.Qg5!

(2 points)

Clearing the g1-a7 diagonal for the white queen.

1...b6

1...Wxg5 is met by 2.Wa7+–.

2.Qxd8 Qxd8 3.f4±

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 17

- 15 points and above → Excellent
- 12 points and above → Good
- 9 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Chess technique
- ✓ The correct way to proceed
- ✓ The four golden principles of technique

Endgame technique

We have already discussed the peculiarities of the endgame and the general principles of endgame play in Chapter 2 of *Build Up Your Chess 2*. Here we shall take a more in-depth look at endgame situations in which one side has a stable positional or slight material advantage.

In order to be certain of winning a superior endgame, we need knowledge about the best way to proceed and how to play in such situations. We shall deal further with this *chess technique* or the *technique of converting an advantage* in many other chapters (see also Chapter 13 of *Build Up Your Chess 1*).

The examples which we considered in the aforementioned chapter, ‘General endgame principles’, also illustrate, of course, many important points of endgame technique. The principles which we shall discuss here can also be very useful in many middlegame situations. But in the endgame this technique can be seen more explicitly and clearly.

The correct way to proceed in superior positions

Whenever you have an advantage, you must **display even more concentration than usual** in your play! Some players commit a major error as soon as they achieve an advantage. They think that they have already won the game! As Dr. Tarrasch once said: ‘It is very hard to win a game, but very easy to lose one!’

The four golden principles of technique

The whole art of the endgame is based on these principles:

- 1) **do not allow any counterplay**; pay attention and spot threats by your opponent in good time;
- 2) **do not be too hasty**; if your opponent has no counterplay, then first improve your position as much as possible and only then look for a concrete solution;
- 3) **create a second weakness**; this makes defence even more difficult for your opponent;
- 4) **aim for the correct sort of exchanges**; the side with a material advantage should try to exchange

pieces, whereas the defending side normally aims to exchange pawns.

The three endgames which we shall now examine are very important for the theory of rook endings. But at the same time they illustrate some of the golden principles of technique mentioned above.

Diagram 20-1

1.a5!

White first of all advances the rook's pawn, so that the knight's pawn can shelter his king from checks along the ranks. Here we can see how important it is to take into account the possibilities open to your opponent.

1.b5†? is wrong, on account of 1... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ and Black blockades the pawns, making White's task considerably more difficult.

1... $\mathbb{E}g6$

If 1... $\mathbb{E}h1$, then 2. $\mathbb{E}d6†$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ (2... $\mathbb{Q}b5?$ 3. $\mathbb{E}b6\#$) 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{E}h7$ 4.b5. Just look at the optimal position adopted by the rook! On the d-file it is ready to protect the king from attacks from the side. 4... $\mathbb{E}h4†$ 5. $\mathbb{E}d4+-$

2. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{E}g7$

2... $\mathbb{E}g4$ is followed by 3. $\mathbb{E}d6†$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ (3... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 4.a6† $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{E}g5†$ 6.b5+–) 4.a6 $\mathbb{E}g5$ (4... $\mathbb{E}g1$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a5!$) 5.b5 $\mathbb{E}g1$ 6. $\mathbb{E}d7†$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ (6... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 7. $\mathbb{E}b7†+–$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}a5+–$.

3.b5† $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 4.a6!

Since White cannot yet force the exchange of rooks, 'all' that is left for him to do is to strengthen his position further (principle 2).

4... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 5. $\mathbb{E}d6†$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{E}g5$

Or 6... $\mathbb{E}g8$ 7.b6† $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 8.a7! $\mathbb{Q}b7$ (8... $\mathbb{E}g5†$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a6+–$) 9. $\mathbb{E}d7†$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a6+–$.

7. $\mathbb{E}d7†$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6$

You should always play with great care and attention (principle 1). After 8.a7?? there would follow 8... $\mathbb{E}xb5†!=$.

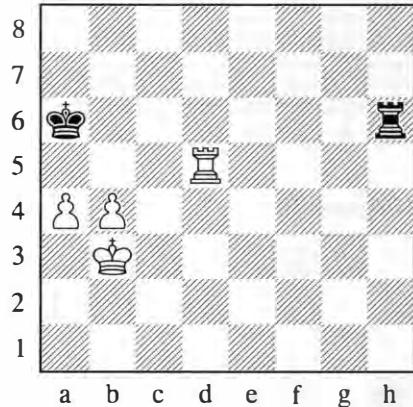
8... $\mathbb{E}g6†$

8... $\mathbb{E}g8$ 9. $\mathbb{E}d5$ $\mathbb{E}b8†$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ (10... $\mathbb{E}g8$ 11.b6+–) 11.b6†+–

9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{E}g1$

Or 9... $\mathbb{E}g5†$ 10. $\mathbb{E}d5$ $\mathbb{E}g6$ 11.b6+–.

Diagram 20-1



Endgame 3

($\Delta \dots \mathbb{E}g1$) 22.f6† $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 23. $\mathbb{E}h4$ $\mathbb{E}g1$ and now 24. $\mathbb{E}b4??$ would even lose after 24...h5!.

21... $\mathbb{E}a1$

21... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ transpose to the game after 22. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}g4$.

22. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}h1$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$

Diagram 20-6

This is the desired zugzwang position. Any black move just makes his position worse and lets White win the pawn.

23... $\mathbb{Q}g8$

23...h2 loses the pawn to 24. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ followed by $\mathbb{Q}g2$.

24. $\mathbb{E}h6$ h2

24... $\mathbb{E}g1\uparrow$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}xh3!$ $\mathbb{E}h1\uparrow$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}g4+-$

25. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}g1\uparrow$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ $\mathbb{E}g4$ 27. $\mathbb{E}f6$

White has won the pawn, but the ending is still hard to win. Look at the patience White demonstrates in converting his advantage!

27... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{E}g1$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{E}h1\uparrow$

Or 29... $\mathbb{E}g2$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{E}g1$ 31. $\mathbb{E}a6$ $\mathbb{E}g2$ 32. $\mathbb{E}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 33.f5+-.

30. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{E}g1\uparrow$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{E}f1$

Even if Black attacks from the side with his rook, White can advance his f-pawn and create new attacking possibilities: 31... $\mathbb{E}a1$ 32. $\mathbb{E}c6$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 33. $\mathbb{E}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 34. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ (34... $\mathbb{E}a5$ 35. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}a3\uparrow$ 36. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}a4\uparrow$ 37. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}a3\uparrow$ 38. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{E}a4\uparrow$ 39. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{E}a1$ 40.f5! $\mathbb{E}g1$ 41. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{E}xg5$ 42.f6 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 43. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 44. $\mathbb{E}a4\uparrow$ 35.f5! $\mathbb{E}g1\uparrow$ 36. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{E}f1\uparrow$ 37. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{E}e1\uparrow$ 38. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{E}d1\uparrow$ 39. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{E}c1\uparrow$ 40. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{E}d1\uparrow$ 41. $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{E}d5$ (41... $\mathbb{E}g1$ 42.f6! $\mathbb{E}xg5$ 43. $\mathbb{Q}d7\uparrow$ 42.f6 $\mathbb{E}xe5$ 43. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{E}d5\uparrow$ (43... $\mathbb{E}e8$ 44. $\mathbb{Q}c8\uparrow$ 44. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{E}d8$ 45. $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ $\mathbb{E}c8\uparrow$ 46. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 47. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ and $\mathbb{E}d8$ will win.

32. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}c8\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$

Diagram 20-7

34. $\mathbb{E}d8!!$

In order to win the game, White must extract the maximum from the position (principle 2). The only way to achieve that is to play for zugzwang.

34... $\mathbb{E}f2$

Now the black rook is too close to the white king. But the alternatives are no better:

- a) 34...h6 35.gxh6† $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 36. $\mathbb{E}g8\uparrow$ –

Diagram 20-6

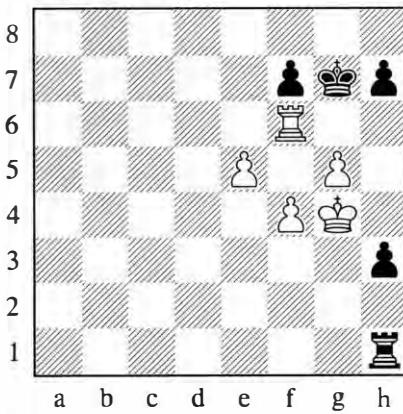
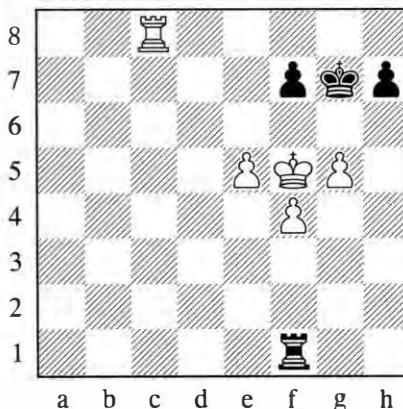


Diagram 20-7



b) 34... $\mathbb{B}a1$ 35. $\mathbb{B}d7!$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ (35... $\mathbb{B}a6?$ 36. $\mathbb{B}g4$
followed by f4-f5) 36. $\mathbb{B}f6$ $\mathbb{B}a6\#$ 37. $\mathbb{B}d6+-$

35. $\mathbb{B}d1!$ $\mathbb{B}f3$

35... $\mathbb{B}g8$ 36. $\mathbb{B}g4$ $\mathbb{B}g2\#$ 37. $\mathbb{B}f3+-$ and White gets
in f4-f5.

36. $\mathbb{B}e4$ $\mathbb{B}f2$

36... $\mathbb{B}g3$ is met by 37. $\mathbb{B}d7$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 38.e6+-.

37. $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{B}a2$ 38.f5

Diagram 20-8

At last White achieves his intermediate aim. The pawns are now very far advanced.

38... $\mathbb{B}g2$

Passive defence promises nothing either: 38... $\mathbb{B}a7$ 39. $\mathbb{B}e4$ $\mathbb{B}b7$ 40.e6 (or 40. $\mathbb{B}d8?$ Smyslov) 40...fxe6 41.fxe6 $\mathbb{B}g6$ 42. $\mathbb{B}e5$ $\mathbb{B}xg5$ 43. $\mathbb{B}g1\#$ $\mathbb{B}h4$ 44. $\mathbb{B}f6$ h5 (44... $\mathbb{B}b2$ 45. $\mathbb{B}h1\#+$) 45.e7 $\mathbb{B}b8$ 46. $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{B}g3$ 47.e8 \mathbb{W} $\mathbb{B}xe8$ 48. $\mathbb{B}xe8$ h4 49. $\mathbb{B}g5$ h3 50. $\mathbb{B}e3\#$ $\mathbb{B}g2$ 51. $\mathbb{B}g4$ h2 52. $\mathbb{B}e2\#$ $\mathbb{B}g1$ 53. $\mathbb{B}g3$ h1 $\mathbb{Q}\#$ 54. $\mathbb{B}f3+-$

40. $\mathbb{B}d7$

Or 40.g6 hxg6 41.f6 $\#$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ 42. $\mathbb{B}d8\#$ $\mathbb{B}h7$ 43. $\mathbb{B}f8+-$.

40... $\mathbb{B}xg5$

If 40... $\mathbb{B}f8$, then 41.f6 $\mathbb{B}e8$ 42. $\mathbb{B}e7\#$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 43. $\mathbb{B}a7$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 44. $\mathbb{B}a8\#$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 45. $\mathbb{B}f8$ $\mathbb{B}e6$ 46. $\mathbb{B}e8\#$ $\mathbb{B}f5$ 47.e6!+-.

41. $\mathbb{B}f4$ $\mathbb{B}g1$ 42.e6 $\mathbb{B}f1\#$ 43. $\mathbb{B}e5$ $\mathbb{B}e1\#$ 44. $\mathbb{B}d6$ h5

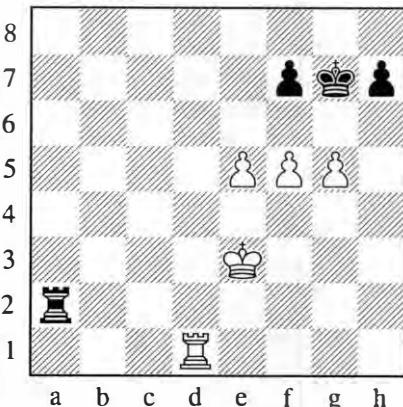
45. $\mathbb{B}xf7\#$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ 46. $\mathbb{B}e7$

Black resigned, in view of the following variation:

47...h4 48. $\mathbb{B}f6$ h3 49. $\mathbb{B}g7\#$ $\mathbb{B}h8$ 50. $\mathbb{B}g3+-$

The annotations are based on analysis by Gligoric.

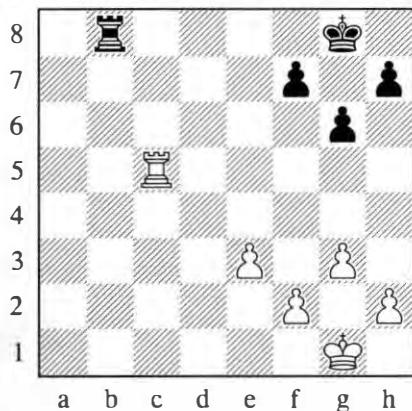
Diagram 20-8



Exercises

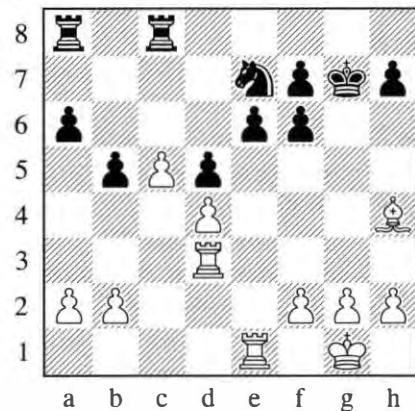
► Ex. 20-1 ◀

★



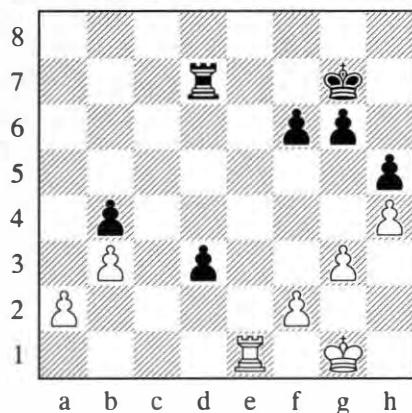
► Ex. 20-4 ◀

★★★



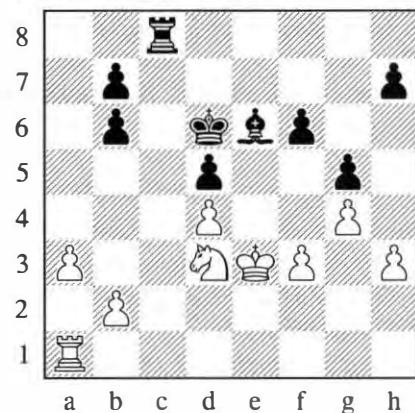
► Ex. 20-2 ◀

★★



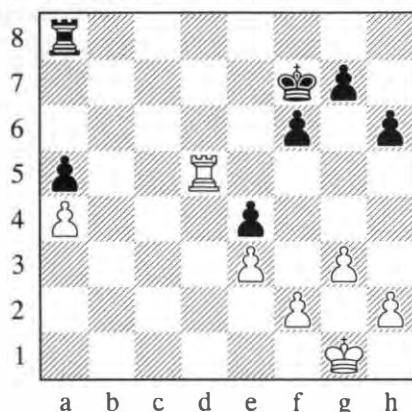
► Ex. 20-5 ◀

★★



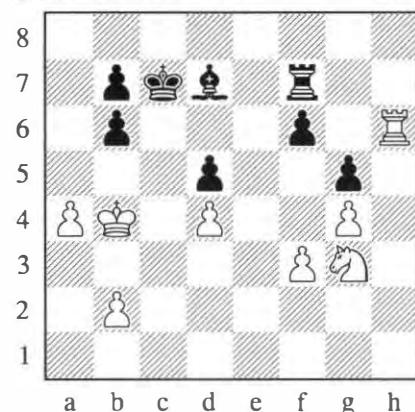
► Ex. 20-3 ◀

★★



► Ex. 20-6 ◀

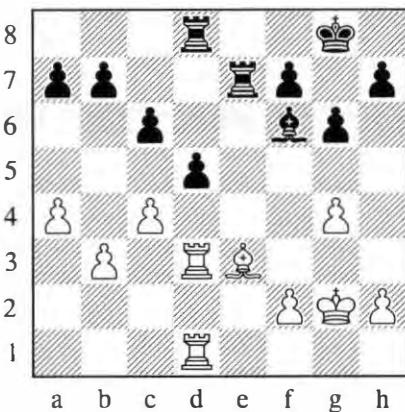
★★



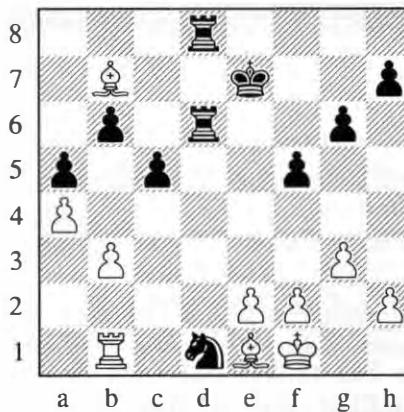
Exercises

Level 20

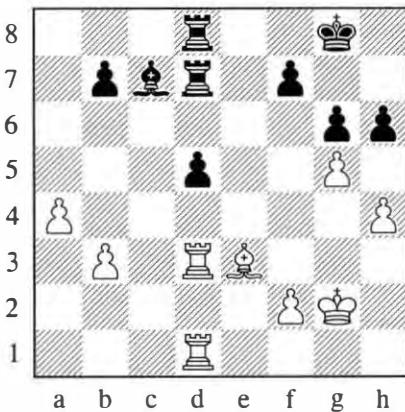
► Ex. 20-7 ◀ ★★★ △



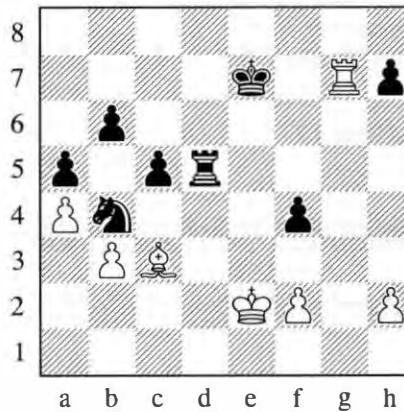
► Ex. 20-10 ◀ ★★★ ▽



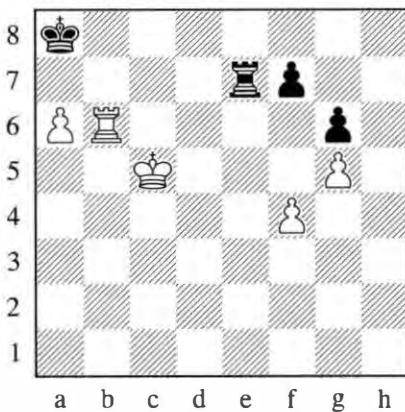
► Ex. 20-8 ◀ ★★ △



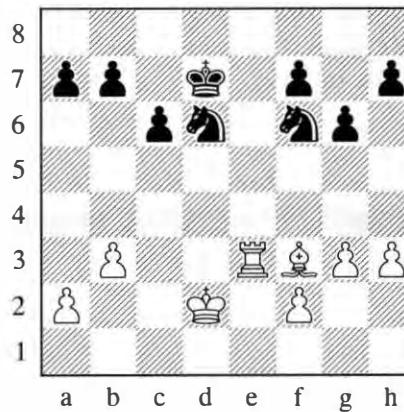
► Ex. 20-11 ◀ ★★ ▽



► Ex. 20-9 ◀ ★ △



► Ex. 20-12 ◀ ★★ △



Solutions

Ex. 20-1

T.Petrosian – P.Keres

USSR Ch, Moscow 1951

1...h5!

(1 point for this important move)

Principle 4 – the correct exchanges. Black holds the draw.

2.♗c2 ♗g7 3.♗g2 ♗b5 4.♗f3 ♗f6 5.h4

Or 5.h3 ♗a5 6.g4 hxg4†=.

5...♗f5† 6.♗g2 ♗a5 7.♗h3 ♗a4 8.♗d2
♗e5 9.♗b2 ♗f6 10.♗b5 ♗a2 11.♗g2 ♗a4
12.♗f3 ♗a3 13.♗f4 ♗a2 14.f3 ♗e2 15.e4
♗el 16.♗b6† ♗g7 17.♗a6 ♗b1 18.♗c6
♗g1 19.♗c2 ♗f6 20.♗a2 ♗g7 21.♗e2 ♗f6
22.♗e3 ♗g7 23.e5 ♗f8 24.g4 hxg4 25.fxg4
♗g7 26.♗g5 ♗f1 27.♗e4 ♗f3 28.h5

Of course not 28.e6?? f6#.

28...gxh5 29.gxh5 f6† 30.♗g4 ♗f1 31.h6†
♗g6!

1/2-1/2

Ex. 20-2

W.Browne – Y.Seirawan

Santa Monica 1987

1...g5!

(2 points)

Principle 3 – create a second weakness. Now the white kingside is weakened.

2.f3 gxh4 3.gxh4 ♗g6 4.♗f2 ♗f5 5.♗d1
♗f4 6.♗d2 f5! 7.♗d1 d2 8.♗e2 ♗g3
9.♗g1† ♗h2! 10.♗d1 f4!–+ 11.♗xd2 ♗xd2†
12.♗xd2 ♗g3 13.a4 bxa3 14.♗c3 ♗xf3
15.b4 ♗e4 16.b5 a2

0-1

Ex. 20-3

A.Yusupov – M.Tal

USSR Ch, Minsk 1979

1.g4!

(2 points)

Principle 3 – create a second weakness. The black e4-pawn now becomes weak.

1...g5 2.♗g2 ♗g6 3.h4! gxh4 4.♗h3±

Black has two weaknesses, on a5 and e4.

Ex. 20-4

V.Kramnik – A.Morozevich

Dortmund 2001

1.g4!

(3 points)

Fixing the weakness on f6 and preparing ♗f3.

Only 1 consolation point for 1.♗f1 or 1.♗g3† ♗g6 2.f4 ♗e8±.

1.♗f3 ♗f5 is less good, since the tactical operation 2.♗xf6†? ♗xf6 3.g4 fails to 3...♗g8–+.

1...♗g6

If 1...h5, then 2.♗f3 hxg4 3.♗f4!± (Kramnik).

1...♗c6 is followed by 2.♗f3 f5 3.♗f4! fxg4 4.♗xg4† ♗h6 5.♗d8!! ♗xd8 (or 5...♗xd4 6.♗e3 ♗e2† 7.♗h1 ♗f4 8.♗xf4+–) 6.♗e3 ♗h5 7.♗g7 ♗h4 8.♗g2+–.

2.♗g3 a5

If 2...h5, then 3.gxh5 ♗e7 4.♗f4±.

After 2...♗e7?! comes 3.♗f3 a5 4.♗h4 ♗g8 5.♗ee3± followed by ♗f4 and ♗e3 (Kramnik).

3.♗d6! h5

3...b4 4.f4 f5 5.gxf5 exf5 6.♗de3+– (Kramnik)

4.gxh5 ♗h4 5.♗g3†! ♗h6 6.♗e7 ♗f5 7.♗xf6 ♗xg3 8.fxg3 ♗g8?!

8...♗xh5?! would be more stubborn: 9.♗g2 ♗g6 10.♗f1 e5 11.♗xe5 ♗a6 12.♗d6 ♗e8± (Kramnik)

9.♗g2!

9.♗e5 achieves nothing, due to 9...♗g4.

9...♗xh5

9...♗g4? 10.h3 ♗e4 11.♗xe4 dxе4 12.g4+–

10.h3 ♗g6 11.♗f1 ♗h7?

Passive defence is hopeless. 11...♗a6 would have been better: 12.♗e5!? (12.g4 e5 13.♗xe5 ♗e6) 12...f5 13.g4± (Kramnik)

12.g4 b4 13.♗g3 b3 14.a3 ♗ac8 15.h4 ♗g6

16.h5

1-0

Solutions

Ex. 20-5

A.Lilienthal – I.Bondarevsky

USSR Ch, Moscow 1940

1.h4!

(2 points)

White activates his rook and wants to create a second weakness on the kingside. (We are counting the doubled pawns on the queenside as the first weakness.)

1...h6

1...gxh4 is bad: 2.Qh1 f5 3.g5!+– (Lilienthal)

2.hxg5 hxg5 3.Qh1 Qe8 4.Qd2 Qd7 5.Qh6

Now White attacks the f6-pawn.

5...Qf8

5...Qe6 is followed by 6.f4 Qg8 7.f5† Qf7 8.Qb4+– (Lilienthal).

6.Qe1!

White redeploys his knight to e3. The more direct 6.f4? is also strong.

6...Qc7 7.Qc2 Qf7

There would be better prospects of a successful defence after 7...f5? 8.Qe3 fxg4 9.Qxd5† (9.fxg4 Qf2† 10.Qc1 Qc6 11.Qg6 Qf4 12.Qg7† Qd8 13.Qxg5 Qxd4±) 9...Qd8 10.fxg4 Qxg4± (Dvoretsky).

Now White can comfortably improve his position without allowing counterplay (principle 2 – do not be too hasty).

8.Qe3 Qe6 9.Qc3 Qd6 10.Qb4 Qd7

11.Qf5† Qc7

The rook ending is also hard to hold, but it would be the lesser evil. 11...Qxf5 is followed by 12.gxf5 Qc6 13.a4! Qf8 14.Qh7 and here Black should try to activate his rook:

a) 14...Qd8? 15.Qf7 Qd6 16.b3± b5 17.a5 b6 18.a6+– (Lilienthal)

b) 14...Qe8 15.Qf7 Qe2! (15...Qe3 16.Qxf6† Qc7±) 16.Qxf6† Qc7± (Dvoretsky)

12.a4 Qe6?

The transition to a rook ending is still the best solution: 12...Qxf5 13.gxf5 Qc6 14.Qh8 Qe7!± (Dvoretsky)

13.Qg3 Qd7±

See Ex. 20-6.

Ex. 20-6

A.Lilienthal – I.Bondarevsky

USSR Ch, Moscow 1940

1.Qh5!

(1 point)

1.Qg6 is not so strong: 1...f5 2.Qxg5 fxg4 3.fxg4 Qf4±

1...f5 2.Qf6!

(another 1 point)

2.Qf6 would have been weaker: 2...Qe7 3.gxf5 Qh7 4.Qg3 Qh3 and Black has counterplay.

2...fxg4 3.Qxd5† Qb8 4.Qxg4 Qxg4 5.Qxb6 Qf2 6.b3 Qd1 7.d5 Qc7

7...Qf3 8.d6 Qxb3† 9.Qa5+–

8.a5 Qd2 9.Qh7† Qb8 10.d6!+–

Or 10.Qc5+–.

10...Qd4†

If 10...Qxd6, then 11.Qh8† Qc7 12.Qc#.

11.Qc5 Qh4 12.d7 Qc7 13.d8Q† Qxd8

14.Qd7†

1–0

Ex. 20-7

R.Kholmov – E.Geller

Vilnius 1957

1.g5!

(3 points)

Principle 1 – do not allow any counterplay!

1.Qxa7 (1 consolation point) is followed by 1...Qa8 2.Qc5 Qe4 3.cxd5 Qxg4† 4.Qf3 (4.Qg3 Qxg3† 5.hxg3 cxd5 6.Qxd5 Qa5!) 4...Qg5!±.

1...Qe5 2.Qxa7 Qc7?!

After 2...Qed7 there follows 3.Qb6±.

If 2...Qa8? then 3.Qb6 dxc4 4.Qd8† Qe8 5.Qxe8† Qxe8 6.bxc4± (Dvoretsky).

3.cxd5 Qed7 4.h4± h6

4...Qxd5 5.Qxd5 Qxd5 6.Qxd5 cxd5 7.Qc5!± White cuts off the opposing king. In such positions, the outside passed pawn is often a decisive advantage.

5.Qe3 cxd5

Solutions

Black is losing after 5...hxg5 6.Qxg5 or 5...Bxd5 6.Bxd5 Bxd5 7.Bxd5 cxd5 8.gxh6.
See Ex. 20-8.

Ex. 20-8

R.Kholmov – E.Geller

Vilnius 1957

1.Qd4!

(2 points)

The threat of Qf6 means that White wins the d-pawn. That is even better than 1.gxh6 (1 consolation point) 1...f6.

1...Qd6

1...Ba8 is met by 2.Qc3.

2.Qf6 Qe7 3.Qxe7 Bxe7 4.Bxd5 Bxd5

5.Bxd5 Qg7

Black wants to exchange more pawns by playing ...f6.

6.Bd6!+– hxg5 7.hxg5 Bc7

7...Bc5 8.Bb6! Bxg5† 9.Qf1!+–

8.Bb6! Qf8 9.Qf3 Qe8 10.Qe4 Be7†

11.Qd5 Qd8 12.f4 Qc7 13.a5 Bc1 14.Bf6

Bc7 15.b4 Bd7† 16.Qc5 Be7 17.b5 Bd7

18.Bb6 Bd1 19.Bf6 Bd7 20.a6 bxa6 21.bxa6

Qb8 22.Bd6! Be7 23.Bb6† Qa8

See Ex. 20-9.

Ex. 20-9

R.Kholmov – E.Geller

Vilnius 1957

1.Bb7!

(1 point)

The simplest solution.

1...Be6

1...Bxb7 2.axb7† Qxb7 3.Qd6!+–

2.Bxf7 Bxa6 3.Qf6 Ba4 4.Qd6

1-0

Ex. 20-10

L.Psakhis – J.Speelman

Hastings 1987

1...g5!!

(2 points)

Black meets the threat of Qa6-d3 by preparing to advance his f-pawn.

If 1...Bd2, then 2.Qxd2 Bxd2 3.Qc1!±.

2.Qa6 f4! 3.Qd3?!

Either 3.Qb5?! or 3.Qc4?! would be simpler, with good drawing chances.

3...Bxd3 4.exd3 Bxd3 5.Qe2 Bd5!

But not 5...Bd4? 6.gxf4 gxf4 7.Qd2! Qxf2 8.Qc3! Bd3 9.Qe1!±.

6.gxf4

If 6.Bxd1?? then 6...f3†!.

(another 1 point for this variation)

6.Qd2? is met by 6...Qxf2†.

The correct defensive idea is 6.Qf3?! Qc3?!

(6...Bd4 7.Qe2 Qe6?! [or 7...Bd5=] 8.gxf4 gxf4 9.Qd2 Qxf2 10.Qc3 Qe4 11.Qxd4 cxd4∞) 7.Qxc3 Bd3† 8.Qg4 Bxc3 9.Qxg5†.

6...gxf4 7.Qc1?

Here too, 7.Qf3 would be correct: 7...Qc3 (7...Bd4 8.Qe2) 8.Qxc3 Bd3† 9.Qxf4 Bxc3 10.Qe1† and then 11.Qe3†.

7...Qb2 8.Qc3 Bd3† 9.Qg1

If 9.Qd1, then 9...Qb4 10.Qxb4 f3†! 11.Qe1 Bxd1† 12.Qxd1 axb4!–.

9...Qb4

Threatening ...f3†!.

10.Qg7†?

10.Qxb4 was necessary: 10...axb4 11.Qg7† Qd6 12.Qxh7 f3†! 13.Qe3 Bd1†

See Ex. 20-11.

Ex. 20-11

L.Psakhis – J.Speelman

Hastings 1987

1...Qf8!–+

(1 point)

2.Qb2

Solutions

2. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $f3\text{!}$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}d1\text{!}$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c2\text{--}$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}d3\text{!--}$ (Speelman)

(another 1 point for this variation)

If 2. $f3$, then 2... $\mathbb{Q}d3\text{!}$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3\text{!--}$)
3... $\mathbb{Q}e3\text{!}$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3\text{!}$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e1\text{!--}$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}d3\text{!}$

0-1

Ex. 20-12

V.Smyslov – M.Rohde

New York 1989

1.g4!

(2 points)

One weakness (the e-file) is no problem for Black to defend. White methodically improves his position on the kingside and creates another weakness there.

1...h6 2.h4 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e1$

The overhasty 3. $g5$ $hxg5$ 4. $hxg5$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ would give White problems defending his g5-pawn.

3... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5. $g5$ $hxg5$ 6. $hxg5$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h3\text{!}$ $\mathbb{Q}ge8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e5\text{!}$ $\mathbb{Q}de8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d1\text{!}$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}ec7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h1\text{!--}$

This is stronger than 14. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}b5\text{!}$.

14... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}h8$

The penetration of the rook decides the game.

15... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$

17... $a6$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}a7\text{!--}$

18. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 20. $f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$

21. $\mathbb{Q}a7$

1-0

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 25

• 21 points and above ➤ Excellent

• 17 points and above ➤ Good

• 12 points ➤ Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ The point of the blockade
- ✓ Three reasons for blockading
- ✓ Hindering development
- ✓ Connected pawns

Blockade

The blockade is an important strategic concept in the struggle against opposing passed pawns.

The point of the blockade is to make it more difficult for the opposing pawns to advance. The piece most suited to this task is a minor piece, since their lesser value means the effect of attacking them is less than it would be if the rook, queen or king were attacked. – Bönsch 'Schachlehre – Schachtraining'

The three most important reasons why the blockading of one or more pawns may be necessary are:

- 1) otherwise the pawns might advance further towards the queening square;
- 2) the blockading square is a safe position for our pieces;
- 3) the blockaded pawn often limits the mobility of the opposing pieces.

If a pawn is blockaded on its starting square, then the development of the pieces can be considerably hindered, and sometimes a whole wing cannot be properly mobilized. Such situations are considered in more depth in the next two examples.

L.Paulsen – P.Morphy

New York(6) 1857

1.e4 e5 2.Qf3 Qc6 3.Qc3 Qf6 4.Qb5 Qc5

Nowadays the preference is for either 4...Qb4 or 4...Qd4.

5.0–0

5.Qxe5 is a good alternative for White. After 5...Qxe5 6.d4 Qb4 7.dxe5 Qxe4 8.Qd4 Qxc3 (8...Qxc3† 9.bxc3 Qg5 10.Qa3 Qe6 11.Qe4 Qg5 12.g3±) 9.bxc3 Qe7 10.Qf4! White is slightly better.

5...0–0 6.Qxe5 Qe8

6...Qxe5 7.d4±

7.Qxc6

The correct continuation is 7.Qf3! Qxe4 8.d4 Qxc3 9.bxc3 Qf8 10.d5 Qe5 11.Qxe5 Qxe5 12.Qf4±. 7...dxc6 8.Qc4 b5!

8... $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{B}xe4$ is wrong, because of 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ when 10... $\mathbb{Q}xf7??$ loses to 11. $\mathbb{W}f3\#$.

9. $\mathbb{Q}e2$

9. $\mathbb{Q}b3?$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 10. $\mathbb{W}e1$ $b4\#$

9... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$

10. $\mathbb{Q}f3?$ loses, on account of 10... $\mathbb{Q}xf2!$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{W}d4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (12. $\mathbb{W}f1$ $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$ 13. $\mathbb{W}xf2$ $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$) 12... $\mathbb{B}xe4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{B}e8$.

10... $\mathbb{B}xe4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f3$

Since the black pieces are more actively posted, White must play very carefully. The dangers which are lurking there for White can be seen from the following continuation: 11.c3 $\mathbb{W}h4$ 12.g3 (12.d4 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 13.g3 $\mathbb{W}h3$ 14.f4 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ and then ... $\mathbb{B}ae8$ gives Black attacking chances) 12... $\mathbb{W}h3$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{B}h4!!$ 14.gxh4 $\mathbb{Q}d6-$ +

A safer way to develop is 11.d3 $\mathbb{B}e6$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (12. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{W}f6$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ $\mathbb{W}xb2\#$) 12... $\mathbb{W}f6=$.

11... $\mathbb{B}e6$ 12.c3?

Diagram 21-1

A typical mistake. White wants to prepare d2-d4 and completely underestimates his opponent's next move. As mentioned in the previous note, 12.d3 $\mathbb{W}f6$ would be level.

12... $\mathbb{W}d3!$

Now the d2-pawn is blockaded. White can no longer develop his queenside normally.

13.b4

13. $\mathbb{B}el$ $\mathbb{B}xe1\#$ 14. $\mathbb{W}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 15. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{B}d8$ 16. $\mathbb{W}xd3$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3\#$ and Black maintains the blockade on d3.

13... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 14.a4 $\mathbb{B}xa4$ 15. $\mathbb{W}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7!!$

15... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ would be better: 16. $\mathbb{B}a2$ $\mathbb{B}ae8$ (threatening ... $\mathbb{W}xf1\#$) 17. $\mathbb{W}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}a6!$ and Black wins the exchange.

16. $\mathbb{B}a2?$

White absolutely has to exchange the blockading black queen at once. So the correct move is 16. $\mathbb{W}a6$ $\mathbb{W}f5$ (16... $\mathbb{W}xa6$ 17. $\mathbb{B}xa6$ $\mathbb{B}ae8$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{B}e6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ $\mathbb{B}xd7$ 20.d4 is good for White, as the black bishop on b6 is cut off from play) 17.d4 $\mathbb{B}ae8$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ and now 18...c5! leads to complicated play.

16... $\mathbb{B}ae8$

Black prepares the unpleasant mating threat of 17... $\mathbb{W}xf1\#$ followed by 18... $\mathbb{B}e1\#$.

17. $\mathbb{W}a6$

Diagram 21-1

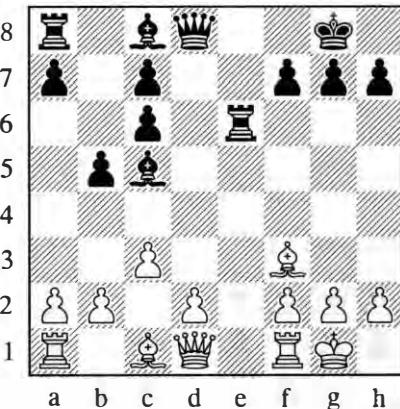
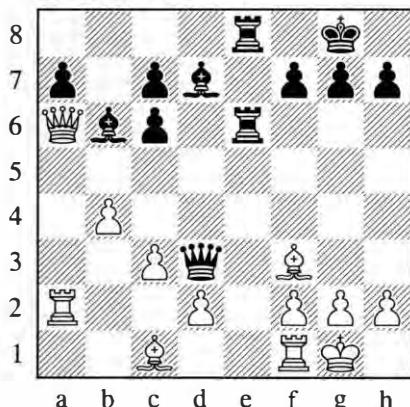


Diagram 21-2



White overlooks the following pretty combination, but even the better 17. $\mathbb{W}d1$ c5! (intending ... $\mathbb{Q}d7-b5$) leads to a strategically lost position.

Diagram 21-2

17... $\mathbb{W}xf3!$

All the black pieces are well placed, whilst the white pieces on the queenside can no longer get to the defence of the king in time.

18. $\mathbb{g}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$

Threatening mate in two moves with 20... $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$ and 21... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$.

20. $\mathbb{Q}d1$

If 20. $\mathbb{W}d3$, then 20... f5! 21. $\mathbb{W}c4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ (22. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}xg1\#$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}xg1$ $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$) 22... $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$.

20. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ loses to 20... $\mathbb{Q}xg1\#$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}xg1$ $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$.

20... $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$

23... $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$ is even stronger: 24. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ (threatening ... $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$) 25. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$

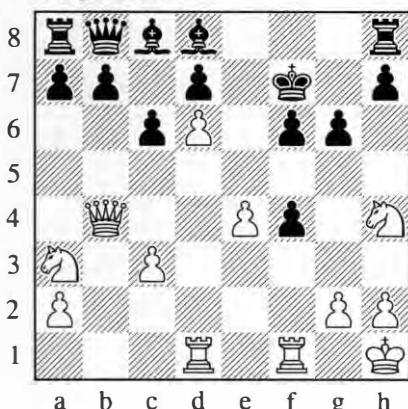
24. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$

Now the threat is ... $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$.

25. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 28. $d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$

White resigned. He cannot defend his h-pawn and 29. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ is followed by the typical mate in two moves.

Diagram 21-3



In this example, the white pawn on d6 blockades the whole black queenside. The c8-bishop and the two major pieces cannot be developed quickly. Chigorin consequently moves the white pieces into a rapid attack on the kingside.

1. e5!

Aiming to open lines against the opposing king.

1... $\mathbb{f}xe5$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf4\#$

White can even sacrifice a whole rook, since there are clearly more pieces in the attack than his opponent has available for the defence.

2... $\mathbb{Q}g7$

The principled variation is 2... $\mathbb{exf4}$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xf4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ and Black will end up being mated:

Diagram 21-3

M.Chigorin – W.Steinitz

Consultation game, Havana 1889

Blockade

a) 4... $\mathbb{B}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{W}d4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 6. $\mathbb{B}f7$ c5 7. $\mathbb{W}e3\#$ g5
(7... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 8. $\mathbb{W}h3\#$) 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ b5 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$
 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 11. $\mathbb{B}xh7\#$

b) 4... $\mathbb{B}xh4$ 5. $\mathbb{W}d4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6. $\mathbb{W}c4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{B}f7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$
8. $\mathbb{B}e7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 9. $\mathbb{B}f7\#$

3. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$!

White wants to break through the pawn shield and rob the black king of its protection.

3... $\mathbb{gxf5}$ 4. $\mathbb{B}xf5$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{B}df1$

Black has no chance against the attack of White's major pieces.

5... $\mathbb{b}5$ 6. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 7. $\mathbb{B}f8$

1-0

Since the pawns only move forwards and cannot control the squares in front of them, they can easily be blockaded. **Connected pawns are strongest when they stand side by side**, because then they can only be blockaded when one of them moves forward.

S.Gligoric – L.Szabo

Helsinki Olympiad 1952

1.d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 4.e3 c5 5. $\mathbb{Q}ge2$ d5
6.a3 cxd4 7.exd4 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 8.c5 0-0 9.b4 b6 10.g3 bxc5
11.dxc5 a5 12. $\mathbb{B}b1$ axb4

The immediate 12... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ is more accurate here than clearing the a3-square for the white bishop. But in any case, the opening variation doesn't bring any advantage to White.

13.axb4 $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ 14. $\mathbb{B}g2$

14.b5 is answered by 14... $\mathbb{Q}e5!$, threatening both ... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ and ... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$.

14... $\mathbb{B}b8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a3$

15.b5 $\mathbb{Q}xc5!$ 16.bxc6 $\mathbb{B}xb1$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ leads to a dangerous black attack.

Diagram 21-4

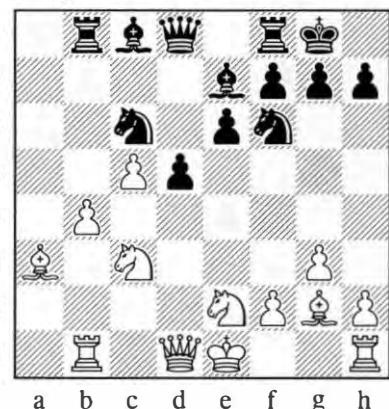
15... $\mathbb{Q}d7!$

The white pawns on the queenside must be stopped. So Black prepares for a blockade.

16.0-0

This was White's last chance to advance the pawns on the queenside. After 16.b5, Black should avoid 16... $\mathbb{Q}a7?!$ 17.b6 (but nor 17. $\mathbb{W}d3?$ $\mathbb{Q}xb5!$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ $\mathbb{W}a5\#$ nor 17. $\mathbb{W}a4?$ $\mathbb{B}a8!)$ and White has improved

Diagram 21-4



his position on the queenside; but he can simply reply 16... $\mathbb{Q}e5!$? followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$.

16... $\mathbb{Q}a7!$

Now the white pawns are blockaded and Black has a pawn majority in the centre. If he manages to set this in motion, White could soon be facing major problems.

17. $\mathbb{K}e1 \mathbb{Q}e8!$

Black brings this knight to c7 to strengthen the blockade. 17... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ would be premature, due to 18. $\mathbb{Q}xb5 \mathbb{Q}xb5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d4$. White threatens to exchange on b5 and then play $\mathbb{Q}f1$, after which the white pawns would become mobile again.

18. $\mathbb{Q}c1 \mathbb{Q}f6$

Diagram 21-5

19. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$?

White provokes the movement of the centre pawns, but then does not play energetically enough, enabling Black to support these pawns in time. 19.f4 is sounder, in order to restrain the black pawns' lust to advance.

19...e5 20. $\mathbb{Q}d2 d4$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}d5?$

21. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ is necessary: 21... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 22.f4 ∞

21... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$ $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{W}xc6$ 24.f4 f6

White has not achieved anything. If Black can stabilize the position, then the white situation will become critical.

25. $\mathbb{W}b3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 26. $\mathbb{K}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 27. $\mathbb{W}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}ab5$

The white pawns on the queenside are safely blockaded. Now Black concentrates his forces in the centre, to prepare the further advance of his own pawns.

28. $\mathbb{K}be1 h6$ 29.g4 $\mathbb{Q}be8?!$

Diagram 21-6

A very instructive mistake. It is important for Black to secure the possibility of ...e5-e4. White, on the other hand, should utilize every opportunity to blockade the black pawns on d4 and e5 as soon as possible. So the correct move is 29... $\mathbb{Q}fe8!$ 30.fxe5 fxe5 31. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ e4 32. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ e3 and the pawns get dangerously close to White's back rank.

30.f5?

But now White makes a positional mistake. He should blockade the centre pawns. After 30.fxe5! fxe5 31. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1\#$ 32. $\mathbb{W}xf1$ Black cannot play

Diagram 21-5

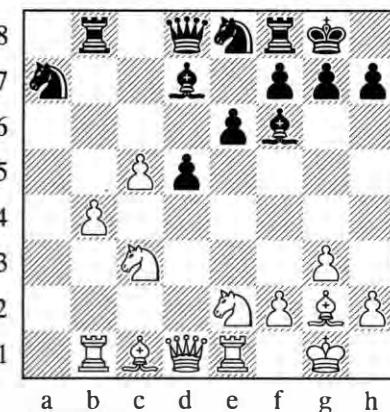
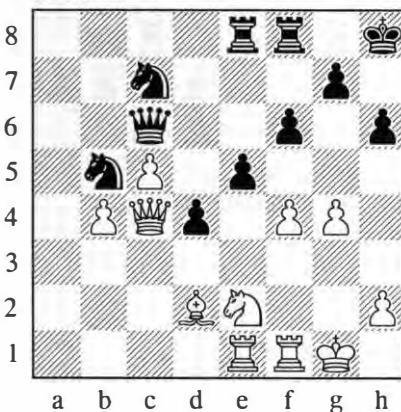


Diagram 21-6



Blockade

32...e4? on account of 33.♕xe4! ♜xe4 34.♔f8† ♔h7

35.♗f5†+–.

30...♛d5 31.♛c1?

Probably the players were in time trouble. White sets a trap (32.♕xh6), but in doing so misses the last chance to set up a blockade. The endgame after 31.♛xd5 ♔xd5 32.♕g3† offers White some chances to save the game. For example: 32...♜b8 33.♕e4 ♛bc3 34.♕xc3 dxc3 35.♜c1 ♜xb4 36.♕xc3 ♜xg4† 37.♔h1 ♔xc3 38.♜xc3 ♜c8 39.c6

31...♚h7! 32.♕g3 e4!

Now the white position can no longer be held.

33.♕f4 e3 34.♛d1 ♜c4 35.h4 ♔d5 36.g5

White tries a despairing attack, but the strong black pawns on e3 and d4 also hinder the opposing pieces.

36...d3

Threatening simply ...♕xf4.

37.♛g4 ♜g8!

Black defends against the threat of gxh6.

38.♕h5 ♜e4! 39.g6† ♚h8

White cannot break through on the kingside.

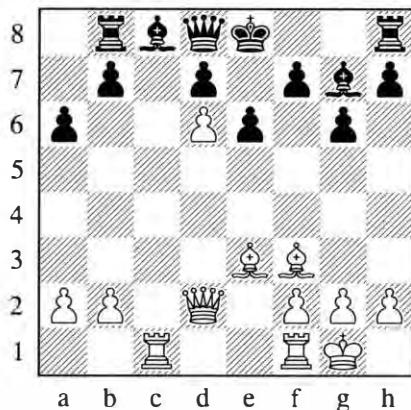
40.♛g3

And here White didn't wait to find out which pawn his opponent would advance first; he resigned.

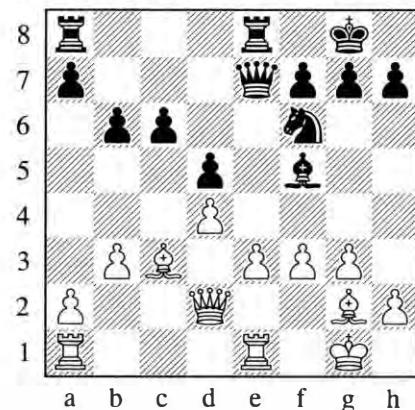
The test is very difficult this time. But the test positions illustrate some important ideas concerning the blockade. It is essential to play through the solutions on a board.

Exercises

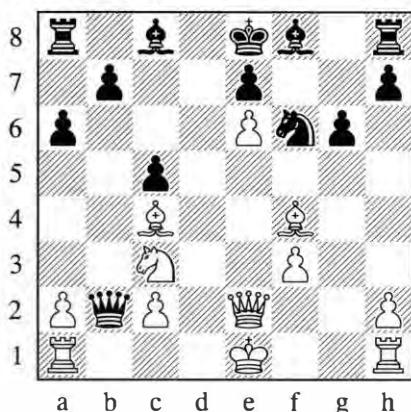
► Ex. 21-1 ◀ ★★



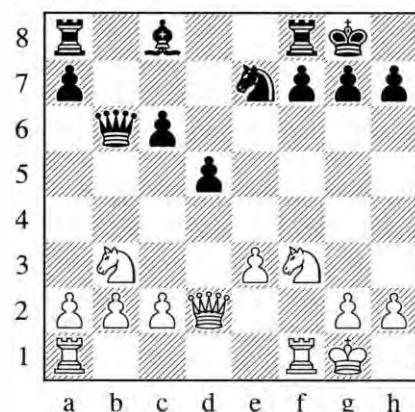
► Ex. 21-4 ◀ ★★



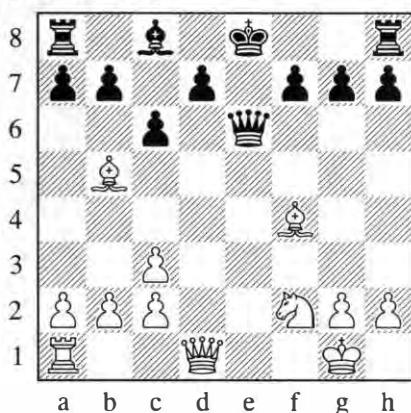
► Ex. 21-2 ◀ ★★



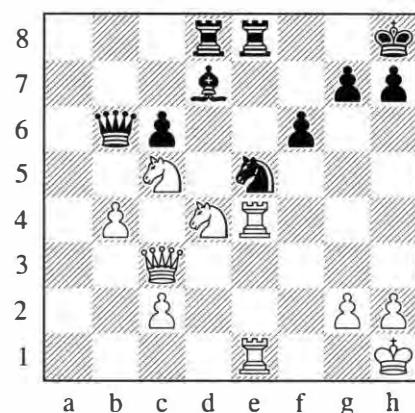
► Ex. 21-5 ◀ ★★



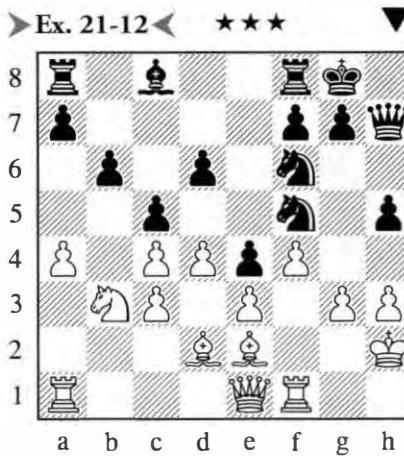
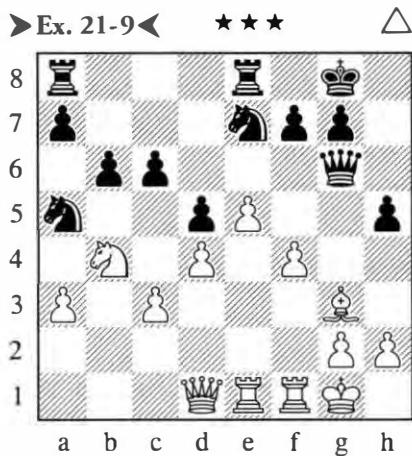
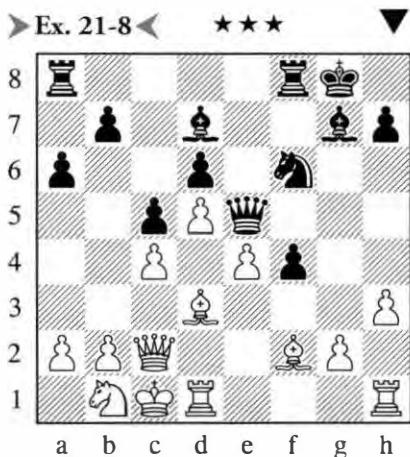
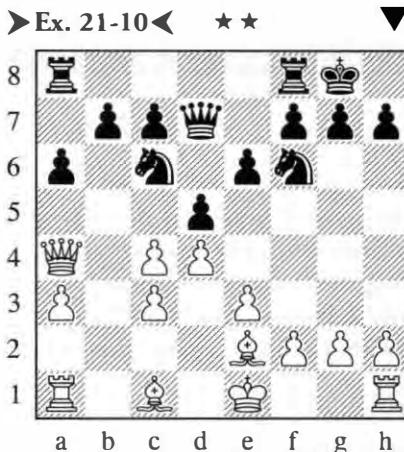
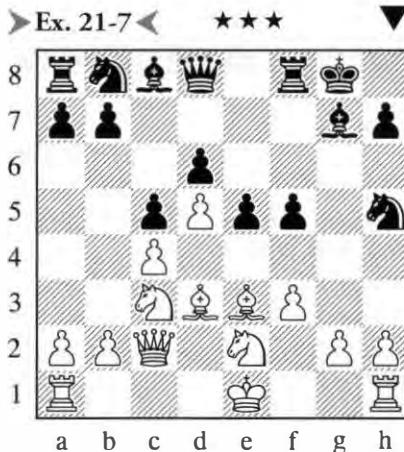
► Ex. 21-3 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 21-6 ◀ ★★



Exercises



Solutions

Ex. 21-1

P.Romanovsky – G.Ravinsky

Moscow 1943

1.♕h6!

(2 points)

The exchange of bishops is the correct idea. It leaves Black with only bad pieces.

Offering the exchange of bishops by 1.♗d4 also earns 2 points, although Black can still defend with 1...f6±. 1 consolation point for 1.♗c7.

1...♗f6

1...0–0 is followed by 2.♕xg7 ♕xg7 3.♗d4† ♘f6 4.♗a7+–.

1...♗e5 loses after 2.♗e3! ♕xd6 3.♗d4!.

2.♕xg7 ♕xg7 3.♗e3!

Black resigned, as he has no good defence to the threat of 4.♗a7. Both 3...♗a8 4.♗a7!! and 3...b6 4.♗xb6! see White winning on the spot.

Ex. 21-2

A.Alekhine – G.Levenfish

St. Petersburg 1912

1.♗b5!

(2 points)

1.♗d2?! would not be so energetic, on account of 1...♗b4.

1...♗xa1†

If 1...axb5, then 2.♕xb5† ♗d8 3.♗d1† ♗d7 4.♗e5 (or 4.0–0) 4...♗b4† 5.c3+– (Lisitsin).

2.♗f2 ♕xh1 3.♗c7† ♗d8 4.♗d2† ♗d7

5.exd7

Black resigned. The threat is ♗e6#, and Black is saved by neither 5...♗xd7 6.♗e6+– nor 5...e5 6.♗e6† ♗e7 7.d8† ♗xd8 8.♗xd8† ♗f7 9.♗xf8† ♗g7 10.♗e7# (Lisitsin).

Ex. 21-3

Post – Kagan

1.♗d6!

(2 points)

1 point for 1.♗d2 or 1.♗d3. The blockading move in the game is much more energetic.

1...cx b5 2.♗d2 ♕h6

2...♗d8 is followed by 3.♗e1 ♕h6 4.♗e3 (4.♗f4 transposes to the game) 4...♗e8 5.♗g4 ♕g6 6.♗e5 ♕e6 7.♗g3 g6 (7...f6 8.♗xg7+–) 8.♗xf7† ♕xf7 9.♗g5†+–.

3.♗e1†

White can win more quickly with 3.♗xh6! gxh6 4.♗g4 b6 5.♗e1† ♗d8 6.♗xh6+–.

3...♗d8 4.♗f4

Here 4.♗e3 is also strong, transposing to the note to Black's 2nd move.

4...♗c6

Black's situation also remains critical after 4...♗g6 5.♗d5!.

5.♗d6 f6 6.♗f4

Black resigned. The threat is 7.♗e7† ♗e8 8.♗xf6†+–, and after 6...♗e8 there follows 7.♗c7† ♕xc7 8.♗xe8†+–.

Ex. 21-4

A.Konstantinopolsky – A.Kotov

Baku 1945

1...h5!=

(2 points)

Black restrains the white pawns on the kingside. Only 1 point for 1...a5 or 1...♗e6.

2.♗e2 ♕d7 3.♗ael ♕h3 4.♗h1 ♕e6 5.e4

dxe4 6.fxe4 ♕ae8

Intending 7...♗g4 8.♗e3 ♕e7 9.♗d3 ♗d5!.

7.♗f3??

7.d5?!

7...♗g4! 8.♗f4 ♕xf3 9.♗xf3

Black wants to blockade the centre pawns, but he should first play 9...h4, after which 10.gxh4 ♕e7 11.e5 ♗d5 leads to a more pleasant position for Black.

Solutions

Ex. 21-5

M. Botvinnik – I. Boleslavsky

Leningrad/Moscow 1941

1. $\mathbb{W}c3\pm$

(2 points)

White now controls the c5-square and can blockade the black pawns on c6 and d5. Only 1 point for 1. $\mathbb{Q}e5$, since Black can simply reply 1...c5.

1... $\mathbb{E}b8$ 2. $\mathbb{E}ab1$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{E}fe1$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$
 5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6.b4 $\mathbb{E}bd8$ 7.e4! $dxe4\text{?}$ 8. $\mathbb{E}xe4$
 a5 9.a3 $axb4$ 10. $axb4$ f6 11. $\mathbb{E}bel$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$
 12. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}d7\pm$

See Ex. 21-6.

Ex. 21-6

M. Botvinnik – I. Boleslavsky

Leningrad/Moscow 1941

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{E}xd7$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xc6!$

(another 1 point)

This elegant tactical operation exploits the weakness of Black's back rank and leads to the win of a pawn.

2... $\mathbb{W}d8$

If 2... $\mathbb{W}xb4?$ then 3. $\mathbb{W}xd7\text{!+-}$.

2... $\mathbb{E}b8$ is followed by 3. $\mathbb{E}xe5$ $fxe5$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xd7$ $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xd4$ $exd4$ 6. $\mathbb{E}bl$ and White is winning the rook ending, e.g. 6... $\mathbb{E}c8$ 7.b5 $\mathbb{E}xc2$ 8.b6 $\mathbb{E}c8$ 9.b7 $\mathbb{E}b8$ 10. $\mathbb{E}c1\text{+--}$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ $\mathbb{E}c7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$ $fxe5$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xe8\text{!t!}$ $\mathbb{W}xe8$
 6. $\mathbb{E}xe5$ $\mathbb{W}g8$ 7. $\mathbb{E}e8$ $\mathbb{E}xc2$ 8. $\mathbb{E}xg8\text{!t!}$ $\mathbb{Q}xg8$
 9. $\mathbb{E}b1\text{+--}$

Ex. 21-7

A. Kotov – S. Gligoric

Zürich Candidates 1953

1... $e4!$

(3 points)

A typical positional sacrifice, clearing the e5-square for the queen's knight. The extra white

pawn will be securely blockaded. 1... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ (1 consolation point) is simply met by 2.a3.

2. $\mathbb{f}xe4$ $f4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$

The position after 4. $e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh7\text{t!}$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ would be unclear.

4... $\mathbb{W}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$
 $\mathbb{W}xe5$ 8.0–0–0 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 9. $h3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$

9... $a6\text{?}$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $b5\text{=}$

10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ a6 11. $\mathbb{Q}b1\text{!}$

White intends $\mathbb{Q}d2\text{-f3}$.

See Ex. 21-8.

Ex. 21-8

A. Kotov – S. Gligoric

Zürich Candidates 1953

1... $f3!$

(3 points)

Black does not want White to bring his knight to f3 and thereby break the black blockade.

However, Black has another good option in 1... $\mathbb{Q}h5\text{?}$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 3. $\mathbb{E}gl$ $\mathbb{Q}a4\text{!}$) 4.b3 $\mathbb{Q}d7\text{=}$ 2... $\mathbb{Q}a4\text{!}$ (also 3 points) and Black obtains sufficient counterplay.

2. $gxf3$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2$

3. $\mathbb{Q}e1\text{!?}$ $\mathbb{E}xf3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{W}g5\text{t!}$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$
 6. $\mathbb{W}xc3$ $\mathbb{Q}g3\text{=}$

3... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ b5 5. h4 $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 6. $\mathbb{E}gl$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$
 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{E}ab8$

The immediate 7...b4 would be a slight improvement: 8. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}a4\text{=}$.

And 7... $bxcc4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ a5 would also be very interesting.

8. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ b4 9. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 11. $\mathbb{W}h2$
 $\mathbb{E}xg3$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 13. $\mathbb{W}xe2$ $\mathbb{W}xg3$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}c1$
 a5 15. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 16. h5 $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{E}g8$
 18. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{W}g3$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ a4 20. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ a3

Black could have obtained good attacking chances with 20... b3t? 21. $axb3$ $axb3t$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{W}g7\text{=}$

21. b3

Black retains sufficient compensation for the two pawns, since he controls the dark squares.
 $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

Solutions

Ex. 21-9

E.Geller – V.Smyslov

USSR Ch, Moscow 1949

Just one more move and Black will blockade the white f4-pawn with the knight on f5. Then White would have no more active play. For that reason, Geller sacrifices his f-pawn.

1.f5!

(3 points)

1.e6 is not so good: 1...fxe6 2.Qd3 Qc4+ 1...Qxf5 2.Bf3 Qc4 3.Qcl a5 4.Qd3 h4 5.Qf2 Wh5 6.Wf4 g6 7.Qh3 Wh6 8.Wxh6 Qxh6 9.Qxh4 Qf5 10.Qf6 Qg7 11.Qh6±

White is intending Qf4xg6. Another good plan was 11.Qf1? followed by Bf4-h4.

Ex. 21-10

A.Tolush – A.Sokolsky

Leningrad 1938

1...b5!

(2 point)

An interesting positional sacrifice. But 1...Bfb8?? (also 2 points) would be just as good: after 2.cxd5 exd5 Black will continue with ...b5=.

2.cxb5 axb5 3.Wxb5 Bfb8 4.Wd3 Qa5 5.0–0 Wc6

Black has good compensation for the pawn.

Ex. 21-11

P.Johner – A.Nimzowitsch

Dresden 1926

1...h5!

(2 points)

'The start of the process of tying White up.' – Nimzowitsch

2.Qd2

Weaker is 2.Wh4 Qf5 3.Wg5 Qh7 4.Wxh5 Qg3+ (Nimzowitsch).

2...Wf5!

(another 1 point)

So as to wander off to h7; this was the original point of the restraining manoeuvre.

3.Qh2 Wh7! 4.a4 Qf5

Black's idea is 5...Qg4† 6.hxg4 hxg4† 7.Qg1 g3+. However, the immediate 4...a5!! is more accurate, preventing the possibility mentioned in the next note.

5.g3

5.a5!! would be better, and if 5...Qg4†, then 6.Qxg4 hxg4 7.axb6 gxh3 8.gxh3 Qh4 9.Wg3= (Larsen).

See Ex. 22-12.

Ex. 21-12

P.Johner – A.Nimzowitsch

Dresden 1926

1...a5!

(3 points)

Now White will have no counterplay on the queenside, leaving Black free to continue to prepare his attack on the kingside.

2.Qg1 Qh6 3.Qf1 Qd7 4.Qcl Wac8 5.d5

5.Qa2?? would be slightly better, although after 5...Qe6 6.d5 Qd7 Black retains good prospects on the kingside.

5...Qh8 6.Qd2

If 6.Qg2, then 6...Bg8 7.Qf2 g5.

6...Bg8 7.Qg2 g5 8.Qf1 Bg7

8...h4! would also be very strong: 9.gxh4 (9.fxg5 hxg3† 10.Wxg3 Qhg4+) 9...g4+–

9.Qa2 Qf5 10.Qh1 Bcg8 11.Wd1 gxf4!

12.exf4 Qc8 13.Wb3 Qa6 14.Qe2

14.Qd2 Bg6! 15.Qe1 Qg4† 16.hxg4 hxg4† 17.Qg2 Qxc4! 18.Wxc4 e3!–+ (Nimzowitsch)

14...Qh4! 15.Qe3

15.Qd2 Bc8! (15...Wf5? 16.Wd1! Qc8 17.Wf1) 16.Qxe4 (16.Wd1 Qxh3! 17.Qxh3 Wf5†+) 16...Wf5! 17.Qf2 Wh3†! 18.Qxh3 Qg4# (Nimzowitsch)

15...Qc8 16.Wc2 Qxh3!

16...Wf5 17.Qg2

17.Qxe4

17.Qxh3 Wf5† 18.Qh2 Qg4† 19.Qh3 Qf2† 20.Qh2 Wh3# (Nimzowitsch)

Solutions

17... $\mathbb{Q}f5$

'The best, because ...h5-h4 can now no longer be stopped; after the fall of the h3-pawn there is no hope of any defence.'

– Nimzowitsch

18. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ h4 20. $\mathbb{Q}gg2$ hxg3†

21. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}e8!$

White resigned. The threat is 24... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{Q}h1†$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2†$! and 24. $\mathbb{Q}e1$ is followed by 24... $\mathbb{Q}f3†$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}h1†$ – (Nimzowitsch).

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 29

- | | | |
|----|------------------|-------------|
| 24 | points and above | → Excellent |
| 19 | points and above | → Good |
| 14 | points | → Pass mark |

If you scored less than 14 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ Decoying the king
- ✓ Intuitive sacrifices

Dragging the king out

Dragging the king out is an important tactical motif in many beautiful combinations, often linked with great material sacrifices. Most such combinations make use of decoying the king onto squares which are dangerous for it.

In his work *Chess Tactics*, Alexander Kotov described this combinational motif in a very apposite manner: ‘The attacking pieces do not always succeed in trapping the opposing king. Behind its wall of pawns, the king feels safe and secure. But there is one tactical method: the king is “pitilessly” dragged out from its hiding place by a sacrifice and driven in front of its wall of pawns, not infrequently being chased right into the centre. The usual end of such a “stroll” is the mate of the king which is hunted down.’

Ed.Lasker – G.Thomas

London 1912

1.d4 f5 2.e4 fxe4 3.Qc3 Qf6 4.Qg5 e6

4...d5 is met by 5.Qxf6 exf6 6.Wh5† g6 7.Wxd5±.

The most important alternative is 4...Qc6.

5.Qxe4 Qe7 6.Qxf6 Qxf6 7.Qf3

7.Wh5† g6 8.Wh6 b6 9.Qf3 Qb7 10.Qd3 We7 11.0–0–0 Qa6?! 12.c3 Qg7 13.We3 0–0–0 14.Qb1 Qb8 15.Bh1 Qc6 led to a better position for Black in the game R.Ash – A.Yusupov, Winnipeg 1986.

7...0–0

7...d5 8.Qxf6† Wxf6 9.c3 0–0 10.Qe2 Qc6 11.0–0 a6 12.Wd2 Qd7 13.Bae1± S.Temirbaev – A.Yusupov, Yerevan 1996.

Black would be better preparing to castle long with 7...Qc6 followed by ...b6, ...Qb7 and ...We7.

8.Qd3 b6?!

Better is 8...Qc6

9.Qe5 Qb7?

Black should play 9...Qxe5 10.dxe5 Qc6, when he can meet 11.Wh5 with 11...Bf5.

10.Wh5! We7?

10...Qxe5 was necessary.

Diagram 22-1

11.Wxh7†!!

Diagram 22-1



Dragging the king out

Edward Lasker now forces the opposing king to go on a long journey. The play from now on is forced.

Black had only considered 11. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ g6 12. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ hxg6 13. $\mathbb{W}xg6\#$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4\#$ or 11. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$ gxf6.

11... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$

12... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$

13. $\mathbb{Q}eg4\#$!

All that follows happens with check. Such forcing variations are easier to calculate. And of course nothing has a higher level of priority than responding to a check!

13... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 14. $\mathbb{h}4\#$

14. $f4\#$ also leads to mate: 14... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ (or 14... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 15. $g3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$) 15. $g3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (15... $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 16. $h4\#$) 16. 0–0#

14... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 15. $g3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$

Diagram 22-2

White wins more quickly after 16. 0–0 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$ or 16. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$, but such quiet moves need to be calculated very carefully. Edward Lasker prefers the forcing way. It is better to aim for a safer win than for a quicker one!

16... $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$

Of course there are situations in which a player cannot calculate a forced mate. Nevertheless, an exposed king position means great danger. In the next example, Garry Kasparov boldly played an intuitive rook sacrifice against his future successor on the world throne, Veselin Topalov, and by doing so created a masterpiece. Extensive comments to this brilliant game can be found in Igor Stohl's book *Instructive Modern Chess Masterpieces*. In what follows we shall concentrate on only some of the main lines of this famous game.

Diagram 22-3

G.Kasparov – V.Topalov

Wijk aan Zee 1999

1. $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$ cxd4?

Black plays very boldly, but goes wrong. He should content himself with equality. 1... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ is better: 2. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xd6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2=$

Diagram 22-2

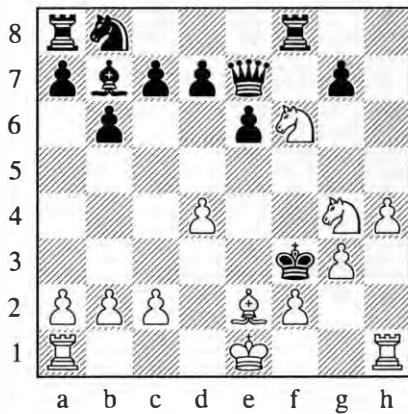
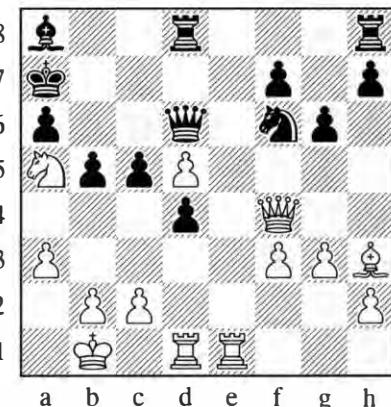


Diagram 22-3



2. $\mathbb{E}e7\#!!$

But not 2. $\mathbb{W}xd4?$ $\mathbb{W}b6!$ 3. $\mathbb{E}e7\# \mathbb{Q}d7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xd7\#$ (4. $\mathbb{W}c3 \mathbb{W}g1\#-$) 4... $\mathbb{E}xd7$ 5. $\mathbb{W}xh8 \mathbb{W}g1\#-$.

2... $\mathbb{Q}b6$

2... $\mathbb{W}xe7?$ would be bad: 3. $\mathbb{W}xd4\# \mathbb{Q}b8$ 4. $\mathbb{W}b6\# \mathbb{Q}b7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#-$

2... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ is followed by 3. $\mathbb{W}xd4 \mathbb{Q}d7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd7 \mathbb{Q}xd5$ 5. $c4 \mathbb{W}xe7$ 6. $\mathbb{W}b6\# \mathbb{Q}a8$ 7. $\mathbb{W}xa6\# \mathbb{Q}b8$ 8. $\mathbb{W}b6\# \mathbb{Q}a8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c6\# \mathbb{Q}xc6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xc6\#-$.

3. $\mathbb{W}xd4\# \mathbb{Q}xa5$

Black accepts the challenge. After 3... $\mathbb{W}c5$ 4. $\mathbb{W}xf6\# \mathbb{W}d6$, Kasparov had seen a powerful continuation: 5. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$! and if 5... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$, then 6. $b4\#-$.

4. $b4\# \mathbb{Q}a4$ **Diagram 22-4****5. $\mathbb{W}c3\#$**

Kavalek's idea of 5. $\mathbb{Q}a7\#$ is even stronger, and 5... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ would be followed by 6. $\mathbb{Q}xa6\#!! \mathbb{W}xa6$ 7. $\mathbb{W}b2 \mathbb{Q}c3\#$ 8. $\mathbb{W}xc3 \mathbb{Q}d5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b2\#$ (threatening $\mathbb{W}b3\#$) 9... $\mathbb{W}e6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xe6 fxe6$ 11. $\mathbb{W}b3\# \mathbb{Q}xb3$ 12. $cxb3\#$.

5... $\mathbb{W}xd5$

5... $\mathbb{Q}xd5?$ is wrong, because of 6. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ with the threat of $\mathbb{W}b3\#$.

6. $\mathbb{Q}a7$

Threatening mate. Now 6. $\mathbb{Q}b2?$ would lose to 6... $\mathbb{W}d4\#$.

6... $\mathbb{Q}b7$

The only move.

7. $\mathbb{E}xb7$

7. $\mathbb{W}c7?$ leads only to perpetual check after 7... $\mathbb{W}d1\#-$.

7... $\mathbb{W}c4?$

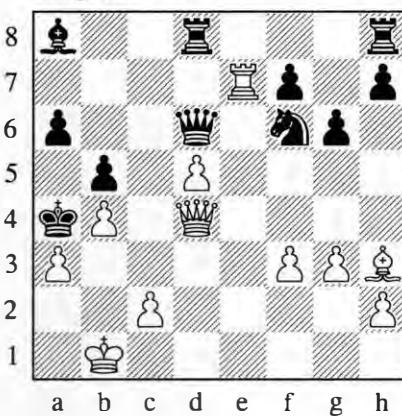
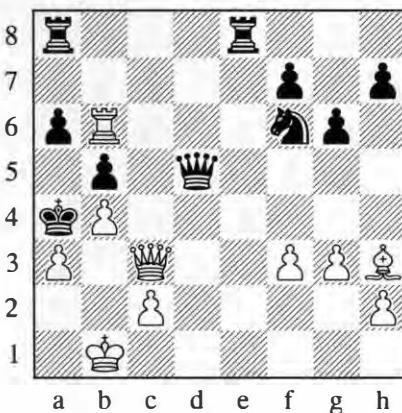
7... $\mathbb{E}he8!$ is more resilient: 8. $\mathbb{Q}b6 \mathbb{E}a8$

Diagram 22-5

White has to find a difficult prophylactic move here, in order to deprive Black of the most important defensive resource of ... $\mathbb{W}c4$. The move is 9. $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$ and Black is powerless against the threat of $\mathbb{E}d6$. For example, 9... $\mathbb{E}e1\#$ (or 9... $\mathbb{E}ec8$ 10. $\mathbb{W}xc8\#-$) 10. $\mathbb{W}xe1 \mathbb{Q}d7$ 11. $\mathbb{E}b7\#!! \mathbb{W}xb7$ 12. $\mathbb{W}d1\# \mathbb{Q}xa3$ 13. $c3$ followed by $\mathbb{W}c1\#$ with a quick mate (analysis by Ligterink).

8. $\mathbb{W}xf6 \mathbb{Q}xa3$

The more stubborn 8... $\mathbb{E}d1\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \mathbb{E}a8$ (9... $\mathbb{W}d4\#$ 10. $\mathbb{W}xd4 \mathbb{E}xd4$ 11. $\mathbb{E}xf7 \mathbb{E}d6$ 12. $\mathbb{E}e7$ and then $\mathbb{Q}e6\#-$)

Diagram 22-4**Diagram 22-5 (analysis)**

Dragging the king out

10. $\mathbb{W}b6 \mathbb{W}d4\#$ also leads to a lost ending: 11. $\mathbb{W}xd4$ $\mathbb{B}xd4$ 12. $\mathbb{B}xf7$ $a5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $axb4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 15. $axb4\#$ $\mathbb{B}xb4$ (15... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 16. $\mathbb{B}xh7\#$) 16. $c3!+-$
If 8... $\mathbb{B}a8?$ then 9. $\mathbb{W}b6$ $a5$ 10. $\mathbb{B}a7+-$.

Diagram 22-6

9. $\mathbb{W}xa6\#$

Kasparov now gives chase to the king.

9... $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 10. $c3\#$! $\mathbb{Q}xc3$

10... $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 11. $\mathbb{W}a2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 12. $\mathbb{W}b2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 13. $\mathbb{B}e7\#$ +-
leads to a quick mate.

11. $\mathbb{W}a1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$

11... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 12. $\mathbb{W}b2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ (12... $\mathbb{W}b3$ 13. $\mathbb{B}xb5\#$ +-)
13. $\mathbb{W}a3\#$ $\mathbb{W}a4$ 14. $\mathbb{B}a7\#$ +- and White wins the queen.

12. $\mathbb{W}b2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$

12... $\mathbb{Q}e3?$ loses more quickly: 13. $\mathbb{B}e7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$
14. $\mathbb{W}g2\#$

12... $\mathbb{Q}e1$ is met by 13. $\mathbb{B}e7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$ +-.

13. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$

And Kasparov brings his bishop into the attack.

13... $\mathbb{B}d2$!

13... $\mathbb{W}xf1$ loses to 14. $\mathbb{W}c2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 15. $\mathbb{B}e7\#$.

Diagram 22-7

14. $\mathbb{B}d7!!$

The final tactical trick in this exciting game. White wins material.

14... $\mathbb{B}xd7$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$

The threats are $\mathbb{W}c1\#$ and $\mathbb{W}e2\#$! Black has to surrender an exchange, after which White wins without much trouble.

15... $bxc4$ 16. $\mathbb{W}xh8$ $\mathbb{B}d3$ 17. $\mathbb{W}a8$ $c3$ 18. $\mathbb{W}a4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$
19. $f4$ $f5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{B}d2$ 21. $\mathbb{W}a7$

1-0

In the exercises you should try first of all to discover the method of dragging out the king. Then calculate the variations. Try first to find an attack with checks. Quiet moves are normally only considered if you can either create a threat of mate or if you have to prevent the king from retreating.

The final five positions are particularly hard to calculate. Try to work on each for 10 minutes without moving the pieces and note down your variations. After that time you can then analyse these positions on the board (at which point you may of course move the pieces).

Diagram 22-6

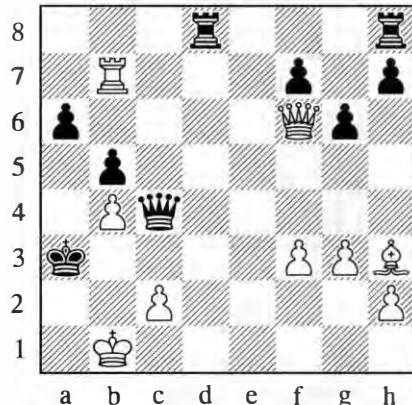
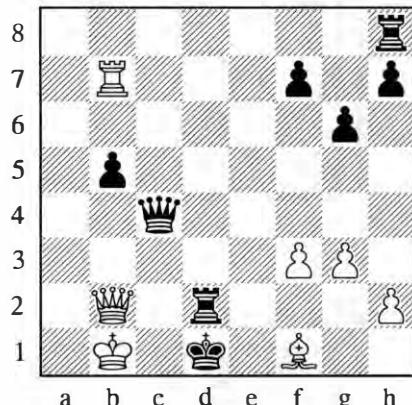
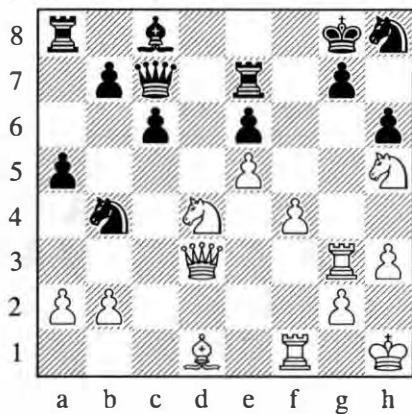


Diagram 22-7

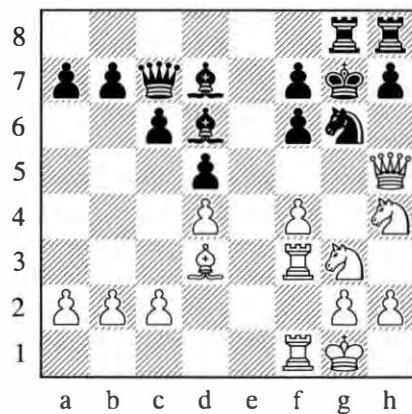


Exercises

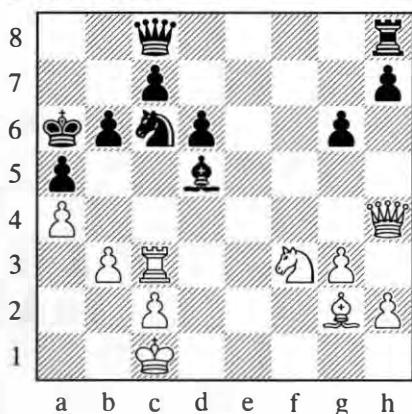
► Ex. 22-1 ◀ ★ △



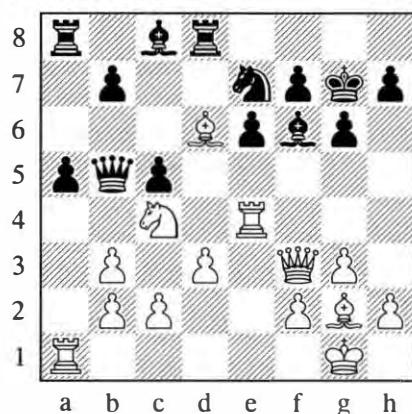
► Ex. 22-4 ◀ ★★ △



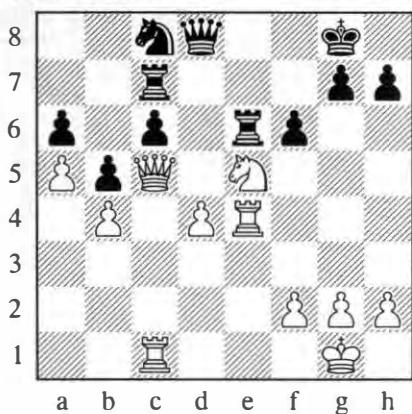
► Ex. 22-2 ◀ ★★ △



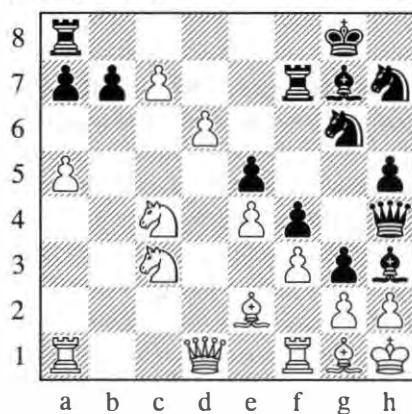
► Ex. 22-5 ◀ ★★★ △



► Ex. 22-3 ◀ ★★★ △

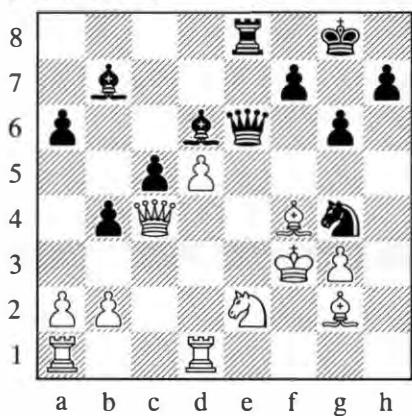


► Ex. 22-6 ◀ ★★ ▼

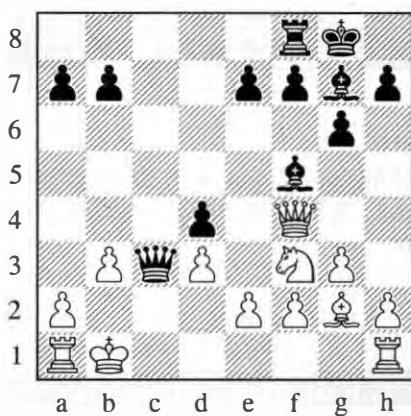


Exercises

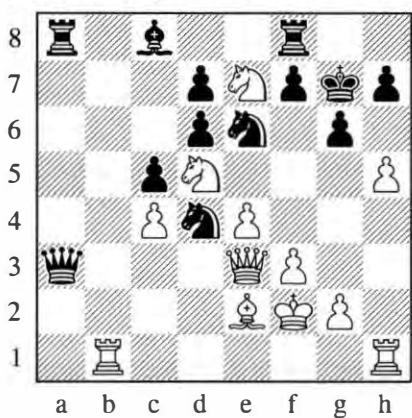
► Ex. 22-7 ◀ ★★★



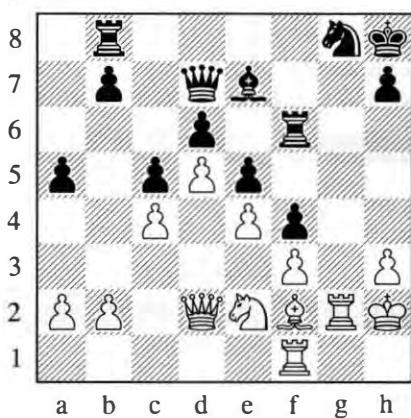
► Ex. 22-10 ◀ ★★★



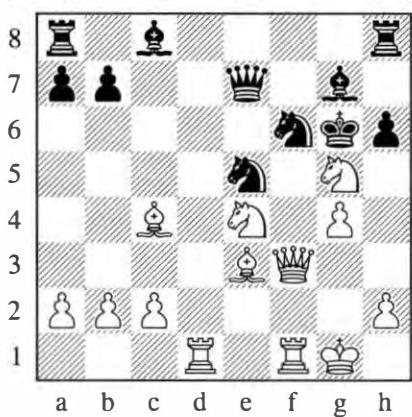
► Ex. 22-8 ◀ ★★★



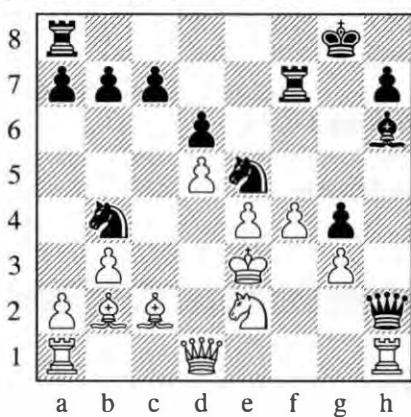
► Ex. 22-11 ◀ ★★★★



► Ex. 22-9 ◀ ★★★



► Ex. 22-12 ◀ ★★★★



Solutions

Ex. 22-1

Variation from the game

A.Alekhine – A.West

Portsmouth 1923

1. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$

1. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ is equally good: 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ –
1... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 2. $\mathbb{B}xg7\#$! $\mathbb{B}xg7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$
4. $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$

(1 point)

Ex. 22-2

G.Kasparian – Manwelian

Yerevan 1936

1. $\mathbb{B}xc6!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 2. $\mathbb{W}c4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$

Better is 2... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 3. $\mathbb{W}xc6\pm$.

3. $\mathbb{W}xc6\#$! $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$
6. $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$ –

(another 1 point)

Next comes 7. $c3\#$.

Ex. 22-3

M.Euwe – A.Alekhine

Zürich 1934

1. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$!!

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{W}e8$

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ loses after 2. $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (2... $g6$
3. $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$ –) 3. $\mathbb{B}xe6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 4. $\mathbb{B}e1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$
5. $\mathbb{W}c5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{W}f5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 7. $\mathbb{W}e6\#$.

(1 point for this variation)

2. $\mathbb{B}xe6$ $\mathbb{W}xe6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$!

(another 1 point)

3... $\mathbb{W}e4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xc6\#$ –

Ex. 22-4

G.Mackenzie – J.Mason

Paris 1878

1. $\mathbb{W}h6\#$!!

(1 point)

1. $\mathbb{Q}hf5\#$ is not so strong, due to 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8$.
1... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}hf5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$
4. $\mathbb{g}4\#$
Or 4. $\mathbb{B}h3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 5. $\mathbb{B}xh4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6. $\mathbb{B}h6\#$.
4... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 5. $\mathbb{B}g3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$
(another 1 point)

Ex. 22-5

T.Petrosian – L.Pachman

Bled 1961

1. $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$!!

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$
2... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 3. $\mathbb{B}h4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 5. $\mathbb{B}h4\#$
3. $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$

(another 2 points)

Only 1 point for 3. $\mathbb{B}h4\#$ – or 3. $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$ –.

The game move leads to mate more quickly:

a) 3... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4. $\mathbb{h}4\#$ (or 4. $\mathbb{f}4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$
6. $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$) 4... $\mathbb{B}xh4$ 5. $\mathbb{g}xh4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$
b) 3... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 4. $\mathbb{B}h4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 5. $\mathbb{f}4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$
c) 3... $\mathbb{e}5$ 4. $\mathbb{h}4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$)
5. $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xg4\#$

1-0

Ex. 22-6

L.Ftacnik – O.Cvitan

Bundesliga 1997

An original idea. First of all, the white king has to come out...

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg2\#$! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{W}h3\#$!!

(1 point)

But not 2... $\mathbb{Q}g5?$ on account of 3. $\mathbb{B}f2!$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$

... And then it is shut in again.

3... $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}h4\#$

(another 1 point)

White resigned. 5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ is followed by 5... $g2\#$.

Solutions

Ex. 22-7

R.Cifuentes – V.Zvjaginsev

Wijk aan Zee 1995

1... $\mathbb{W}e3\#!!$

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$

4... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$

4... $h6\#!$

(another 1 point)

4... $\mathbb{Q}g7\#?$ is not so accurate, because of

5. $\mathbb{Q}h1.$

5. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$

5... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$

5... $\mathbb{Q}e5$

(another 1 point)

White cannot defend against both the threats: ... $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$ and ... $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$.

0-1

Ex. 22-8

P.Schmidt – Richter

Heidelberg 1946

1. $\mathbb{W}h6\#!!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 2. $hxg6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h5\#!$

(another 1 point)

3... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 4. $f4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2$

If 4... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$, then 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$

(6... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 7. $gxf3\#$) 7. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xh4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$

9. $\mathbb{Q}e8\#!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (or 10... $\mathbb{Q}f6$)

11. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#.$

5. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$

5... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$

6. $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e8\#!$

(another 1 point)

7... $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$

Or 8... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#.$

9. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$

Ex. 22-9

Begun – Marjakin

USSR 1967

1. $\mathbb{W}f5\#!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 2. $gxh5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h4\#$

3... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 5. $h4\#$

4. $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$

(another 1 point)

4... $\mathbb{Q}fg4$

4... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 5. $h4\#$ or 4... $\mathbb{Q}eg4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$

6. $\mathbb{Q}f1\#.$

5. $\mathbb{Q}xg4\#!$

(another 1 point)

5... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$

5... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$

6. $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$

Ex. 22-10

Rudakov – A.Kotov

Tula 1929

1... $\mathbb{Q}xd3\#!$

(1 point)

2. $exd3$ $\mathbb{W}xd3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b2$

3. $\mathbb{Q}c1?$ is bad, due to 3... $\mathbb{Q}c8\#-$.

3... $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a3$

4. $\mathbb{Q}b1?$ loses quickly after 4... $d3$.

4... $\mathbb{Q}c5\#!$

(another 1 point)

4... $\mathbb{Q}a5\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $d3\#$ is not so clear, on account of 6. $\mathbb{Q}d4!\#$ (but not 6. $\mathbb{Q}b1?\mathbb{W}c3-$).

5. $b4$

Other moves are no better:

a) 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $d3\#-$

b) 5. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $b5\#$ (5... $a5$ wins even more quickly) 6. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{W}b6\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $a5\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{W}c5\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $d3\#-$.

5... $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $b5\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$

After 7. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ the threat of ... $\mathbb{W}b6\#$ is decisive.

7... $e5\#-$

(another 1 point)

Solutions

8. $\mathbb{Q}c1 \mathbb{B}b8\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a6 \mathbb{W}xb4$ 10. $\mathbb{W}c7 \mathbb{W}a4\#$

Or 10... $\mathbb{B}b6\#$.

11. $\mathbb{W}a5 \mathbb{W}c6\#$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xa7 \mathbb{B}a8\#$

Ex. 22-11

Y.Averbakh – A.Kotov

Zürich Candidates 1953

1... $\mathbb{W}xh3\#$!!

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{Q}xh3 \mathbb{B}h6\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}f6\#$

(another 1 point)

3... $\mathbb{B}f8$ is equally good. After 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf4 \mathbb{Q}f6\#$ we have:

- a) 5. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}e8\#$! 6. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{B}g8\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ $\mathbb{B}gxg6\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}g7\#$
- b) 5. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{B}g8\#$! 6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ (6. $\mathbb{Q}xh6 \mathbb{Q}f8\#$) 6... $\mathbb{Q}g4!$

(another 1 point for spotting this idea)

7. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (7. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ $\mathbb{B}hxg6\#$) 7... $\mathbb{B}hg6!$ (threatening ... $\mathbb{B}f8\#$) 8. $\mathbb{W}g5 \mathbb{Q}xg5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xg4 \mathbb{Q}f4\#$ –

4. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}d7$

4... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ also wins: 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}h4 \mathbb{B}f8\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ $\mathbb{B}fxf6\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg4 \mathbb{B}fg6\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{B}h5\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{B}hxg5\#$) 5... $\mathbb{B}g8!$ See line 'b' in the previous note.

5. $\mathbb{B}g5$

5. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ loses more quickly: 5... $\mathbb{B}f8\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{B}g8\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ $\mathbb{B}gxg6\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{B}h5\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}xg5\#$ –

5... $\mathbb{B}f8\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}f6\#$

(another 1 point)

7. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}g8\#$

In time trouble, Kotov repeated moves a few times, in order to make the time control safely and then to look for the way to win in peace and calm.

8. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}f6\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}xd5\#$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}f6\#$
11. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}g8\#$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}f6\#$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}g8\#$

14. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}xg5\#$ – 15. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$

Nor do other moves help:

a) 15. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}e7$ and now:

a1) 16. $\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{Q}f6\#$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}g4\#$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xg4 \mathbb{B}g8\#$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}f6\#$

a2) 16. $\mathbb{Q}h5 \mathbb{Q}f6\#$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ (17. $\mathbb{Q}xf6 \mathbb{B}fxf6$)
18. $\mathbb{Q}gl \mathbb{B}fg6\#$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{B}h5\#$ – 17... $\mathbb{B}xh5\#$
18. $\mathbb{Q}h4 \mathbb{B}xh4\#$ –

b) 15. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}f6\#$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}e8\#$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ (17. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{B}g8\#$) 17... $\mathbb{B}g8\#$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}xh6 \mathbb{Q}f6$
19. $\mathbb{Q}xf4 exf4$ 20. $\mathbb{W}xf4 \mathbb{B}g6\#$ (Kotov)

c) 15. $\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{B}xh1$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ (16. $\mathbb{W}xd6 \mathbb{Q}h6\#$)
17. $\mathbb{Q}xg5 \mathbb{Q}f7\#$ – 16... $\mathbb{h}6\#$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{Q}e7$
18. $\mathbb{Q}h4 \mathbb{B}g8\#$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}h5 \mathbb{Q}h7\#$ –

15... $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$

Threatening ... $\mathbb{B}g7\#$ followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$.

16. $\mathbb{Q}h4$

16. $\mathbb{Q}xf4 \mathbb{B}g7\#$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ $\mathbb{B}gxg6\#$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}e7\#$

16... $\mathbb{B}g6\#$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h5 \mathbb{B}fg7$

The threat is now ... $\mathbb{B}h6\#$.

18. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{B}xg5\#$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}h4 \mathbb{Q}f6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{B}xg3$

21. $\mathbb{W}xd6 \mathbb{B}3g6$ 22. $\mathbb{W}b8\#$ $\mathbb{B}g8$

0-1

Ex. 22-12

L.Polugaevsky – R.Nezhmetdinov

Sochi 1958

1... $\mathbb{B}xf4!!$

(2 points)

2. $\mathbb{B}xh2$

The queen sacrifice has to be accepted:

- a) 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf4 \mathbb{Q}xc2\#$ –
- b) 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf4 \mathbb{Q}xf4\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{W}f2\#$)
4. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{W}c5\#$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}xc2\#$ –
- c) 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5 \mathbb{B}f3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{W}f2\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{W}c5\#$
2... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}g7\#$

(another 2 points)

This threatens ... $b5$ and then ... $\mathbb{Q}ec6\#$, as well as 4... $c5\#$ 5. $dxc6$ $bxc6$ followed by 6... $c5\#$.

3... $c5\#$! (also 2 points) is equally good:
4. $dxc6$ $b5!$ (threatening ... $\mathbb{Q}ec6\#$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ (5. $\mathbb{W}d3 \mathbb{B}xd3\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd3 \mathbb{Q}f3\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{Q}d2\#$)
5... $\mathbb{Q}exc6\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{Q}g7\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{B}xd3\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{B}xd1\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xd1 \mathbb{Q}xb2$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xd6 \mathbb{B}e8\#$ –

4.a4

This move loses quickly, but, as the following analysis shows, White could no longer save the

Solutions

game, even with his extra queen:

- a) 4.♕c3 b5 5.♕xb4 ♜c6#
- b) 4.♕g1 ♜xg3 5.♕e2 ♜f3 6.♕g1 ♜ed3† 7.♕c4 ♜xb2† 8.♕xb4 ♜c3† 9.♕a3 b5! (threatening ...b4#) 10.♗d4 (10.b4 a5!—+ Nezhmetdinov) 10...♗xd4 11.♕xf3 ♜c3 12.b4 ♜c4† 13.♕b3 ♜xa1 14.♕g5 g3—+
- c) 4.♕f4 b5! (threatening ...♕ec6#) 5.♗xf3 ♜xf3† 6.♕e3 ♜xb2—+
- d) 4.♕c3 ♜ed3†! (4...♜xg3! also wins) 5.♕c4 (or 5.e5?! ♜xe5†—+) 5...♜xb2† 6.♕xb4 ♜xc3† 7.♕a3 b5! 8.b4 a5 9.bxa5 (9.♕b3 a4† 10.♕a3 ♜c4#) 9...♜c4† 10.♕b3 ♜xa5† 11.♕a3 ♜c4† 12.♕b3 ♜a3#
- e) 4.♗f2 c5†! 5.dxc6 ♜ed3† 6.♕c4 b5† 7.♕xb5 ♜b8† 8.♕a4 (8.♕a5 ♜xc6† 9.♕a4

- 8.♕b4† 10.♕a3 ♜xb2#) 8...♜xb2† 9.♕a3 ♜xd1 10.♕xd1 ♜xa1—+
- f) 4.♕d3 ♜exd3† 5.♕c4 ♜xb2† 6.♕xb4 ♜xd1 7.♕xd1 ♜e8—+

4...c5†

Apparently White wanted to draw the teeth from the idea ...b7-b5. But Black has another idea up his sleeve!

5.dxc6 bxc6

The threat is ...c5#.

6.♕d3 ♜exd3† 7.♕c4

Or 7.e5 ♜xe5† 8.♕e4 d5#.

- 7...d5† 8.♕xd5 ♜xd5† 9.♕b5 ♜b8† 10.♕a5 ♜c6†

And White resigned, just before mate. A masterpiece by the brilliant chess artist.

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 33

28	points and above	→ Excellent
23	points and above	→ Good
17	points	→ Pass mark

If you scored less than 17 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ The double fianchetto
- ✓ Typical ideas and model games

Reti/English Opening

It is often very difficult to separate one specific opening from another. This is the case for the Reti Opening (1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ and g3) and the English Opening (the variations with 1.c4 e6) which are very closely related to each other.

In this chapter we shall examine a system with a double fianchetto. White has a choice of various move orders in order to bring about this system. Frequently it is the king's bishop which is fianchettoed first, in order to bring more pressure to bear on d5, but the most important piece for White can turn out to be the dark-squared bishop, which often operates down an open diagonal.

This quiet system is, nevertheless, very venomous. It will come as no surprise that Kasparov played it at a most decisive moment in his chess career. In order to defend his title of World Champion against Anatoly Karpov, he absolutely had to win the final game. The advantage of this double fianchetto system is that White can play a long game in which he gradually increases the pressure on his opponent.

G.Kasparov – A.Karpov

World Ch(24), Seville 1987

1.c4 e6 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3.g3 d5 4.b3

As is typical for the double fianchetto system, White defends his c-pawn, to draw the teeth from the variation with 4...dxc4 and prepare the second fianchetto.

4... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 0–0 6.0–0 b6

6...c5 is the most important alternative. After 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 8.e3 d4 9.exd4 cxd4 10. $\mathbb{E}el$ we get a position resembling a Modern Benoni with reversed colours. White is actively placed and should play on the queenside and in the centre (d3, $\mathbb{Q}a3$ -c2, a3, b4).

7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8.e3

Usually White tries to play the position without the move d4, since the dark-squared bishop is very well placed on the open diagonal.

8... $\mathbb{Q}bd7$

Reti/English Opening

In the event of 9.d3 Black is planning to exchange on c4 and provoke the move d4, by means of ... $\mathbb{Q}c5$. Other possible defensive systems are 8...c5 and 8...dxc4 9.bxc4 c5 followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$.

9. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$

Diagram 23-1

Karpov only needed a draw from this game and so had nothing against a simplification of the position.

10. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$?

On the other hand, Kasparov is, of course, aiming for a more complicated position.

10...a5

After 10... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 11.d4!? c5 12. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ White is slightly more active.

10...c5 would be a logical continuation.

11.d3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$

This is the idea behind ... $\mathbb{Q}e4$. Black wants either to exchange the dark-squared bishops or to provoke d3-d4.

12. $\mathbb{W}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 13. $\mathbb{W}xb2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 14.cxd5 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$

Diagram 23-2

Karpov does not want to shut in his bishop. But 14...exd5?! is possible. After 15.d4 c5 16.dxc5 bxc5 White could play against the hanging pawns.

15.d4!

After the exchange of the dark-squared bishops, White no longer has anything against this move in the centre.

15...c5

Otherwise White could attack the pawn on c7.

16. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$ $\mathbb{E}c8?$

16...c4?! 17. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ b5! 18. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ exd5 19. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6\infty$ is better. But Karpov is trying to play quietly, and in doing so he loses the struggle for the initiative.

17. $\mathbb{Q}f4$

Attacking the black pieces on the d-file.

17... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$

17...c4?! 18. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ exd5 19.bxc4 dxc4 comes too late, on account of 20.a4!±.

18. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 19. $\mathbb{E}ac1$

Diagram 23-3

White has a small but lasting advantage.

19... $\mathbb{Q}fd8$ 20.dxc5 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 21.b4!

Kasparov has an active bishop and wants to open the position on the queenside.

Diagram 23-1

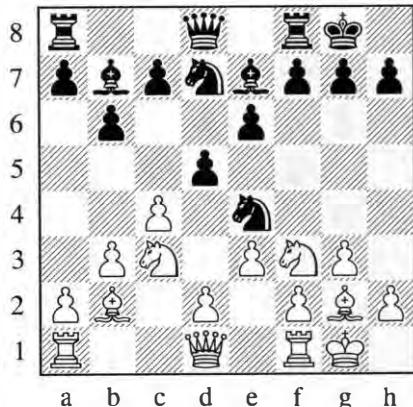


Diagram 23-2

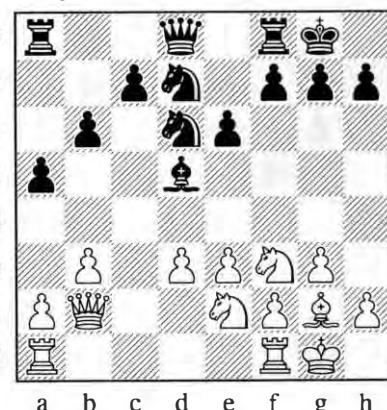
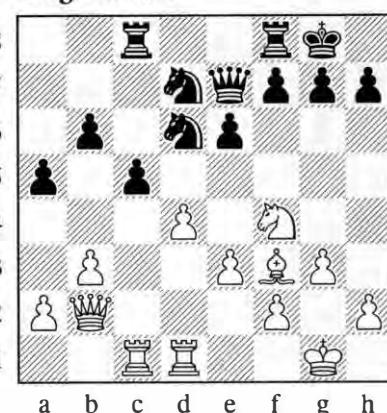


Diagram 23-3



Opening 4

Diagram 23-4

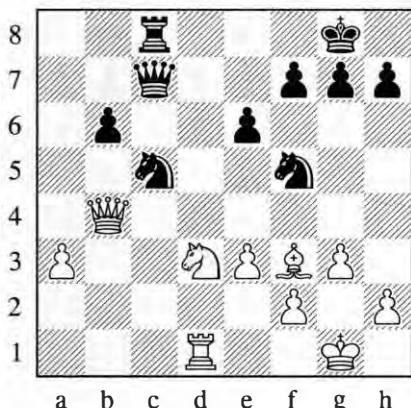


Diagram 23-5

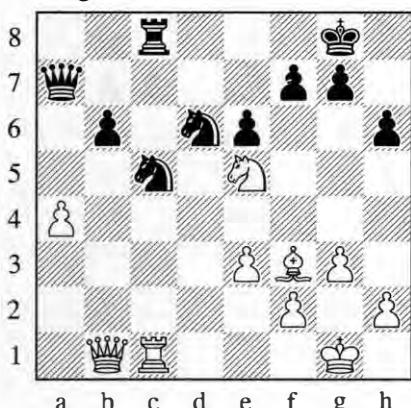
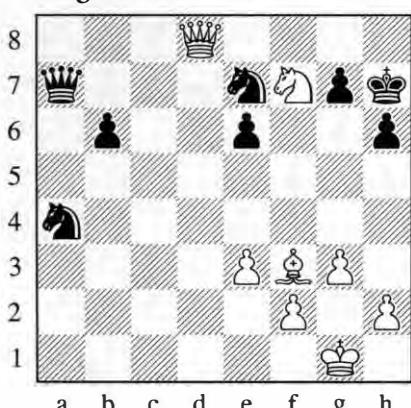


Diagram 23-6



21...axb4 22.♗xb4 ♜a7

Since the white bishop is controlling the long diagonal, Black has more problems with the defence of his b-pawn than White does with the protection of the a-pawn.

23.a3 ♖f5 24.♗b1 ♗xd1† 25.♗xd1 ♜c7

25...♜a5 is answered by 26.♖c1±.

26.♘d3!±

Diagram 23-4

Attacking the strong knight on c5.

26...h6?!

26...g6 would be safer.

27.♖c1 ♖e7?!

Not 27...♘xd3? 28.♗xc7 ♗xc7, because of 29.♕e4! ♖c1† 30.♔g2 ♖e1† 31.♔h3+- . But 27...♘d6!± is an improvement.

28.♗b5 ♖f5

Karpov waits.

29.a4!?

Threatening to play a5.

29...♘d6 30.♗b1 ♜a7

30...♛d8?! is an alternative.

31.♘e5!

Diagram 23-5

Now Kasparov sharpens the position.

31...♛xa4?!

Karpov wants to simplify the position, but underestimates the danger. 31...♛xa4 is also very dangerous after 32.♗xb6. The correct move is 31...♘f5?! and if 32.♗c6 ♛xa4 33.♗xb6, then 33...♘d3=.

32.♗xc8† ♖xc8 33.♛d1?

Kasparov does not exploit his first opportunity. 33.♛b5! would be better: 33...♔h7! (33...♘d6 34.♗c6+-; 33...♔f8 34.♗c6 ♛a8 35.♗d3! g6 36.♗d4!+-) 34.♗c6 ♛a8 35.♗d3† (35.♗g2?! is also interesting) 35...f5 (35...g6 36.♗d7 ♔g7 37.♔e5+-) 36.♗d8 (threatening ♘e7) 36...♘c5 37.♗g2! with a strong attack.

33...♘e7??

33...♘c5! would save him. 34.♗d8† ♔h7 35.♗xc8? is followed by 35...♛a1† and then ...♛xe5.

34.♛d8† ♔h7 35.♗xf7±

Diagram 23-6

The black kingside has been decisively weakened and Kasparov went on to win. Here is the rest of the

game, without comments.

35... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 36. $\mathbb{W}e8$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 37. $\mathbb{W}xa4$ $\mathbb{W}xf7$ 38. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$
 39. $\mathbb{W}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 40. $\mathbb{W}xb6$ $\mathbb{W}f6$ 41. $\mathbb{W}b5$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 42. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ g6
 43. $\mathbb{W}a5$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 44. $\mathbb{W}c5$ $\mathbb{W}f7$ 45.h4 h5? 46. $\mathbb{W}c6$ $\mathbb{W}e7$
 47. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{W}f7$ 48. $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 49.e4 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 50. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$
 51. $\mathbb{W}e5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 52. $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 53. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 54. $\mathbb{Q}c6$
 $\mathbb{W}a7$ 55. $\mathbb{W}b4!$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 56. $\mathbb{W}b7!$ $\mathbb{W}d8$ 57.e5!+– $\mathbb{W}a5$
 58. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{W}c5$ 59. $\mathbb{W}f7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 60. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{W}d5\#$ 61. $\mathbb{Q}h2$
 $\mathbb{W}c5$ 62. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{W}c8$ 63. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{W}c5$ 64. $\mathbb{Q}g2$

1–0

There is one typical mistake made by many players – they simply learn the opening moves by rote. But as soon as they are out of their preparation, they no longer have any understanding of the position which has arisen. **Even more important than learning specific variations is understanding the typical middlegame positions and being familiar with the correct plans.**

Study games by strong players and find for yourself some model games which illustrate important plans or ideas in the opening and the middlegame. Here is just such a model game.

E.Lobron – J.Timman

Brussels (rapid) 1992

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2.c4 e6 3.g3 d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$

4.b3 is simpler if you want to play the double fianchetto system, since it allows White to avoid certain lines with ...dxc4.

4... $\mathbb{Q}e7$

Here Black could deviate with 4...dxc4.

5.0–0 0–0 6.b3 b6 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8.e3 dxc4

The other important variation is 8...c5 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ and now:

a) 9...d4?! 10.exd4 cxd4 11. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ d3 12. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$
 13. $\mathbb{Q}xg2\pm$ ($\Delta\mathbb{W}f3$) – ECO.

Diagram 23-7 (analysis)

b) 9... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 10.cxd5 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$
 (11...exd5 12.d4) 12.d4 We shall see in the test how White should handle this position.

9.bxc4 c5 10. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 11.d3

A standard move. But 11. $\mathbb{Q}c3$!?, $\mathbb{Q}b4$!?, 12.d4± is also possible.

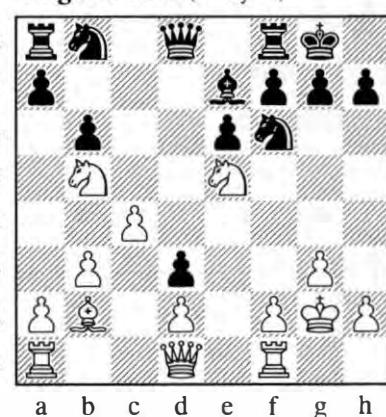


Diagram 23-8

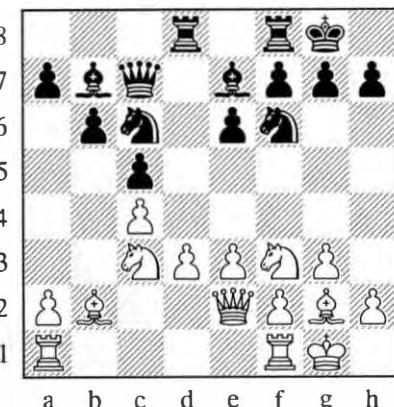


Diagram 23-9

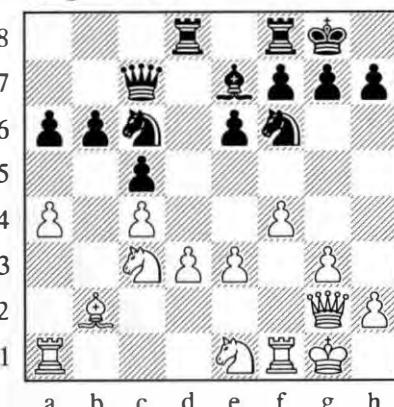


Diagram 23-10

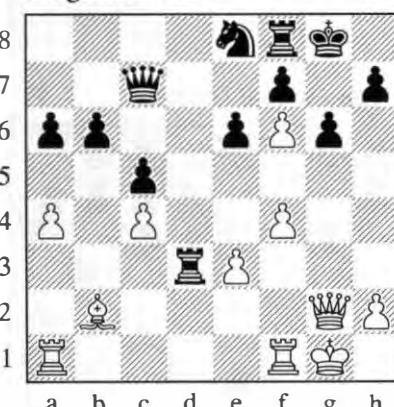
11... $\mathbb{W}c7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{R}ad8$

Diagram 23-8

13. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$?

An important plan for White. He is preparing f2-f4 and operations on the kingside. These activities are supported by the strong bishop on b2.

13... $a6!$?

Another standard plan. Black seeks counterplay on the queenside and prepares ...b6-b5.

14.f4 $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 15.a415. $\mathbb{R}f2!$?15... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 16. $\mathbb{W}xg2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$

A logical move for a rapid game. The knight is aiming for b4. But 16... $\mathbb{W}c6!$? would be more prudent.

Diagram 23-9

17.g4

The logical continuation. White coordinates his pawns, queen, knight and, of course, the bishop for a concerted attack.

17... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 18.g5 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$?

An interesting pawn sacrifice. White simply threatens $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$.

19... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ $\mathbb{R}xd3$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$

21... $\mathbb{Q}h8?$ would be bad, because of 22. $\mathbb{Q}xh7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 23. $\mathbb{W}e4\#$ +-.

22.gxf6 g6

Diagram 23-10

23. $\mathbb{R}ad1!$

Lobron is playing with great energy and brings all his forces into play. His pawn wedge on f6 paralyses the black pieces. The really bitter pill for Black is that his rook on f8 remains shut in.

23... $\mathbb{R}xe3$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}e5$

24. $\mathbb{R}d2!$? $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ is followed by 25... $\mathbb{R}xe5$ 26.fxe5 $\mathbb{Q}xc4\infty$.

24... $\mathbb{R}xe5$

The exchange sacrifice is almost forced. 24... $\mathbb{W}c8!$? is met by 25. $\mathbb{Q}f2$, intending $\mathbb{R}d2-d8$.

25.fxe5 $\mathbb{W}xe5$ 26. $\mathbb{W}g3!$

White has good prospects in the endgame too, because the black queenside is weak.

26... $\mathbb{W}e2$

After 26... $\mathbb{W}xg3!?$ 27.hxg3±, White can continue with either $\mathbb{R}d7$ or $\mathbb{R}b1$.

27. $\mathbb{W}h4$ b5 28. $\mathbb{W}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}h7?$

28...e5!∞ is necessary, in order to clear the e6-square for the knight. If White replies 29. $\mathbb{W}h6?$ then Black has 29... $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$.

29. $\mathbb{E}d2$

Diagram 23-11

Forcing an advantageous endgame. Although Black has three pawns for the exchange, the black pieces are very badly placed.

29... $\mathbb{W}g4\#$ 30. $\mathbb{W}xg4$ h \times g4 31. $\mathbb{E}d8!$ g5 32. $\mathbb{E}b1$

The pin and the white a-pawn are the deciding factors. Lobron plays the ending, as he did the whole game, very well.

32... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 33. $\mathbb{E}xb6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 34. $\mathbb{E}xa6\pm$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 35. $\mathbb{E}xf8$ $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ 36. a5

The knight cannot put up a proper fight against the a-pawn.

36... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 37. $\mathbb{E}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 38. $\mathbb{E}g8$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$

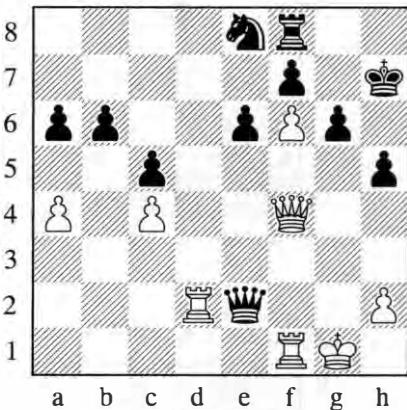
38...f6 is followed by 39. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ and then $\mathbb{Q}g3$, or the immediate 39. $\mathbb{E}b8?!$.

39. $\mathbb{E}xg5$ f5 40. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 41. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 42. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 43. $\mathbb{E}g8$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 44. $\mathbb{E}b8$ $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$ 45. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 46. $\mathbb{E}b5+-$ f4 47. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 48. $\mathbb{E}b6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 49. $\mathbb{E}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 50. a6 $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$ 51. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$

1-0

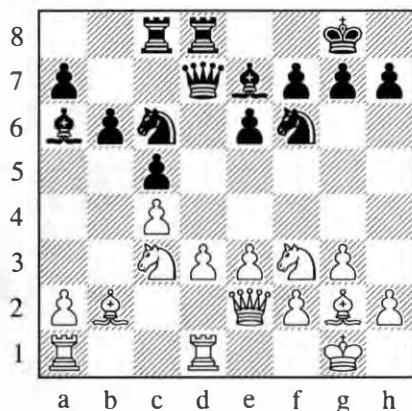
In the test which follows, you will become acquainted with some more ideas. Please play through all the sample games in order to get a better understanding of this system.

Diagram 23-11

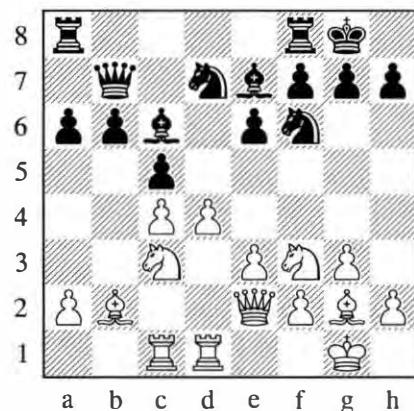


Exercises

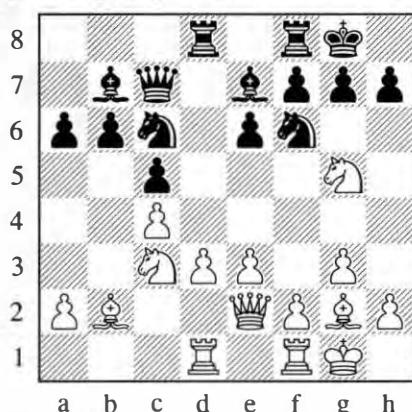
► Ex. 23-1 ◀ ★★



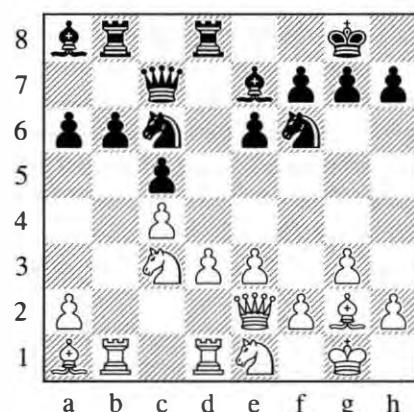
► Ex. 23-4 ◀ ★★



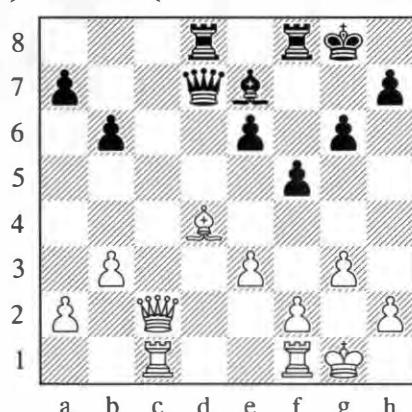
► Ex. 23-2 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 23-5 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 23-3 ◀ ★★

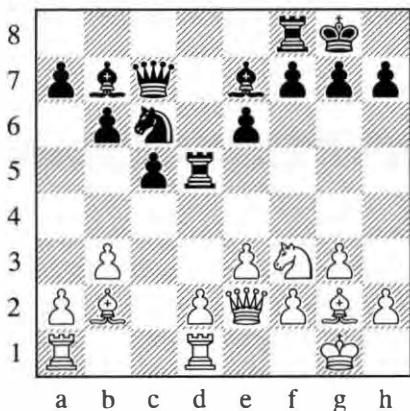


► Ex. 23-6 ◀ ★★

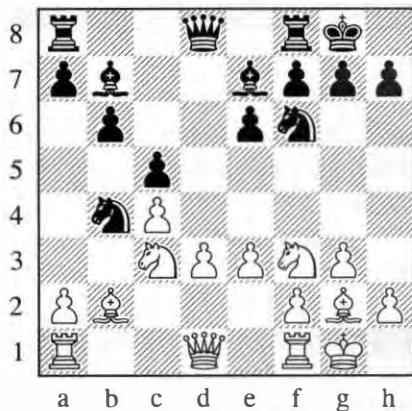


Exercises

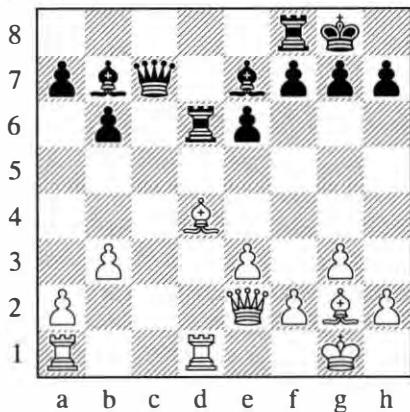
► Ex. 23-7 ◀ ★ △



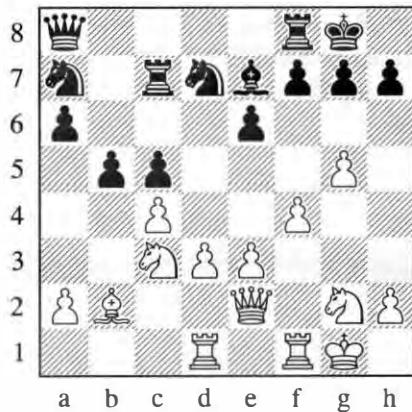
► Ex. 23-10 ◀ ★★★ △



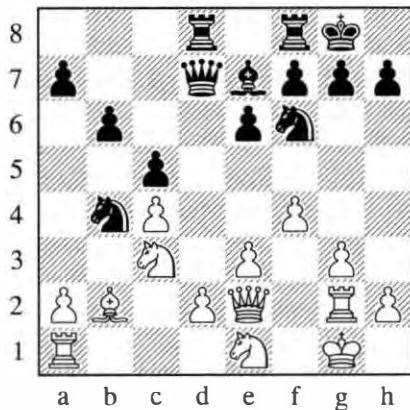
► Ex. 23-8 ◀ ★★ △



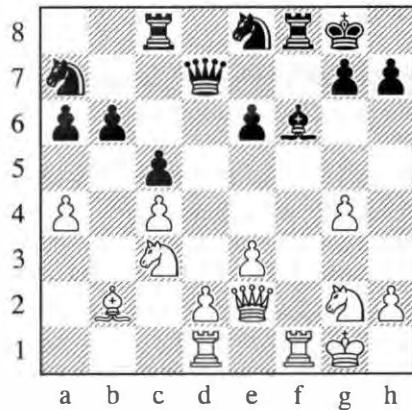
► Ex. 23-11 ◀ ★★ △



► Ex. 23-9 ◀ ★★ △



► Ex. 23-12 ◀ ★★ △



Solutions

Ex. 23-1

G.Kasparov – G.Sosonko

Brussels (blitz) 1987

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ d5 2. c4 e6 3. b3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. g3
0–0 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ c5 7. 0–0 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 8. e3 dxc4 9. bxc4
b6 10. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$ $\mathbb{W}d7$
13. d3 $\mathbb{Q}fd8$

Diagram Ex. 23-1

14. $\mathbb{Q}el!$

(2 points)

White prepares f2-f4. We have already seen this typical idea in Diagram 23-8.

1 consolation point for 14. $\mathbb{Q}b5$.

14... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 15. f4 a6 16. g4 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 17. g5 $\mathbb{Q}a5$
18. a4 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 19. $\mathbb{W}xg2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$
21. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 22. h4 b5 23. axb5 axb5 24. $\mathbb{Q}e5$
 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}bc8$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$
bxc4 28. dxc4 $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ $\mathbb{W}a6$ 30. $\mathbb{W}e2$
 $\mathbb{W}a3?$ 31. h5 $\mathbb{W}a5$ 32. g6! f6 33. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d8??$
34. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$
1–0

Ex. 23-2

J.Timman – B.Spassky

Sochi 1973

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ d5 2. c4 e6 3. g3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. 0–0
0–0 6. b3 c5 7. e3 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ b6 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3$
dxc4 10. bxc4 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 11. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 12. d3 $\mathbb{Q}ad8$
13. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$ a6 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5$

Diagram Ex. 23-2

14... $\mathbb{Q}a7!$

(2 points)

Now we know who Timman got the idea from! Black secures counterplay by preparing ...b5.

15. f4 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ b5 17. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ b4 18. $\mathbb{Q}b1$
 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ a5 20. g4 $\mathbb{W}d7$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}de4$
 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 22. dxе4 $\mathbb{W}c7$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ a4 24. g5 $\mathbb{Q}xd1$
25. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 26. h4 $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}xd8\uparrow$ $\mathbb{W}xd8$
28. $\mathbb{W}c2$ a3 29. $\mathbb{Q}al$ f6 30. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}e2$
 $\mathbb{W}b8$ 32. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{W}b7$ 33. $\mathbb{W}d3$ h6 34. gxh6
gxh6 35. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 36. $\mathbb{W}c2$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 37. f5? e5
38. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 39. $\mathbb{W}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 40. $\mathbb{W}g1$ $\mathbb{W}f7$

41. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{W}h5\uparrow$ 42. $\mathbb{W}h2$ $\mathbb{W}d1$ 43. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$
 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$
0–1

Ex. 23-3

J.Dorfman – J.Klinger

Sarajevo 1988

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. g3 b6 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 4. 0–0 e6 5. c4
 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. b3 0–0 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ c5 8. e3 d5 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$
10. cxd5 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 12. d4 $\mathbb{Q}ad8$
13. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 15. $\mathbb{W}g4$ cxd4
(15... g6 16. dxc5 \pm) 16. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ g6 17. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{W}xc6$
18. $\mathbb{Q}ac1$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 19. $\mathbb{W}e4$ (19. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$ e5 20. $\mathbb{Q}b2\pm$)
19... f5 20. $\mathbb{W}c2$ $\mathbb{W}d7$

Diagram Ex. 23-3

21. $\mathbb{Q}a1!$

(2 points)

White prepares $\mathbb{Q}fd1$, while $\mathbb{W}b2$ may also become a possibility.

1 point for 21. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$. The game move sets the opponent greater practical problems.

21... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 22. $\mathbb{W}e2!$

The immediate 22. $\mathbb{W}b2\text{?}$ is not dangerous, due to 22... $\mathbb{Q}f6=$.

22... $\mathbb{Q}xc1\text{?}$

22... $\mathbb{Q}f6\text{?}\pm$ would be better.

23. $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 25. $\mathbb{W}b2\text{?}$ e5
26. $\mathbb{W}xe5$ $\mathbb{W}xe5$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$
29. a4 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ g5 32. e4
g4 \uparrow 33. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5\uparrow$ 34. f4 gxf3 \uparrow 35. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$
 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 36. h4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 37. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ fxe4 38. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$
h5 39. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 40. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 41. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$
42. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ a6 43. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ b5 44. axb5 axb5 45. $\mathbb{Q}el$
 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 46. $\mathbb{Q}e3\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 47. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 48. $\mathbb{Q}f3\uparrow$
 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 49. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 50. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 51. $\mathbb{Q}h3$
 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 52. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1\uparrow$ 53. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 54. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ b4
55. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 56. $\mathbb{Q}d6\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 57. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$
58. $\mathbb{Q}g5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 59. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 60. $\mathbb{Q}xh5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$
61. $\mathbb{Q}e5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 62. $\mathbb{Q}g5\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 63. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$
64. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 65. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c3\uparrow$ 66. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c4\uparrow$
67. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c3\uparrow$ 68. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}c4\uparrow$ 69. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ b3
70. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 71. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 72. $\mathbb{Q}b6\uparrow$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$
73. h5 $\mathbb{Q}c4\uparrow$ 74. $\mathbb{Q}g5$

1–0

Solutions

Ex. 23-4

M.Sorokin – B.Sambuev

St. Petersburg 1999

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. c4 e6 3. g3 b6 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}b7$ 5. 0–0
 c5 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. b3 0–0 8. e3 d5 9. $\mathbb{Q}b2 \mathbb{Q}bd7$
 (9...dxc4 10. bxc4 $\mathbb{Q}c6!$) 10. $\mathbb{W}e2$ a6 11. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$
 $\mathbb{W}c7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}ac1$ dxc4 (12... $\mathbb{Q}ad8$ 13. cxd5
 exd5 14. d4± F. Olafsson – G. Sigurjonsson,
 Reykjavik 1968) 13. bxc4 $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ (13... $\mathbb{Q}ac8$)
 14. d4 $\mathbb{W}b7?$

Diagram 23-4**15.d5!**

(1 point)

15...exd5 16.cxd5 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 16... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ –**17. $\mathbb{Q}xd5 \mathbb{Q}xd5$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$**

(another 1 point)

18... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 18... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}dx5$ +–**19. $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$ ± $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}ad8$ 21. $\mathbb{W}d2$** $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 21... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 23. f4±**22. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ 23. $\mathbb{W}c2$ ± c4 24. $\mathbb{Q}xc4 \mathbb{Q}c5$** **25. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ † 26. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}fe8$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}c1$!?****28. $\mathbb{Q}b2$! $\mathbb{Q}e3$ † 29. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ – g6****31. $\mathbb{W}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 32. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 33. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ † $\mathbb{Q}h8$** **34. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 35. $\mathbb{W}e7$**

1–0

Ex. 23-5

R.Bauert – A.Yusupov

Swiss Team Ch 1999

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ d5 2. c4 e6 3. b3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. g3 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$
 0–0 6. 0–0 b6 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 8. e3 dxc4 9. bxc4 c5
 10. d3 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 11. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ a6 13. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$
 $\mathbb{W}fd8$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}ab1$ $\mathbb{Q}ab8$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}el$

Diagram 23-5**16... $\mathbb{Q}a7!$**

(2 points)

Black follows Spassky's plan of preparing
 ...b5.**17. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}b3$**

18. a4!?

18... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 19. f4 $\mathbb{W}c6$ 20. $\mathbb{W}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}db8$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}db1$
 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ h6= 23. $\mathbb{Q}e2$!?

Better is 23. $\mathbb{W}xc6$ =.

23... $\mathbb{W}c7$ 24. g4 b5!± 25. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ bxc4 26. dxc4
 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ †? $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ † $\mathbb{Q}dx8$
 29. $\mathbb{W}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ 31. $\mathbb{W}xa1$ $\mathbb{W}c6$
 32. $\mathbb{W}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 33. $\mathbb{W}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 34. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}axc4$
 35. g5 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 36. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$?? $\mathbb{W}xc5$

0–1

Ex. 23-6

G.Dizdar – A.Yusupov

Bundesliga 1992

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. c4 e6 3. g3 b6 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 5. 0–0
 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. b3 d5 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 0–0 8. e3 $\mathbb{Q}bd7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3$
 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ dxc4 11. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 12. bxc4
 $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 13. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{W}c8$

Diagram 23-6**14. f4!**

(2 points)

The typical attacking plan in this system.

14... c5 15. g4 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ f6 17. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{W}c6$
 18. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ a6 20. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $\mathbb{W}xd6$
 21. $\mathbb{Q}ab1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}ab8$ 23. g5 f5 24. a4
 e5 25. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}dxe5$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 27. a5
 $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ $\mathbb{W}xb8$ 29. $\mathbb{W}g2$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}b1$
 $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{W}g6$ 32. $\mathbb{W}d5$ † $\mathbb{W}f7$ 33. $\mathbb{W}c6$
 $\mathbb{W}g6$ 34. $\mathbb{W}d5$ †
 34. $\mathbb{Q}b7$!±

34... $\mathbb{W}f7$

½–½

Ex. 23-7

R.Vaganian – A.Karpov

USSR Ch, Leningrad 1971

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. c4 b6 3. g3 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ e6 5. 0–0
 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. b3 0–0 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ c5 8. e3 d5 9. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$
 10. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ (10...dxc4?) 11. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}ad8$
 12. cxd5! $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ (12...exd5 13. d4±) 13. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$
 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ (13...exd5 14. d4±)

Diagram 23-7**14. d4!**

(1 point)

Solutions

14...cxd4 15.Qxd4 Qxd4 16.Qxd4 Rd6?

Black should have played 16...Rd7 17.Wg4±.

See Ex. 23-8.

Ex. 23-8

R.Vaganian – A.Karpov

USSR Ch, Leningrad 1971

17.Rdc1!

(2 points)

White removes his rook from the d-file with tempo. This means that next move White can attack the d6-rook without allowing Black the chance to exchange rooks.

17...Wd7 18.Qe5 Rd5

18...Rd2 is followed by 19.Wg4 g6 20.Rc7 Wb5 21.Qc3 h5 22.Wc4+-.

19.Qc7 Wd8 20.Rxb7 Rxe5 21.Rd1+– We8

22.Rxa7 Ra5 23.Rb7 Rc5 24.a4 Ra8

25.Rbd7 Rb8 26.Wb5 Ra3 27.Qb7

1–0

Ex. 23-9

M.Sorokin – S.Slipak

Villa Martelli 1997

1.Qf3 Qf6 2.c4 b6 3.g3 Rb7 4.Qg2 e6 5.0–0 Qe7 6.b3 0–0 7.Qb2 d5 8.e3 c5 9.Qc3 dxc4 10.bxc4 Qc6 11.We2 Rc7 12.Qe1? Rad8 (12...a6!! 13.f4 Qa7 14.a4 Rfd8 15.g4 Rxg2 16.Wxg2 Rc6= A. Sokolovs – A. Kabatianski, Bundesliga 1996) 13.f4 Qb4 14.Qf2?? Rxg2 15.Qxg2 Rb7?! (better is 15...Rb7, planning to meet 16.g4 with 16...Qe4; White may consider playing 16.d3?? before advancing the g-pawn)

Diagram 23-9

16.g4!

(2 points)

The standard attack.

16...Qe8

16...Qd3 is followed by 17.Qxd3 Wxd3 18.Qd5! Rxd5 (18...Wxe2?? 19.Qxe7+–) 19.cxd5 Wxd5±.

17.g5± Qd6

Again 17...Qd3? 18.Qxd3 Wxd3 is bad, because of 19.Qd5!±.

18.Qf3 Qf5 19.Qe5 Wb7 20.Rf1 a6

Black could seek counterplay with 20...f6!?, 21.gxf6 Rxf6.

21.a3 Qc6 22.Qg4 Qh8 23.Qe4 b5 24.Qg3 bxc4 25.Qc3 Qcd4!?

25...Qh4 26.Qgf2±

26.exd4 cxd4

The strong centre pawns provide reasonable compensation for the piece.

Ex. 23-10

A.Yusupov – A.Panchenko

Vilnius 1978

1.c4 e6 2.Qf3 Qf6 3.g3 d5 4.b3 Qe7 5.Qg2 0–0 6.0–0 b6 7.Qb2 Qb7 8.e3 c5 9.Qc3 dxc4 10.bxc4 Qc6 11.d3 (11...We2??) 11...Qb4

Diagram 23-10

12.Wb3!

(3 points)

An interesting tactical idea! Only 1 consolation point for 12.Qe5.

12...Wc8

Black cannot take the d-pawn:

a) 12...Wxd3? 13.Qe5 Wf5 14.Qxb7 Rab8 15.Qg2 Wxe5 16.a3 Qd3 (16...Qa6 17.Qb5 Wf5 18.Wa4+–) 17.Qd5±

b) 12...Qxd3? 13.Qad1+–

13.Rfd1 Rb8 14.Qe2 Qc6 15.a3 Qa6 16.Qf4±

Ex. 23-11

Variation from the game

R.Sherbakov – V.Loginov

St. Petersburg 1998

1.Qf3 Qf6 2.c4 b6 3.g3 Rb7 4.Qg2 e6 5.0–0 Qe7 6.b3 0–0 7.Qb2 c5 8.e3 d5 9.Qc3 dxc4 10.bxc4 Qc6 11.We2 Rc8 (11...Rc7??) 12.Qad1 12...Rc7 (12...Rc7??) 13.Qel a6 14.f4 Qa7 15.g4 Rxg2 16.Qxg2 Wa8 17.d3 b5 18.g5 Qd7

Solutions

Diagram 23-11

19. $\mathbb{E}f3!$

(2 points)

This is in line with the standard plan: the rook is heading to h3. A very interesting alternative is 19.f5!! (also 2 points) and if 19... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$, then 20.fxe6 fxe6 21. $\mathbb{W}g4$ gives White a strong attack.

19... $\mathbb{E}d8$ 20. $\mathbb{E}h3$ $\mathbb{B}xc4$ 21. $\mathbb{D}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 22. $\mathbb{E}xd8$ $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}el!$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 26. $\mathbb{Q}df2!$

White has good attacking chances.

Ex. 23-12

R.Sherbakov – V.Loginov

St. Petersburg 1998

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2. c4 b6 3. g3 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ e6 5. 0–0 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. b3 0–0 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ c5 8. e3 d5 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{D}xc4$ 10. $\mathbb{B}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 11. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{E}c8$ 12. $\mathbb{E}ad1$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}el?$ a6 14. f4 $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 15. a4 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{W}d7?$ (16... $\mathbb{E}fd8$ 17. f5) 17. g4 $\mathbb{Q}e8?$! (17... $\mathbb{E}fd8$) 18. f5? (18. g5?!) $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 19. $\mathbb{E}f3$ $\mathbb{E}fd8$ 20. $\mathbb{E}h3$ g6 followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}f8-g7=$) 18... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ (18... $\mathbb{E}xf5$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 20. $\mathbb{G}xf5$ gives White the initiative on the kingside) 19. fxe6 fxe6 (19... $\mathbb{W}xe6$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ and then $\mathbb{Q}fd5\pm$)

Diagram 23-12

20. $\mathbb{g}5!$

(2 points)

White fights energetically for the initiative.

20... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$

20... $\mathbb{Q}e5?$ is answered by 21. $\mathbb{E}xf8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 22. g6 (or 22. $\mathbb{W}f2\#?$ and 23. d4) 22... $\mathbb{H}xg6$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}h4$.

21. $\mathbb{E}xf8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$

22... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ or 22... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ is followed by 23. $\mathbb{E}f1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 24. $\mathbb{W}g4$ and then $\mathbb{Q}f4$.

23. $a5!\pm$ $\mathbb{B}xa5$

If 23... $\mathbb{W}c6$, then 24. $\mathbb{E}f1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 25. $\mathbb{W}g4$.

24. $\mathbb{Q}xc5!$ $\mathbb{W}e7$

24... $\mathbb{B}xc5$ 25. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 26. d4+–

25. $\mathbb{E}f1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 26. $\mathbb{W}g4!$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$

As Sherbakov's analysis demonstrates, other moves are no better:

a) 26... $\mathbb{W}xc5$ 27. $\mathbb{W}xe6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 28. $\mathbb{W}xh6+–$

b) 26... $\mathbb{E}xc5$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{E}g5$ 28. $\mathbb{W}xe6\#+–$

c) 26... $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ 27. $\mathbb{Q}f6?$ $\mathbb{W}e8$ 28. $\mathbb{Q}d4\pm$

27. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e8?$

Better is 27... $\mathbb{E}f8\pm$.

28. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{B}c7$

Or 28... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}c5+–$.

29. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{B}xc5$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}xc5+–$

1–0

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 24

20 points and above → Excellent

16 points and above → Good

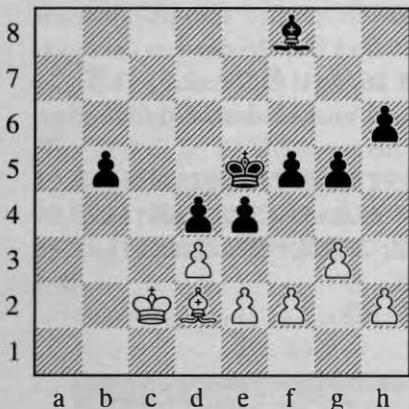
12 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Contents

- ✓ General principles
- ✓ Lack of endgame knowledge
- ✓ Bad calculation of variations
- ✓ Transition to a pawn ending
- ✓ Wrong attitude

Diagram 24-1



Typical mistakes in the endgame

In this chapter we shall take a look at some typical mistakes in the endgame. In order to play the endgame properly, we must endeavour to **follow the general endgame principles** (*Build Up Your Chess* 2, Chapter 2). If you unnecessarily contravene these principles, then normally you are punished for it.

Diagram 24-1

(Elo 2097) – (Elo 2051)

12th training tournament, Bad Wurzach 2007

1...f4?!

Black puts his pawn on a dark square and makes it considerably more difficult to realize his material advantage. To find the correct move, all he has to do is to remember Capablanca's rule from Chapter 17!

After 1...g4! 2.Qf4† Qd5 3.Qb3 h5+– Black sets up his pawns carefully and at the same time fixes the opposing ones on the dark squares, so that he can later attack them with the bishop. For example, after 4.Qg5 Qd6 5.Qf6 (5.Qh6 Qe7 6.Qf4 h4+–) there follows 5...f4 6.dxe4† Qxe4 7.gxf4 Qxf4 8.Qb4 Qxh2 9.Qxb5 Qg1 10.Qh4 d3 11.exd3† Qxd3+–.

2.dxe4 fxg3

2...Qxe4? 3.f3† Qe5 4.gxf4† is no longer a clear win either.

3.hxg3 Qxe4 4.f3† Qd5 5.Qb3 Qd6

5...d3?! 6.exd3 Qd4† would be better. Later Black will be unable to find any way to break through.

6.g4 Qc5

6...d3 is now met with 7.e3.

7.Qe1 Qe5 8.Qg3† Qd5 9.Qe1 Qb6 10.Qb4 Qc6 11.Qg3 Qc5† 12.Qb3 Qd5 13.Qe1

White could already claim a threefold repetition of the position...

13...Qd6 14.Qf2 Qc5 15.Qe1 Qd5 16.Qf2 Qc5 17.Qg3 Qd6 18.Qe1

With a draw. 18...d3 achieves nothing, in view of 19.e4† Qd4 20.Qf2† Qe5 21.Qg3† Qe6 22.Qxd6 Qxd6 23.Qc3=.

Of course, mistakes occur for a variety of reasons. Many failures have to do with a **lack of endgame knowledge, poor calculation of variations, bad endgame technique or tackling the endgame in the wrong way.**

The lack of knowledge of important basic endgames often leads to blunders.

Diagram 24-2

P.Carty – W.Wegener

Bad Wiessee 1997

1...h2??

Black does not know this elementary fortress! Of course, the correct continuation is 1... $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f1=$

Black played on for another 30 moves, but naturally enough he was unable to change matters! The position is dead drawn.

Precision is required in the endgame. There is frequently no second best move, but just one single solution. It is important to calculate the required variations accurately.

Diagram 24-3

V.Kramnik – A.Naiditsch

Dortmund 2007

1... $\mathbb{Q}c5?$

This natural looking move loses. The correct defence is 1... $\mathbb{Q}d8!$ 2. $\mathbb{B}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4.b6 $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7=$.

2. $\mathbb{B}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 3. $\mathbb{B}c4!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$

Or 3... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 4. $\mathbb{B}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 4. $\mathbb{B}a6$ and then b6+-.

4. $\mathbb{B}a4$ $\mathbb{B}b8$

4...g6 5.b6+-

5. $\mathbb{B}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{B}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{B}b6$

If 7... $\mathbb{Q}d6$, then 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 9. $\mathbb{B}a7+-$.

8. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{B}d6\#$

8...g5 would put up a more stubborn defence.

9. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{B}d2$ 10.b6 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 11. $\mathbb{B}b5$ $\mathbb{B}c2\#$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}d4$

Black resigned, on account of 12... $\mathbb{B}c8$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 14. $\mathbb{B}c5+-$.

Diagram 24-2

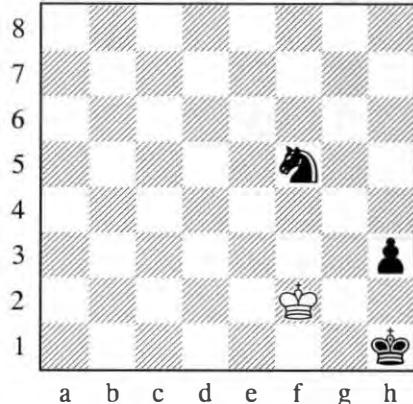
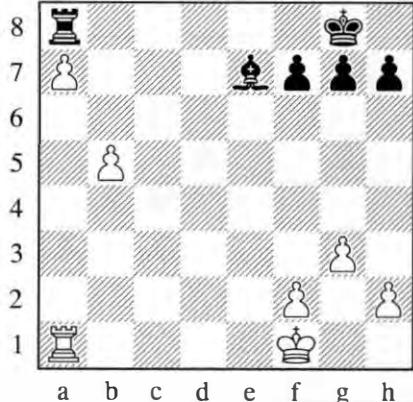


Diagram 24-3



Very many mistakes are made in the transition to a pawn ending. Unfortunately, my opponent in the following game was very careful!

Diagram 24-4

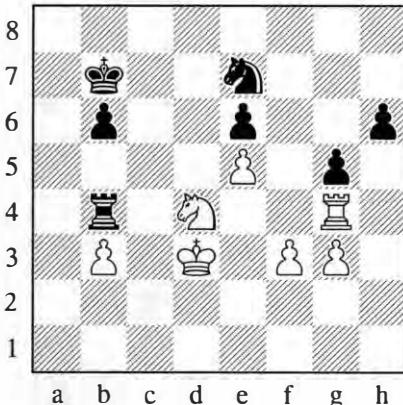


Diagram 24-4

A.Yusupov – E.L’Ami

Amsterdam 2008

He calculated very precisely and played:

1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$!

- 1... $\mathbb{Q}c6??$ would have led to the loss of the game.
2. $\mathbb{Q}xc6 \mathbb{B}xg4$ is met by 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8!! \mathbb{Q}c8 4.\mathbb{F}xg4 \mathbb{Q}xd8$
5. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}c7 6.\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{Q}b7 7.b4$ and Black is in zugzwang:
- 7... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a6 \mathbb{Q}c6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}a7 \mathbb{Q}b5$ (9... $b5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a6+-$)
10. $\mathbb{Q}b7 \mathbb{Q}xb4$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xb6 \mathbb{Q}c4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}c6 \mathbb{Q}d4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d6+-$

The game move leads to a draw.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xf5 \mathbb{B}xb3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e4 exf5\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf5 \mathbb{B}xf3\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g6 \mathbb{B}e3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xh6 \mathbb{B}xe5$ 7. $\mathbb{B}xg5 \mathbb{B}xg5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xg5 b5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f4 b4$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}c6$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}d5$ 12. $g4 \mathbb{Q}e5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}f4$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xb4 \mathbb{Q}xg4$

$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

As a matter of fact, so many good games have been spoiled because one of the protagonists played without due care and attention and did not take on board what his opponent was threatening.

Diagram 24-5

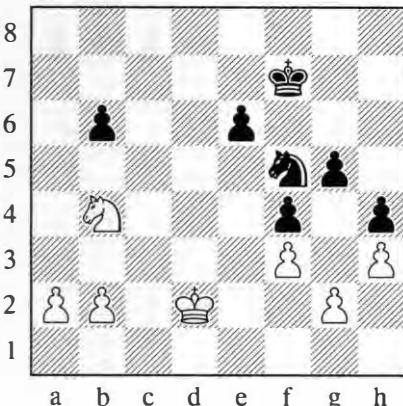


Diagram 24-5

A.Heimann – A.Yusupov

Zürich 2009

1... $\mathbb{Q}e3?!$

The position is very complicated. But Black has to play very carefully, because his opponent can create an outside passed pawn on the queenside. However, with careful defence, there should be no major problems, since the black pawns on the kingside are also dangerous. But now Black started to miss the simplest of ideas on the part of his opponent! 1... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ would have been better: 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}d6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2 e5$ 4.a4 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5.b4 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 7.b5 $\mathbb{Q}b8=$

2. $\mathbb{Q}c2! \mathbb{Q}d5$

Only now did Black notice that 2... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ is met by 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ with a simple win: 3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}e3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xe3 \mathbb{F}xe3\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xe3+ -$

3.♘d3 e5 4.a4 ♘e6 5.b4 ♘c7 6.♘a3

Nothing is achieved by 6.♘c4 ♘d6 and if 7.♘a3, then 7...e4 8.fxe4 g4.

6...♘d5??

Again Black overlooks his opponent's first move! 6...♘d5 would still have led to a draw after 7.♘c2=, because it is dangerous for White to play for a win:

a) 7.♘c4?! ♘e3† 8.♗b5 ♘xb6 9.♗xb6 g4!∞

b) 7.b5? ♘e3 8.♗c4 ♘xc4 9.♗xc4 ♘d6 10.♗d3 ♘d5 11.♗c3 ♘c5 12.♗d3 ♘b4+–

7.♗b1!

After the white knight reaches c3 with tempo, Black can no longer save the game. Even so, I also overlooked the next knight move!

7...e4†?! 8.fxe4† ♘e5 9.♘d2!+–

Now everything is clear. The game concluded:

9...b5 10.♗f3† ♘f6 11.axb5 ♘xb5 12.♗c4 ♘d6†

13.♘d5 ♘b5 14.e5† ♘g6 15.♘c6

1–0

Diagram 24-6

(Elo 1500) – (Elo 1500)

10th training tournament, Bad Wurzach 2005

1.f4?

1.♘d4! wins easily: 1...♘d7 2.♗c5 ♘c7 3.h4 h5 4.g3 f6 5.exf6 gxf6 6.g4!+–

1...f5† 2.♘d4

Or 2.exf6† ♘xf6!=.

2...♘d7 3.♗c5 ♘c7= 4.g4?? g6?

Black could even win: 4...g5! 5.fxg5 hxg5 6.gxf5 exf5 7.e6 f4+–

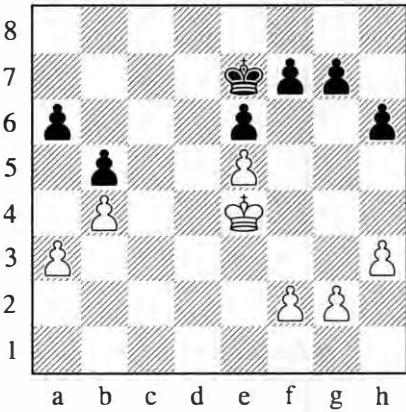
5.gxf5 gxf5 6.h4 h5 7.♘d4 ♘c6 8.♗c3 ♘d5 9.♘d3 ♘c6 10.♘d4

½–½

In order to reduce the number of such mistakes, you must continue to work on your endgame technique (see also Chapter 20). It is important, in good times and in bad, to maintain the correct attitude during the game!

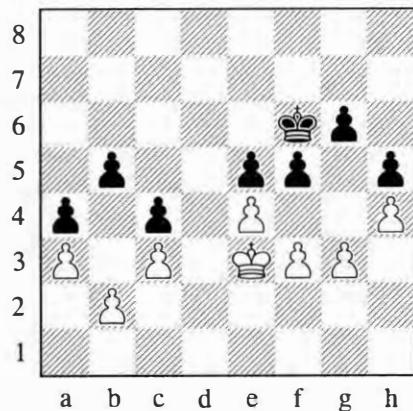
In the test which follows (for which all the games have been taken from our training tournaments in Bad Wurzach!), you must avoid the mistakes described above!

Diagram 24-6

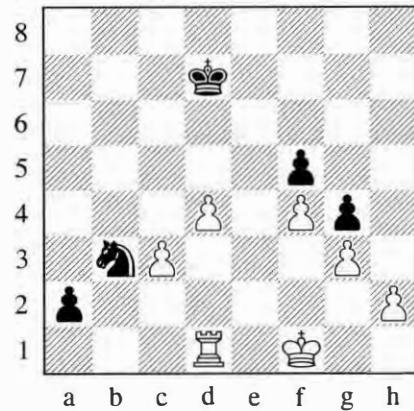


Exercises

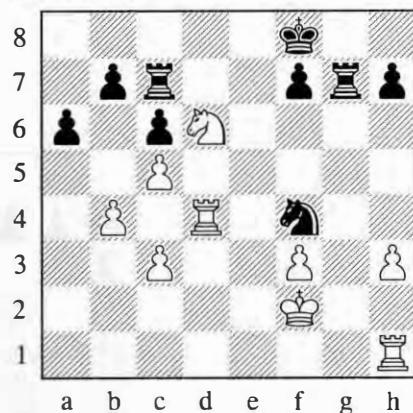
► Ex. 24-1 ◀



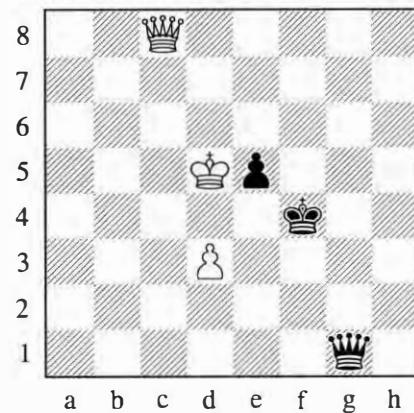
► Ex. 24-4 ◀



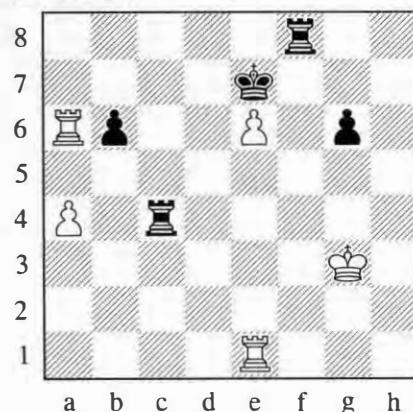
► Ex. 24-2 ◀



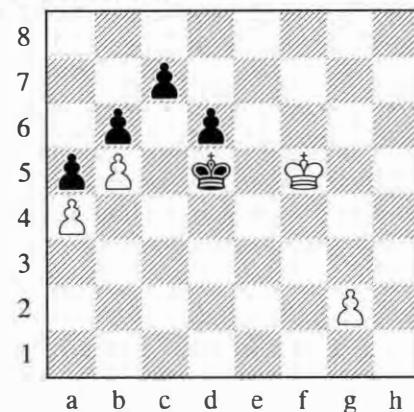
► Ex. 24-5 ◀



► Ex. 24-3 ◀

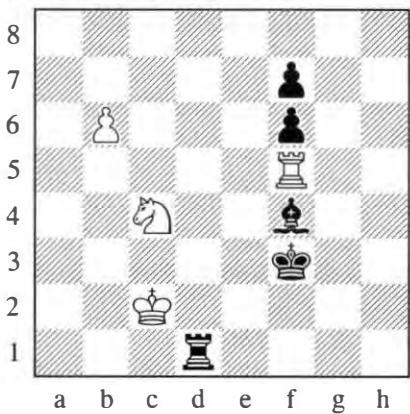


► Ex. 24-6 ◀

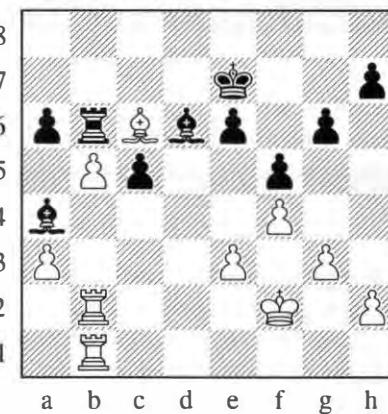


Exercises

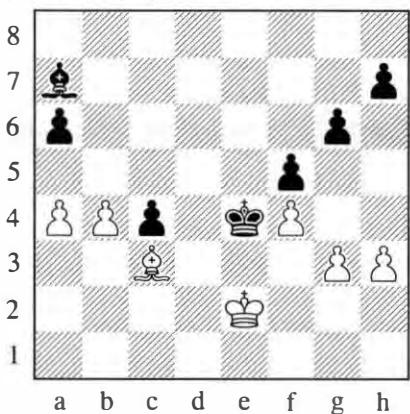
► Ex. 24-7 ◀ ★★ ▼



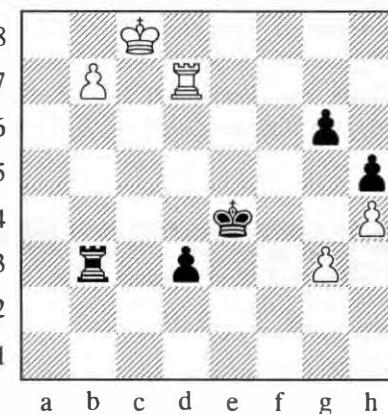
► Ex. 24-10 ◀ ★★ ▼



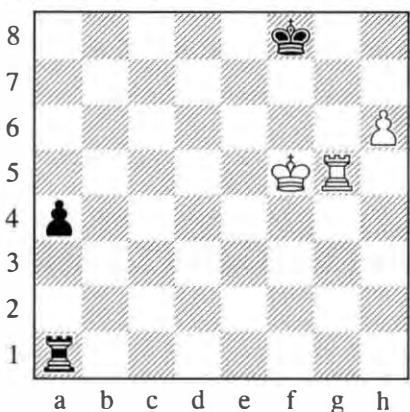
► Ex. 24-8 ◀ ★★ △



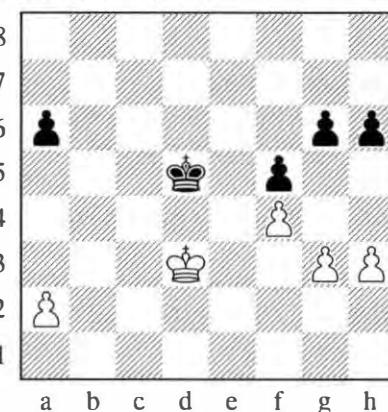
► Ex. 24-11 ◀ ★★ ▼



► Ex. 24-9 ◀ ★ ▼



► Ex. 24-12 ◀ ★★ △



Solutions

Ex. 24-1

(Elo 1291) – (Elo 1618)

14th training tournament 2009

Black sensibly accepted his opponent's offer of a draw, which would be the result after any normal move in the position (such as 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6$). (1 point)

This position cannot be won, but if you try hard enough you can lose it! For example: 1...g5?? 2.hxg5 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 3.exf5 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 4.g4†! $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 5.fxg4† $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ +–.

White could also be caught out. After 1...fxe4 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$, the correct way to draw is 3.f4=, but if White was tempted by 3.g4?? he would lose: 3...g5! 4.hxg5 h4 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 10.g5 e4 11.g6 e3 12.g7 e2 13.g8 \mathbb{Q} e1 \mathbb{Q} † 13. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ †+–

Ex. 24-2

(Elo 2024) – (Elo 1636)

14th training tournament 2009

Black could still save the game:

1... $\mathbb{Q}g2$ †! (1 point)
 2. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ (2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ † 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ =) 2... $\mathbb{Q}e7$!
(another 1 point)
 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}ee2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ † $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ (5. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ =) 5... $\mathbb{Q}ef2$ †=
(another 1 point)

But the game continued:

1... $\mathbb{Q}e6$? 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 3.f4 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$

First 4.f5! would be more accurate.

4... $\mathbb{Q}d3$?!
 4... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5.f5 $\mathbb{Q}7xd6$ 6.cxd6 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ †±

5.f5
 Black resigned, on account of 5... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6.f6 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}eg4$ +–.

Ex. 24-3

(Elo 1669) – (Elo 1884)

14th training tournament 2009

Many roads lead to the draw. The simplest is: 1... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ † (1 point)

(1 point also for 1... $\mathbb{Q}ff4$ or 1... $\mathbb{Q}f5$) 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ † 4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}ff2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ † $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ =) 2... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ † 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ † 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ †=

The game continued:

1... $\mathbb{Q}c6$?? 2. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ † $\mathbb{Q}d6$

No better is 2... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 3.e7+– nor 2... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ †+–.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ † $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 4.e7 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d8$

Or 5. $\mathbb{Q}cl$ †+–.

5... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ †

1-0

Ex. 24-4

(Elo 1760) – (Elo 1884)

13th training tournament 2008

1... $a1\mathbb{Q}$?†

1... $\mathbb{Q}d2$ †! wins on the spot: 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ –+ (1 point)

But Black wanted to win back his material quickly.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 5.c4

$\mathbb{Q}a5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7.d5

7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$??

7... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$

In time trouble Black wanted to avoid any sort of risk.

11. $\mathbb{Q}b6$

½-½

Ex. 24-5

(Elo 1644) – (Elo 1456)

11th training tournament 2006

The correct continuation would be 1... $\mathbb{Q}g2$ †! 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ †! 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ –+.

(2 points)

Solutions

In the game Black played:

- 1... $\mathbb{W}d4\#?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{W}xd3$ 3. $\mathbb{W}f8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$
 4. $\mathbb{W}h6\#!=$
 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe5=$ is simpler.

Now after 4... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ White saves the game with 5. $\mathbb{W}g7!=$.

$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

Ex. 24-6

(Elo 1448) – (Elo 1859)

11th training tournament 2006

1... $\mathbb{Q}c5??$

This loses the game. The correct move is:

1... $c5!$

(1 point)

2. $bxc6$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 3. $g4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (or 3... $b5=$)
 (another 1 point)

4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5. $g5$ $d5\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$
 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$
 11. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}c8=$

2. $g4$ $d5$ 3. $g5$ $d4$ 4. $g6??$

Now White loses. The typical idea 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4\#+$ would lead to victory.

(another 1 point for spotting this)

4... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6. $g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$
 7. $\mathbb{Q}d5\#+$) 5. $g6$ $d3$ 6. $g7$ $d2$ 7. $g8\mathbb{W}\#+$

4... $d3$ 5. $g7$ $d2$ 6. $g8\mathbb{W} d1\mathbb{W}\#+$ 7. $\mathbb{W}f8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$

Or 7... $\mathbb{W}d6\#+$.

8. $\mathbb{W}g8\#$

If 8. $\mathbb{W}a3$, then 8... $\mathbb{W}d5\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{W}d4\#$
 10. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c3\#+$.

8... $\mathbb{W}d5\#$ 9. $\mathbb{W}xd5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$
 11. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$

14. $\mathbb{Q}c6$

0-1

Ex. 24-7

(Elo 1710) – (Elo 1413)

11th training tournament 2006

1... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}e4=$ is correct.

(2 points)

In the game Black played:

1... $\mathbb{Q}c1\#?$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}b1\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4?$

3... $\mathbb{Q}h1$ would be more stubborn: 4. $b7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$

5. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$

4. $\mathbb{Q}xf4\#!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 5. $b7$

1-0

Ex. 24-8

(Elo 1644) – (Elo 1859)

11th training tournament 2006

Sometimes it is very difficult simply to wait and see. White should do nothing! (for example 1. $\mathbb{Q}g7$)

(2 points)

But the game continued:

1. $b5?!$

Unnecessarily weakening the b-pawn.

1... $axb5$ 2. $axb5$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}el$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2??$

White could still hold the position: 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4$
 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$

4... $\mathbb{Q}a5\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $b6$
 $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $h5$

0-1

Ex. 24-9

(Elo 1751) – (Elo 1555)

10th training tournament 2005

Especially when you are in time trouble you should look for a safe way...

1... $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$ (or 1... $\mathbb{Q}h1=$ or 1... $\mathbb{Q}f7=$)

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}g8=$

1... $\mathbb{Q}b1?!$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g6?$

2. $h7\#+$

2... $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$ = 3. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $a3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a8$

5. $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6=$

5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 7. $h7$ $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$

9. $\mathbb{Q}a6\#??$

9. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ =

9... $\mathbb{Q}f5?$

Black now misses the victory! 9... $\mathbb{Q}f7\#+$

10. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ (10. $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$) 10... $a2$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$

$\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $a1\mathbb{W}$ 13. $h8\mathbb{W}$ $\mathbb{W}a8\#$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g7$

$\mathbb{W}g2\#$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{W}h3\#$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{W}g3\#$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}h6$

$\mathbb{W}h4\#$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{W}g5\#$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}f7\#+$

Solutions

10. $\mathbb{E}xa3 \mathbb{Q}g6$ 11. $\mathbb{E}g3\# \mathbb{Q}h6??$

11... $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ 12. $\mathbb{E}g8 \mathbb{E}c7$ 13. $\mathbb{E}f8\# \mathbb{Q}g6=$

10. $\mathbb{Q}h3\#?$

10. $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ $\mathbb{E}e8\#$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}f7 \mathbb{E}h8$ 12. $\mathbb{E}h3\# \mathbb{Q}g5$

13. $\mathbb{Q}g7+-$

11... $\mathbb{Q}g6=$ 12. $\mathbb{E}g3\# \mathbb{Q}h6?+-$

Both players were in severe time trouble and had long since lost sight of the bigger picture. For that reason, they now agreed on a draw!

Ex. 24-10

(Elo 1720) – (Elo 1800)

10th training tournament 2005

1...axb5?

This just helps White. The correct move is:
1...c4!

(1 point)

2.bxa6 $\mathbb{E}xb2\#!$

(another 1 point)

(other moves lose, e.g. 2... $\mathbb{E}xa6?$ 3. $\mathbb{E}b7\# \mathbb{Q}f6$

4. $\mathbb{E}1b6 \mathbb{Q}xc6$ 5. $\mathbb{E}xa6 \mathbb{Q}xb7$ 6. $\mathbb{E}xd6+-$ or

2... $\mathbb{E}xc6?$ 3. $\mathbb{E}b7\# \mathbb{Q}f6$ 4.a7 $\mathbb{E}a6$ 5. $\mathbb{E}1b6+-$)

3. $\mathbb{E}xb2 \mathbb{Q}xc6$ 4. $\mathbb{E}c2 \mathbb{Q}c5$ 5. $\mathbb{E}xc4 \mathbb{Q}d6=$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xb5 \mathbb{Q}xb5$ 3. $\mathbb{E}xb5+-$ $\mathbb{E}xb5$ 4. $\mathbb{E}xb5 \mathbb{Q}d7$

5. $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{Q}c6$ 6.a4 e5 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3 exf4$ 8. $exf4 \mathbb{Q}c7$

9. $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 10.a5 $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 11.a6 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 12. $\mathbb{E}xb6\#$

Or 12. $\mathbb{E}b2+-.$

12... $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 13.a7 $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}xc5 \mathbb{Q}b7$

15. $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}b6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}c6$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f7 \mathbb{Q}d5$

18. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}xh7 \mathbb{Q}f7$ 20. h4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$

21. $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$

1-0

Ex. 24-11

(Elo 1938) – (Elo 1854)

10th training tournament 2005

1... $\mathbb{Q}e3?$

1... $\mathbb{Q}c3\#!$ was the only way to a draw: 2. $\mathbb{Q}d8$ (2. $\mathbb{E}c7 \mathbb{E}xc7\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xc7 d2=$) 2... $\mathbb{E}b3$
(2 points)

3. $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{Q}c3=$

2.b8 $\mathbb{Q}xb8\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb8 d2$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c8 \mathbb{Q}e2$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}d8 d1$ $\mathbb{Q}6. \mathbb{E}xd1 \mathbb{Q}xd1$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e7 \mathbb{Q}e2$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$

1-0

Ex. 24-12

(Elo 1500) – (Elo 1350)

10th training tournament 2005

1.h4?

This move loses. White ends up in zugzwang.
There is a simple draw after 1.a3!=.

(2 points)

But also 1.g4= (1 point) or even 1.a4
(1 point) would be fine.

After 1.a4 play could continue 1...h5
(1...a5 2.g4=) 2.g4! $fxg4$ 3. $hxg4$ $hxg4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$
 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (4... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$
7. $hxg4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ a5 9. $hxg6=$) 5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$
(5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 7.a5 g5 8. $fxg5$ $hxg5$
9. $Qg2=$) 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ a5 7. $\mathbb{Q}h4!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ stalemate.

1...h5?

1...a5! is correct: 2.a3 (2.a4 h5-+) 2...a4
3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}b4$
(6. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 7.a4 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 8.a5 f4-+) 6... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$
7.a4 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ f4-.

2.a3 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 5. a4 $\mathbb{Q}b6$
6. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ a5# 7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$

1½-1½

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 22

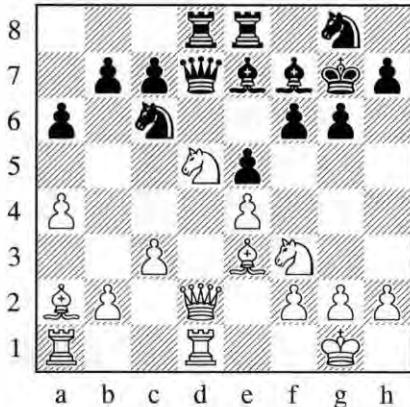
- **19** points and above ➤ **Excellent**
- **15** points and above ➤ **Good**
- **11** points ➤ **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **11** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

Final test

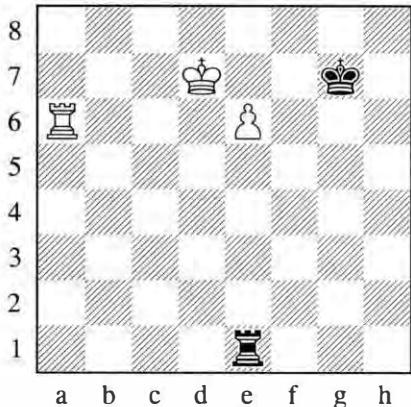
► F-1 ◀

★★



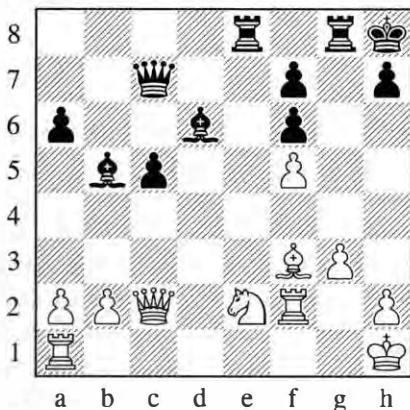
► F-4 ◀

★★



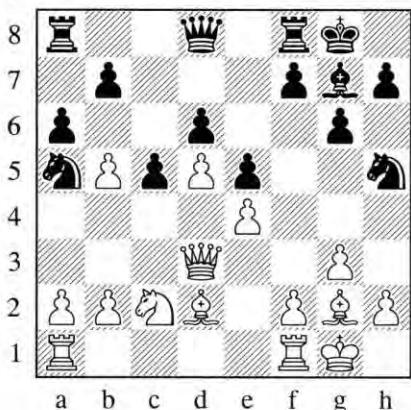
► F-2 ◀

★



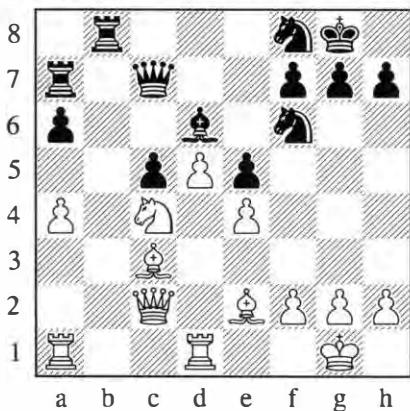
► F-5 ◀

★★



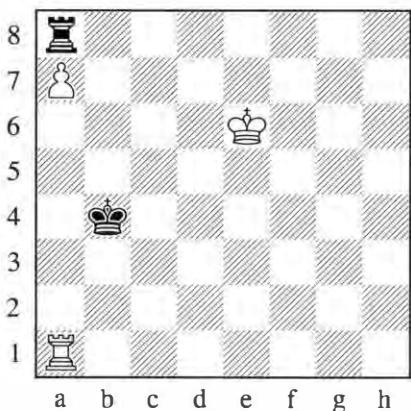
► F-3 ◀

★★

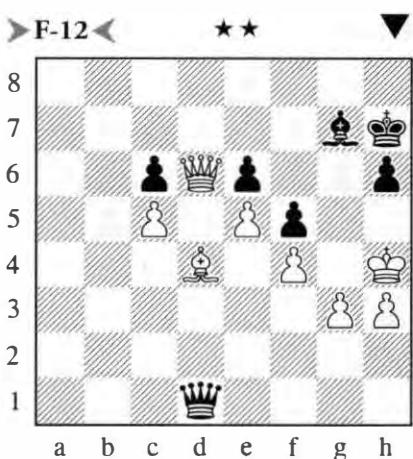
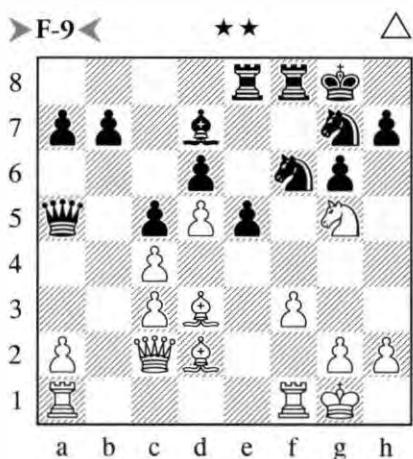
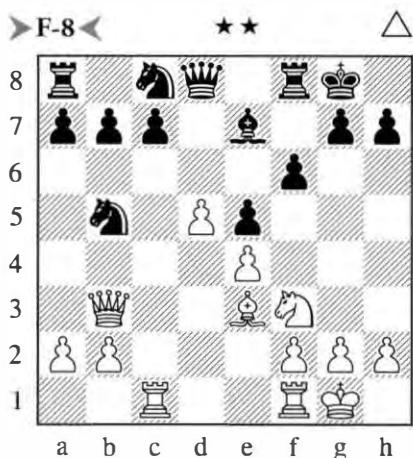
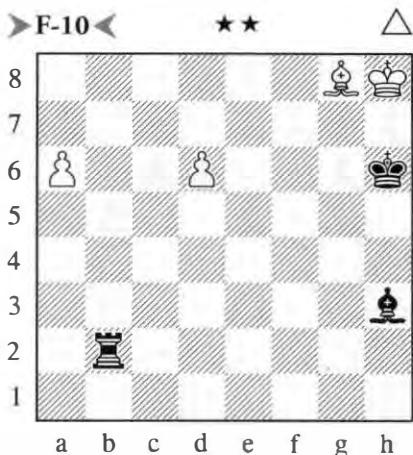
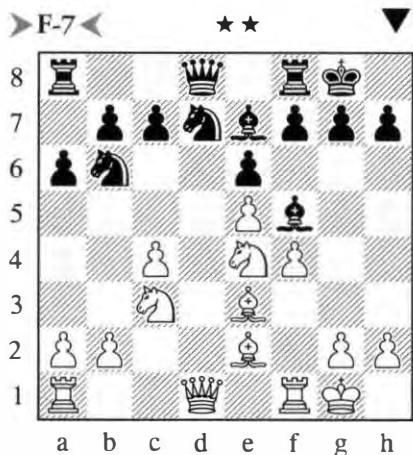


► F-6 ◀

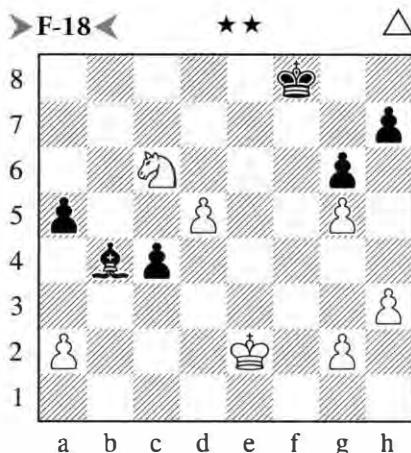
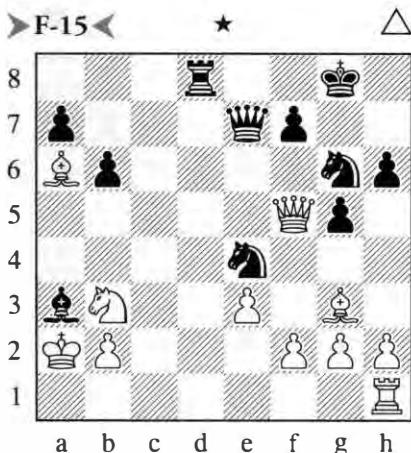
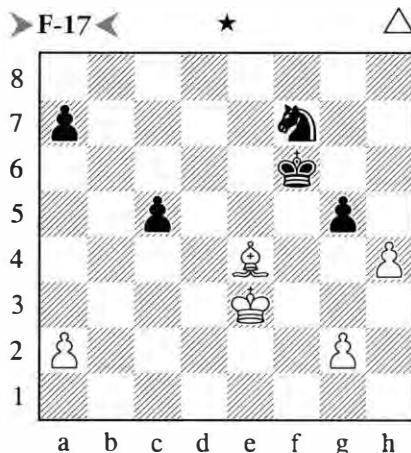
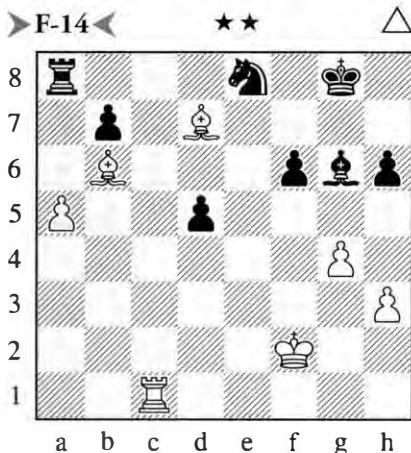
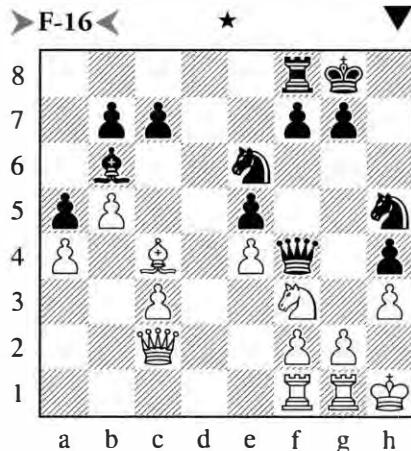
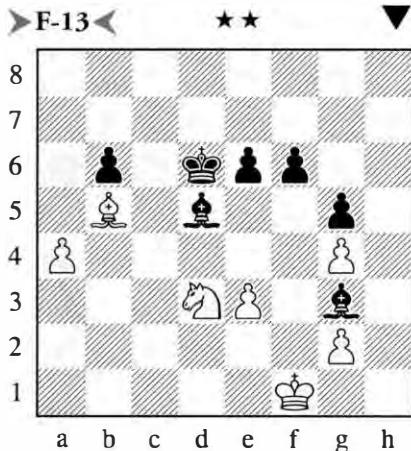
★★



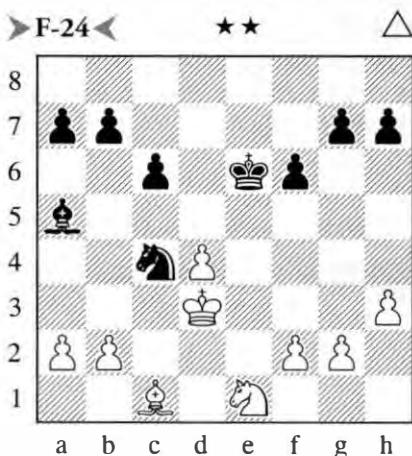
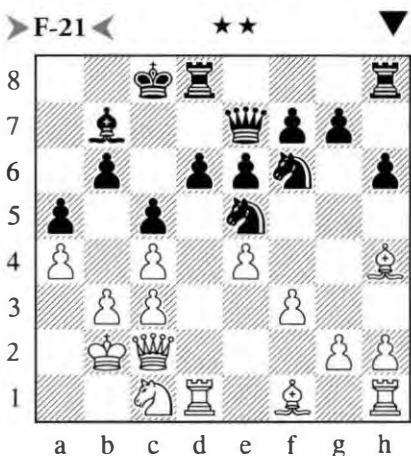
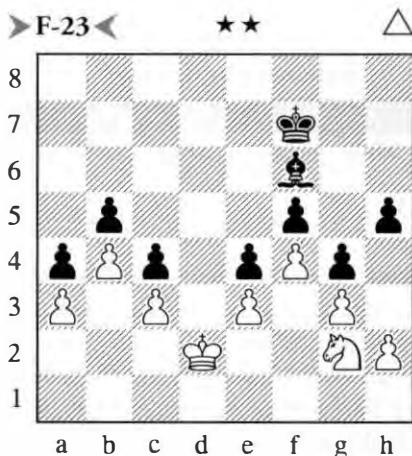
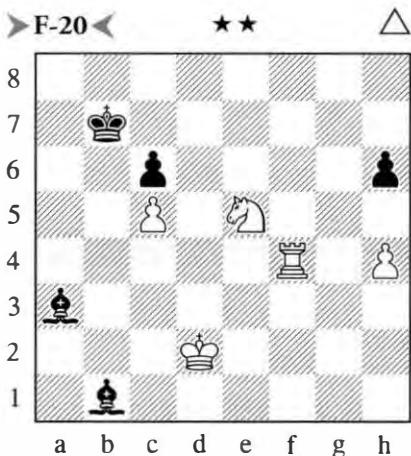
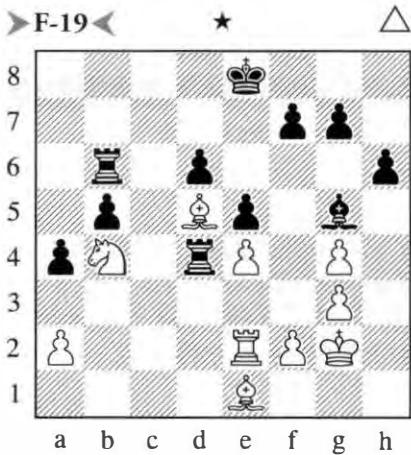
Final test



Final test



Final test



Solutions

F-1

Tactics /Chapter 1

G.Rotariu – Vlad

Correspondence game 1965

1. $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 2. $\mathbb{W}xd7+-$; 1... $\mathbb{W}xd2$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xe8\#+-$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$

5. $\mathbb{W}c2$

(another 1 point)

Equally good is 5. $\mathbb{W}e2$ and then 6. $\mathbb{W}c4\#$.

Black resigned, in view of 5... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6. $\mathbb{W}b3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#+-$.

F-2

Positional play /Chapter 2

V.Smyslov – M.Botvinnik

World Ch, The Hague/Moscow 1948

1... $\mathbb{E}e3!$

(1 point)

A typical idea – doubling on an open file.

2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$

The alternatives are:

- a) 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3\#+-$ (Botvinnik)
- b) 2. $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d1?$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3!$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2+-$
- c) 2. $\mathbb{Q}d1?$ $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$

2... $\mathbb{W}e7!$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$

3. $\mathbb{Q}c3?$ loses to 3... $\mathbb{E}e1\#$.

3... $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 4. $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{C}4\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1$

6. $\mathbb{W}xe3$ is no better: 6... $\mathbb{W}xe3$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3\#$

6... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 7. $\mathbb{B}3\#?$ $\mathbb{E}e1\#$ 8. $\mathbb{B}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

$\mathbb{B}xd1$ 10. $\mathbb{W}xd1$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$

Or 10... $\mathbb{W}e1\#$.

11. $\mathbb{W}c2$

If 11. $\mathbb{W}xd8\#$ $\mathbb{W}xd8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$, then

12... $\mathbb{W}d4\#$.

11... $\mathbb{Q}d5$

0–1

F-3

Tactics /Chapter 3

F.Berkes – A.Braun

Balatonlelle 2003

1. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$

(1 point)

After this strong move, the black position collapses.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g6$

Other moves also lose quickly:

a) 1... $\mathbb{Q}8d7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a5\#$

b) 1... $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$ (or 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$)

2. $\mathbb{F}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$

Or 2... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 4. $d6\#$.

3. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$

Black resigned, because 3... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ is met by 4. $d6\#$.

(another 1 point for this variation)

F-4

Endgame /Chapter 5

N.Kopaev

1958

1... $\mathbb{Q}f6!$

(1 point)

But not 1... $\mathbb{Q}b1?$ on account of 2. $e7$ $\mathbb{Q}b1\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ and 5. $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$.

After 1... $\mathbb{Q}e2?$ White can win with either 2. $\mathbb{Q}a1\#$ or 2. $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ and then 4. $e7\#$.

2. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$

2... $\mathbb{Q}d1\#?$ is bad: 3. $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$

3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$

Threatening $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$.

4. ... $\mathbb{Q}a1!$

(another 1 point)

5. $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6. $e7$ $\mathbb{Q}a7\#$

Flank attack.

Solutions

F-5

Tactics /Chapter 7

L.Portisch – M.Tal

Moscow 1967

1.b6! ♜xb6 2.♘c3+–

(2 points)

The knight is trapped.

2...♗b5 3.♕xa5 ♜xb2 4.♗fc1 b6 5.♗a4 ♜b5

6.♗xb5 axb5 7.a3 ♜a4 8.♗ab1 ♜f6 9.f3

1–0

F-6

Endgame /Chapter 12

The end of a study by

N.Grigoriev

1945

1...♝c5!

(1 point)

Bodycheck. 1...♝b5? loses after 2.♝d6! ♜b6

3.♝b1† ♜a6 4.♝c7! ♜xa7† 5.♝c6.

2.♝d7 ♜b6! 3.♝b1†

Or 3.♝d6 ♜xa7 4.♝b1† ♜a5=.

3...♝c5! 4.♝b7 ♜h8=

(another 1 point)

F-7

Strategy /Chapter 6

R.Mainka – A.Yusupov

German Ch, Bremen 1998

1...f6!?

(2 points)

Another typical idea. It is very important to attack the opposing centre in good time.

2.♗b3

After 2.exf6 ♜xf6 3.♗c5 ♜b8 4.♗xd8 ♜fxd8

5.♗ad1 ♜g4 Black has good counterplay.

2...fxe5 3.fxe5 ♜xe4

3...♜xe5 4.♗ad1 gives White the initiative.

4.♗xe4 ♜xe5 5.♗ad1

5.c5 is met by 5...♝d5=.

5...♝xf1† 6.♔xf1 ♜e8 7.♗xb6 cxb6 8.♗xb6

♗c6 9.♗xc6 bxc6=

F-8

Calculating variations /Chapter 8

M.Euwe – S.Tartakower

Nottingham 1936

1.d6†!

(1 point)

1.♗xb5 ♜d6±

1...♝f7 2.dxe7 ♜d7

2...♛e8 3.a4 ♜bd6 4.♗xc7± ♜xe4? 5.♗xb7+-

3.♗fd1 ♜cd6

3...♜bd6? 4.♗xb7+-

4.a4

(another 1 point)

4...♜d4 5.♗xd4 exd4 6.e5! ♜xe5 7.♜xe5+-

F-9

Positional play /Chapter 9

T.Petrosian – B.Ivkov

Nice Olympiad 1974

1.g4!

(2 points)

Petrosian takes control of the f5-square with this strong and typical move and shuts the black knight on g7 out of the game.

1 consolation point for 1.f4 or 1.♗ab1.

1...♛a4 2.♗b3± ♜b8 3.♗c2 ♜a5 4.a4 ♜c7

5.h3 a6 6.a5 b5 7.axb6 ♜xb6 8.♗a3 ♜d8

9.♗c1 ♜e7 10.♗e1 ♜b2 11.♗d3 ♜c8 12.♗c1

♗b3 13.♗c2 ♜b6 14.f4! h6 15.♗xe5 ♜xe4

16.♗xe5 dxе5 17.♗e4 h5 18.♗a3 ♜xe4

19.♗xf8† ♜xf8 20.♗xe4 ♜b3 21.♗xc5† ♜e8

22.♗f1

1–0

F-10

Tactics /Chapter 10

H.Rinck

1906

1.a7

(1 point)

1...♜g2 2.d7 ♜d2 3.♗d5!

(another 1 point)

Solutions

3... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 4.a8 \mathbb{Q} $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$
5... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$
6. $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$
6... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$
7. $\mathbb{Q}xg2\#$

F-11
Tactics /Chapter 13
Based on the game

Zollner – Heywood
England 1930

1. $\mathbb{Q}xf7!!$
Threatening mate after $\mathbb{Q}xf8\#$ or $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$.
1... $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xg8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$
(2 points)

F-12
Tactics /Chapter 13

Buksza – Kovacs
Hungary 1965

1... $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$!
(2 points)
White resigned, on account of 2.exf6 $\mathbb{Q}g6$
3.g4 $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$.

F-13
Strategy /Chapter 14

L.Zaid – A.Yusupov
Leningrad 1977

1...e5!
(2 points)
Black plans to continue with ...e4 to force
the knight away.

2. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$
2... $\mathbb{Q}e6?$ would be wrong, due to 3.e4!
3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ e4 4. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}a6\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$
 $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}xb1$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$
10. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}b2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$
13. $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 14. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ e3 15. $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$
16. $\mathbb{Q}b2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$
0-1

F-14
Strategy /Chapter 14

London 1984

1. $\mathbb{Q}c8!$

(1 point)

The exchange of rooks wins at once.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc8$

Black resigned. 2... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ is followed by
3. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$! $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 4.a6+–
(another 1 point)

F-15
Calculating variations /Chapter 15

A.Kotov – L.Szabo
Moscow – Budapest 1949

1. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$

(1 point)

White threatens $\mathbb{Q}xg6\#$. Black had
overlooked this intermediate move. He had
only considered the capture on a3: 1.bxa3?!

$\mathbb{Q}c3\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}a4\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ (3. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa3$
4. $\mathbb{Q}c2\#$) 3... $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}a2\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}a3\#$ =

1... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 2.bxa3 $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}a4\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b1$
 $\mathbb{b}5$

4... $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ is met by 5. $\mathbb{Q}e5+–$ followed by
 $\mathbb{Q}f6$.

5. $\mathbb{Q}xb5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa3$

5... $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c2+–$; 5... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$ +–.

6. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ a5 9. $\mathbb{Q}c8$
1-0

F-16
Tactics /Chapter 16

Bekker – Schneider
East Germany 1966

1... $\mathbb{Q}xf2!–$

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$
5. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$

Solutions

2... $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1\#$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$
 $\mathbb{Q}xe4\#$
0-1

F-17 Positional play /Chapter 17

B.Spassky – R.Fischer

Santa Monica 1966

1.h5!+–

(1 point)

This passed pawn secures victory for White. One of the black pieces must keep an eye on it, and then White will be able to attack the black a-pawn.

1... $\mathbb{Q}h6$

If 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$, then 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ and the white king will later march across to a4.

2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$

3... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ is followed by 4. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ g4 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$.

4. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ g4 5.a4 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6.a5 $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ g3 8. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$
11. $\mathbb{Q}a2!$

Black resigned. After 11... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 14.a6, he would be in zugzwang.

F-18 Positional play /Chapter 17

A.Yusupov – P.Popovic

Belgrade 1989

1. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$

(2 points)

First 1.a4 would also be good.

1...c3 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c4+–$ a4 4.a3 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}c5$
1-0

F-19

Tactics /Chapter 19

E.Vasiukov – V.Smyslov

USSR Ch, Tbilisi 1966

1.f4!

(1 point)

1. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ (also 1 point) is equally good: 1... $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}b6+–$ 1...exf4 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}xb6±$ g6 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ fxg3 5. $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ f6 7. $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}c7+–$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 11. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ h5 13.gxh5 gxh5 14.e5
1-0

F-20

Endgame /Chapter 20

K.Chernyshov – A.Yusupov

European Team Ch, Ohrid 2001

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3?!$

1. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ (threatening $\mathbb{Q}a4$) would have won very simply: 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6+–$
(2 points)

White will only be able to win easily, and without allowing counterplay, if he exchanges one of the bishops. You also get 2 points if you planned to force such an exchange with 1. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ followed by 2. $\mathbb{Q}d3$, or by 1. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}a4$.
1... $\mathbb{Q}b4\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$
4... $\mathbb{Q}d5?±$

5. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 8. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}e5?!$
Better is 9. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$.
9... $\mathbb{Q}f6!$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 11.h5 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 14.h6 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 20.h7 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}h1=$

Solutions

F-21

Positional play /Chapter 21

USSR Ch. Moscow 1949

1...g5!

(2 points)

Black quickly takes command on the kingside.

2.Qg3 Qh5 3.Qd3 Wf6 4.Qhf1 Qf4+

F-22

Tactics /Chapter 22

W.von Holzhausen – S.Tarrasch

Berlin 1912

1.Qxf7†!! Qxf7 2.Qe6!!

(1 point)

2...Qde5

2...Qxe6 3.Wd5† Qf6 4.Wf5#

3.Wh5† Qg8 4.Qxd8 Qxd8 5.Qd5

1-0

F-23

Endgame /Chapter 24

S.Papa – A.Yusupov

Pfäffikon (blitz) 2009

1.Qc2?

White did not spot his opponent's idea. Otherwise he would simply have played 1.Qh4!=.

(2 points)

Another way to draw is 1.Qe1 h4 2.Qc2 h3 3.Qd4= (also 2 points).

1...h4 2.Qd2 h3 3.Qe1 Qh4!

0-1

F-24

Endgame /Chapter 24

Em.Lasker – M.Euwe

Nottingham 1936

Black's last move was 1...Qa5???. You need to watch out, even in the endgame!

2.b4! Qxb4 3.Qc2+-

(2 points)

3...Qd2 4.Qxd2 Qb2† 5.Qe2 Qd5 6.Qc1 Qc4 7.Qd3 Qb6 8.Qe3† Qe6 9.Qc4 Qc8 10.Qa5 Qd6 11.Qf4

1-0

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 42

37 points and above ➤ Excellent

30 points and above ➤ Good

21 points ➤ Pass mark

If you scored less than 21 points, we recommend that you read again those chapters dealing with the areas where you made a lot of mistakes and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Index of composers

Cheron,A. 125

Grigoriev,N. 56, 57, 57, 273

Gurvitch,A. 80

Herbstmann,A. 81

Hildebrand,A. 81

Kazantsev,A. 137

Kopaev,N. 272

Lasker,Em. 214

Pavett,W. 136

Pogosiants,E. 89

Rinck,H. 273

Stamma,P. 140

Vancura,J. 127

Index of games

Numbers in **bold** type indicate that the player named first had Black.

- Ahues,C. – N.N. 107
Ahues,H. – Steneberg 167
Alalin – Chjutt **131**
Albin,A. – Bernstein,O. 134
Alekhine,A. – Blackburne,J. 157
– Euwe,M. 88, 148, **242**
– Fine,R. 153
– Levenfish,G. 232
– Mikenas,V. 100, 101
– Rubinstein,A. 203
– Stahlberg,G. **16**
– Tartakower,S. 188
– West,A. 242
Anand,V. – Yusupov,A. **177**
Anderssen,A. – Paulsen,I.. 104
Andersson,U. – Browne,W. 186
– Timman,J. **274**
– Torre,E. 76
Andreoli,R. – Efimov,I. **173**
Armas,J. – Crisan,A. 103
Aronin,L. – Lilienthal,A. **27**
Aronson,L. – Kholmov,R. **39**
Atanasov – Popov **209**
Averbakh,Y. – Kotov,A. 244
Avrukh,B. – Dautov,R. 27
Azmaiparashvili,Z. – Yusupov,A. 73

Bach,H. – Botto,D. 90
Bagirov,V. – Kholmov,R. 34
Balashov,Y. – Lugovoi,A. 75
Bannik,A. – Dus Chotimirsky,F. 173
– Petrosian,T. **198**
Bareev,E. – Sveshnikov,E. **45**
Bashein – Morse **15**
Bastrikov,G. – Kholmov,R. 33
Bauert,R. – Yusupov,A. 255
Baum,B. – Thal,O. 107
Becker,A. – Capablanca,J. **15**
Begun – Marjakin 243
Beitar,H. – Yusupov,A. **22**
Bekker – Schneider 274
Beliavsky,A. – Torre,E. 71

Benjamin,J. – Yusupov,A. 118
Benko,P. – Fischer,R. **136**
Berkes,F. – Braun,A. 272
Bernstein,O. – Albin,A. **134**
Bischoff,K. – Yusupov,A. **199**
Bisguier,A. – Fischer,R. 174
– Larsen,B. 169
Biyiasas,P. – Hug,W. 30
Blackburne,J. – Alekhine,A. **157**
– N.N. 135
Blau,M. – Donner,J. 80
Block – Felderhof 163
Blumenfeld,B. – Zhivzov 159
Bogoljubow,E. – Capablanca,J. 203
– Monticelli,M. 141
– Rubinstein,A. **89**
Bojkovic,S. – Janata,M. **18**
Boleslavsky,I. – Botvinnik,M. 23, **233**
Bologan,V. – Zvjaginsev,V. **113**
Bondarevsky,I. – Lilenthal,A. **221**
Borisenko,G. – Kholmov,R. **40**
Borissenkova – Zhuravlev **102**
Botto,D. – Bach,H. **90**
Botvinnik,M. – Boleslavsky,I. 23, **233**
– Bronstein,D. **99**
– Flohr,S. **142**
– Furman,S. 153
– Keres,P. **21**
– Smyslov,V. 187, **272**
– Tal,M. **163**
– Yudovich,M. **66**
Brandics,J. – Perenyi,B. **108**
Braun,A. – Berkes,F. **272**
– Ovsejevitsch,S. **27**
Bromberger,S. – Löffler,S. 16
Bronstein,D. – Botvinnik,M. 99
– Cortlever,N. 28
– Goldberg,G. **276**
– Medina Garcia,A. 209
– Simagin,V. **107**
– Terpugov,E. **99**
– Vajda,A. 204
Browne,W. – Andersson,U. **186**
– Seirawan,Y. 220
Brumen,D. – Sveshnikov,E. **52**

Buchman – Kasperovich **108**
Buksza – Kovacs **274**
Burger,K. – Huendorfer **80**

Capablanca,J. – Becker,A. **15**
– Bogoljubow,E. **203**
– Colle,E. **15**
– Fox,A. **72**
– Menchik,V. **62**
– Steiner,H. **11**
– Treybal,K. **19**
– Zubarev,N. **10**

Carlson,M. – Eberlein,R. **173**
Carty,P. – Wegener,W. **259**
Chekhov,V. – Yusupov,A. **28**
Chekhover,V. – Yudovich,M. **88**
Chernyshov,K. – Yusupov,A. **275**
Chigorin,M. – Lasker,Em. **154**
– Pillsbury,H. **73, 100**
– Steinitz,W. **226**

Chjutt – Alalin **131**
Christiansen,L. – Yusupov,A. **119**
Chukaev,E. – Kholmov,R. **40**
Cifuentes,R. – Zvjaginsev,V. **243**
Cmilyte,V. – Yusupov,A. **180**
Colle,E. – Capablanca,J. **15**
Computer Deep Blue – Kasparov,G. **20**
Cortlever,N. – Bronstein,D. **28**
Cramling,P. – Yusupov,A. **117**
Crisan,A. – Armas,J. **103**
Croes – Mednis,E. **163**
Cvitan,O. – Ftacnik,L. **242**

Darga,K. – Ivkov,B. **80**
Dautov,R. – Avrukh,B. **27**
De la Fuente,F. – Kasparov,G. **193**
De Rooi,P. – Kramer,H. **140**
Dizdar,G. – Yusupov,A. **255**
Djurasevic,B. – Vasiukov,E. **168**
Dolmatov,S. – Sveshnikov,E. **53**
Donner,J. – Blau,M. **80**
Dorfman,J. – Klinger,J. **254**
– Romanishin,O. **140**
– San Segundo,P. **108**

Doroshkевич,V. – Sveshnikov,E. **52**

Döttling,F. – Yusupov,A. **83**
Dreev,A. – Sveshnikov,E. **50**
Dubinin,P. – Levenfish,G. **99**
Dus Chotimirsky,F. – Bannik,A. **173**

Eberlein,R. – Carlson,M. **173**
Ebersbach – Springer **136**
Efimov – Kim **140**
Efimov,I. – Andreoli,R. **173**
– Georgadze,G. **81**

Eingorn,V. – Sveshnikov,E. **50**
Engels – Stein **80**
Englisch,B. – Steinitz,W. **73, 152**
Epishin,V. – Vallejo Pons,F. **164**
Epstein,E. – Veroci Petronic,Z. **140**
Erler,R. – Kling,K. **210**
Euwe,M. – Alekhine,A. **88, 148, 242**
– Flohr,S. **89**
– Gligoric,S. **215**
– Lasker,Em. **276**
– Reshevsky,S. **188**
– Tartakower,S. **273**

Fazekas,S. – Spielmann,R. **163**
Felderhof – Block **163**
Filip,M. – Stein,L. **168**
Fine,R. – Alekhine,A. **153**
Fischer,R. – Benko,P. **136**
– Bisguier,A. **174**
– Kholmov,R. **35**
– Letelier Martner,R. **64**
– Portisch,L. **104**
– Spassky,B. **72, 75, 275**
– Taimanov,M **153**

Flohr,S. – Botvinnik,M. **142**
– Euwe,M. **89**
– Kottnauer,C. **72**

Fominyh,A. – Sveshnikov,E. **51**
Fox,A. – Capablanca,J. **72**
Franco,Z. – Mager Badals,J. **76**
Ftacnik,L. – Cvitan,O. **242**
– Yusupov,A. **118**

Fuchs,R. – Hennings,A. **167**
Furman,S. – Botvinnik,M. **153**
– Vasiukov,E. **88**

Gelfand,B. – Ivanchuk,V. **80**
– Yusupov,A. **156**
Geller,E. – Kholmov,R. **221, 222**
– Pilnik,H. 88
– Smyslov,V. 234
– Spassky,B. **169**
– Timman,J. **200**
– Tolush,A. **166**
Georgadze,G. – Efimov,I. **81**
Gerchikov – Poliansky **140**
Gligoric,S. – Euwe,M. 215
– Kotov,A. **233**
– Lombardy,W. 186
– Smyslov,V. 66
– Szabo,L. 227
Goldberg,G. – Bronstein,D. 276
Goldstein – Tomilin 140
Golubev – Kotov,A. 164
Granda Zuniga,J. – Yusupov,A. 118, 119
Grekov,N. – Ilyin Zhenevsky,A. 163
Grigoriev,N. – Nenarokov,V. **102**
Grosar,A. – Sveshnikov,E. **50**
Guimard,C. – Pfeiffer,G. **188**
Gulko,B. – Uhlmann,W. **61**
– Yusupov,A. 117
Gurgenidze,B. – Nezhmetdinov,R. 90

Hamann,S. – Ostermeyer,P. **205**
Harikrishna,P. – Hasangatin,R. **164**
Harrwitz,D. – Williams,E. **164**
Hasangatin,R. – Harikrishna,P. 164
Hebden,M. – Pira,D. **197**
– Williams,L. 197
Heimann,A. – Yusupov,A. 260
Heisenbuettel – Meemsoth **209**
Hennings,A. – Fuchs,R. **167**
– Savon,V. 209
Heywood – Zollner **274**
Hmadi,S. – Yusupov,A. **200**
Hohler,P. – Tcherniak,G. 173
Honfi,K. – Kholmov,R. 38
Hüibner,R. – Miles,A. **155**
– Penrose,J. 209
– Timman,J. 88
Huendorfer – Burger,K. **80**

Hug,W. – Biyiasas,P. **30**
Huzman,A. – Kasparov,G. 164

Illescas,M. – Yusupov,A. 50
Ilyin Zhenevsky,A. – Grekov,N. **163**
– Kliatskin,M. 157
Ionov,S. – Yusupov,A. 117
Iskusnyh,S. – Sveshnikov,E. **51**
Ivanchuk,V. – Gelfand,B. 80
– Romanishin,O. **53**
Ivkov,B. – Darga,K. **80**
– Petrosian,T. **174, 273**
– Portisch,L. 204

Janata,M. – Bojkovic,S. 18
Jimenez Zerquera,E. – Kholmov,R. 38
Johansen,D. – Kudrin,S. **89**
Johner,P. – Nimzowitsch,A. 234

Kagan – Post **232**
Kamsky,G. – Yusupov,A. 61
Kapanadse – Zhuravlev **108**
Karpov,A. – Kasparov,G. **246**
– Vaganian,R. **255, 256**
– Yusupov,A. 110, 112
Kasimdzhanov,R. – Kramnik,V. 82
Kasparian,G. – Manvelian 242
– Suetin,A. **16**
Kasparov,G. – Computer Deep Blue **20**
– De la Fuente,F. 193
– Huzman,A. **164**
– Karpov,A. 246
– Martinovic,S. 197
– Roizman,A. 103
– Sosonko,G. 254
– Topalov,V. 237
Kasperovich – Buchman 108
Keitlinghaus,L. – Pfleger,H. **80**
Keres,P. – Botvinnik,M. 21
– Petrosian,T. **220**
– Tolush,A. **166**
Khalifman,A. – Yusupov,A. **92**
Khasin,A. – Kholmov,R. **32**
Khavin,A. – Kholmov,R. 68
Kholmov,R. – Aronson,L. 39

- Bagirov,V. **34**
- Bastrikov,G. **33**
- Borisenko,G. **40**
- Chukaev,E. **40**
- Fischer,R. **35**
- Geller,E. **221**, **222**
- Honfi,K. **38**
- Jimenez Zerquera,E. **38**
- Khasin,A. **32**
- Khavin,A. **68**
- Kots,Y. **39**
- Livshin,I. **101**
- Lutikov,A. **38**
- Matulovic,M. **38**
- Milic,B. **39**
- Petrosian,T. **39**
- Uhlmann,W. **40**
- Vasiukov,E. **16**
- Vistanetskis,I. **40**
- Kim – Efimov 140**
- Klavins,J. – Ragozin,V. **152**
- Kliatskin,M. – Ilyin Zhenevsky,A. **157**
- Kliavish,J. – Zhuravliov,V. **209**
- Kling,K. – Erler,R. **210**
- Klinger,J. – Dorfman,J. **254**
- Klovans,J. – Tolush,A. **108**
- Kochiev,A. – Smyslov,V. **131**
- Kofman – Zhukhovitsky,S. **15**
- Kolevit – Shashin,A. **210**
- Konstantinopolsky,A. – Kotov,A. **232**
- Konstantinov – Yusupov,A. **191**
- Kontic,D. – Vukic,M. **137**
- Korchnoi,V. – Lilienthal,A. **71**
 - Spassky,B. **71**
- Kotov,A. – Averbakh,Y. **244**
 - Gligoric,S. **233**
 - Golubev **164**
 - Konstantinopolsky,A. **232**
 - Petrosian,T. **74**
 - Rudakov **243**
 - Smyslov,V. **163**
 - Szabo,L. **274**
- Kots,Y. – Kholmov,R. **39**
- Kottnauer,C. – Flohr,S. **72**
- Kovacs – Buksza **274**
- Kozma,J. – Petrosian,T. **199**
- Kramer,H. – De Rooi,P. **140**
- Kramnik,V. – Kasimdzhanov,R. **82**
 - Lutz,C. **120**
 - Morozevich,A. **220**
 - Naiditsch,A. **259**
- Kudrin,S. – Johansen,D. **89**
- Lalic,B. – Yusupov,A. **95**
- L’Ami,E. – Yusupov,A. **260**
- Larsen,B. – Bisguier,A. **169**
 - Suetin,A. **29**
 - Westerinen,H. **205**
- Lasker,Ed. – Thomas,G. **236**
- Lasker,Em. – Chigorin,M. **154**
 - Euwe,M. **276**
 - Tarrasch,S. **100**
- Lee,F. – Nimzowitsch,A. **72**
- Letelier Martner,R. – Fischer,R. **64**
- Levenfish,G. – Alekhine,A. **232**
 - Dubinin,P. **99**
- Liebert,H. – Uhlmann,W. **174**
- Lilienthal,A. – Aronin,L. **27**
 - Bondarevsky,I. **221**
 - Korchnoi,V. **71**
- Lisitsin,G. – Spielmann,R. **135**
 - Zagoriansky,E. **202**
- Liublinsky,V. – Petrosian,T. **198**
- Livshin,I. – Kholmov,R. **101**
- Lobron,E. – Timman,J. **249**
 - Yusupov,A. **117**
- Löffler,S. – Bromberger,S. **16**
- Loginov,V. – Sherbakov,R. **256**, **257**
- Lombardy,W. – Gligoric,S. **186**
- Lugovoi,A. – Balashov,Y. **75**
- Lutikov,A. – Kholmov,R. **38**
 - Silva,F. **84**
- Lutz,C. – Kramnik,V. **120**
 - Yusupov,A. **118**
- Mackenzie,G. – Mason,J. **242**
- Magem Badals,J. – Franco,Z. **76**
- Mainka,R. – Yusupov,A. **273**
- Makienko – Makogonov,V. **29**
- Makogonov,V. – Makienko **29**

- Manwelian – Kasparian,G. **242**
 Marco,G. – Schlechter,C. **153**
 Marjakin – Begun **243**
 Markwell – Tomas **15**
 Marshall,E. – Swiderski,R. **77**
 Martinovic,S. – Kasparov,G. **197**
 Mason – N.N. **202**
 Mason,J. – Mackenzie,G. **242**
 Matulovic,M. – Kholmov,R. **38**
 – Sahovic,D. **164**
 – Tringov,G. **210**
 Medina Garcia,A. – Bronstein,D. **209**
 Mednis,E. – Croes **163**
 Meemsoth – Heisenbuettel **209**
 Menchik,V. – Capablanca,J. **62**
 Mikenas,V. – Alekhine,A. **100, 101**
 Mikhalkishin,A. – Zheliandinov,V. **174**
 Miles,A. – Hübner,R. **155**
 – Pritchett,C. **107**
 – Tseshkovsky,V. **103**
 Milic,B. – Kholmov,R. **39**
 Monticelli,M. – Bogoljubow,E. **141**
 Morozevich,A. – Kramnik,V. **220**
 Morphy,P. – Paulsen,L. **224**
 Morse – Bashein **15**
 Mortensen,H. – Poulsen,K. **77**
 Mumelter – N.N. **16**
 Munoz,H. – Salazar,H. **107**

 Naiditsch,A. – Kramnik,V. **259**
 Nenarokov,V. – Grigoriev,N. **102**
 Nezhmetdinov,R. – Gurgenidze,B. **90**
 – Polugaevsky,L. **244**
 – Romanov **174**
 Nimzowitsch,A. – Johner,I. **234**
 – Lee,F. **72**
 – Vajda,A. **28**

 Olafsson,F. – Rodriguez Vargas,O. **140**
 Ortega,L. – Sveshnikov,E. **51**
 Osnos,V. – Spassky,B. **199**
 Ostermeyer,P. – Hamann,S. **205**
 Ovsejivitsch,S. – Braun,A. **27**

 Pachman,L. – Petrosian,T. **242**
 Panchenko,A. – Sergeev **107**
 – Yusupov,A. **256**
 Papa,S. – Yusupov,A. **276**
 Parence – Tilson **173**
 Paromov – Zavernyaev **174**
 Patek – Shadurskis **204**
 Paulsen,L. – Anderssen,A. **104**
 – Morphy,I. **224**
 Penrose,J. – Hübner,R. **209**
 Perenyi,B. – Brandics,J. **108**
 Petrosian,T. – Bannik,A. **198**
 – Ivkov,B. **174, 273**
 – Keres,P. **220**
 – Kholmov,R. **39**
 – Kotov,A. **74**
 – Kozma,J. **199**
 – Liublinsky,V. **198**
 – Pachman,L. **242**
 – Unzicker,W. **29**
 Petrov,V. – Rellstab,L. **15**
 Pfeiffer,G. – Guimard,C. **188**
 Pfleger,H. – Keitlinghaus,L. **80**
 Pillsbury,H. – Chigorin,M. **73, 100**
 Pilnik,H. – Geller,E. **88**
 – Stoltz,G. **140**
 Pinkus,A. – Ragozin,V. **89**
 Pira,D. – Hebden,M. **197**
 Platonov,I. – Tal,M. **108**
 Poliansky – Gerchikov **140**
 Polugaevsky,L. – Nezhmetdinov,R. **244**
 Popov – Atanasov **209**
 Popovic,P. – Yusupov,A. **275**
 Portisch,L. – Fischer,R. **104**
 – Ivkov,B. **204**
 – Tal,M. **273**
 Post – Kagan **232**
 Poulsen,K. – Mortensen,H. **77**
 Pritchett,C. – Miles,A. **107**
 Prokhorovich – Ravinsky,G. **209**
 Psakhis,L. – Speelman,J. **222**
 – Sveshnikov,E. **42**
 Pytlakowski,A. – Szucsza,J. **141**

 Rabinovich,I. – Romanovsky,P. **206**
 Radchenko – Trubnikov **16**

- Ragozin,V. – Klavins,J. **152**
– Pinkus,A. 89
- Ravinsky,G. – Prokhorovich **209**
– Romanovsky,P. **232**
- Reichelt,M. – Schlappa,R. **135**
- Rellstab,L. – Petrovs,V. 15
- Renet,O. – Yusupov,A. **145**
- Reshevsky,S. – Euwe,M. **188**
- Reti,R. – Yates,F. 71
- Richter – Schmidt,P. **243**
- Rodriguez Vargas,O. – Olafsson,F. 140
- Rohde,M. – Smyslov,V. **223**
- Roizman,A. – Kasparov,G. **103**
- Romanishin,O. – Dorfman,J. **140**
– Ivanchuk,V. 53
- Romanov – Nezhmerdinov,R. **174**
- Romanovsky,I. – Rabinovich,I. 206
– Ravinsky,G. 232
- Rootare,S. – Rudenko,L. **159**
- Rosenthal,S. – Steinitz,W. 72, 146
- Rossolimo,N. – Wood,G. 28
- Rotariu,G. – Vlad 272
- Rubinstein,A. – Alekhine,A. **203**
– Bogoljubow,E. 89
– Tarrasch,S. **148**, **152**
– Zubarev,N. **99**
- Rudakov – Kotov,A. 243
- Rudakovsky,I. – Smyslov,V. **99**
- Rudenko,L. – Rootare,S. 159
- Sahlmann,W. – Schmid,L. **76**
- Sahovic,D. – Matulovic,M. 164
- Salazar,H. – Munoz,H. **107**
- Salov,V. – Yusupov,A. **158**
- Sambuev,B. – Sorokin,M. **255**
- San Segundo,P. – Dorfman,J. 108
- Savon,V. – Hennings,A. **209**
– Spassky,B. 181
- Sax,G. – Tseshkovsky,V. 62
– Van der Wiel,J. 173
- Schlappa,R. – Reichelt,M. 135
- Schlechter,C. – Marco,G. **153**
- Schmid,L. – Sahlmann,W. 76
- Schmidt,P. – Richter 243
- Schneider – Bekker **274**
- Seirawan,Y. – Browne,W. **220**
- Sergeev – Panchenko,A. 107
- Shadurskis – Patek 204
- Shashin,A. – Kolevit 210
- Sherbakov,R. – Loginov,V. 256, 257
- Shytaj,C. – Yusupov,A. **84**
- Sideif-Sade,F. – Sturua,Z. 206
- Siegel,G. – Yusupov,A. **80**
- Silva,F. – Lutikov,A. **84**
- Simagin,V. – Bronstein,D. 107
- Slipak,S. – Sorokin,M. **256**
- Smyslov,V. – Botvinnik,M. **187**, 272
– Geller,E. **234**
– Gligoric,S. **66**
– Kochiev,A. **131**
– Kotov,A. **163**
– Rohde,M. 223
– Rudakovsky,I. 99
– Szabo,L. 205
– Tal,M. 187
– Vasiukov,E. **275**
- Sokolsky,A. – Tolush,A. **234**
- Sorokin,M. – Sambuev,B. 255
– Slipak,S. 256
- Sosonko,G. – Kasparov,G. **254**
- Spassky,B. – Fischer,R. 72, 75, 275
– Geller,E. 169
– Korchnoi,V. 71
– Osnos,V. 199
– Savon,V. **181**
– Timman,J. **254**
– Zaitsev,I. **186**
- Speelman,J. – Psakhis,L. **222**
- Spielmann,R. – Fazekas,S. **163**
– Lisitsin,G. 135
- Springer – Ebersbach 136
- Stahlberg,G. – Alekhine,A. 16
- Stein – Engels **80**
- Stein,L. – Filip,M. 168
- Steiner,H. – Capablanca,J. 11
- Steinitz,W. – Chigorin,M. **226**
– Englisch,B. **73**, **152**
– Rosenthal,S. **72**, **146**
– Von Bardeleben,C. 8
- Steneberg – Ahues,H. **167**

- Stoltz,G. – Pilnik,H. 140
 Sturua,Z. – Sideif-Sade,E. **206**
 Suetin,A. – Kasparian,G. 16
 – Larsen,B. **29**
 Sveshnikov,E. – Bareev,E. 45
 – Brumen,D. 52
 – Dolmatov,S. 53
 – Doroshkевич,V. 52
 – Dreev,A. 50
 – Eingorn,V. 50
 – Fominyh,A. 51
 – Grosar,A. 50
 – Iskusnyh,S. 51
 – Ortega,L. 51
 – Psakhis,L. 42
 – Timman,J. 44
 – Zinn,L. **210**
 Swiderski,R. – Marshall,F. 77
 Szabo,L. – Gligoric,S. **227**
 – Kotov,A. **274**
 – Smyslov,V. **205**
 Szukszta,J. – Pytlakowski,A. **141**

 Taimanov,M. – Fischer,R. **153**
 – Vasiukov,E. **12**
 Tál,M. – Botvinnik,M. 163
 – Platonov,I. 108
 – Portisch,L. **273**
 – Smyslov,V. **187**
 – Thorbergsson,F. **29**
 – Yusupov,A. **220**
 Tarrasch,S. – Lasker,Em. 100
 – Rubinstein,A. 148, 152
 – Von Holzhausen,W. **276**
 Tartakower,S. – Alekhine,A. **188**
 – Euwe,M. **273**
 Tcherniak,G. – Hohler,P. **173**
 Terpugov,E. – Bronstein,D. 99
 Thal,O. – Baum,B. **107**
 Thomas,G. – Lasker,Ed. **236**
 Thorbergsson,F. – Tal,M. 29
 Tilson – Parence **173**
 Timman,J. – Andersson,U. 274
 – Geller,E. 200
 – Hübner,R. **88**
 – Lobron,E. **249**
 – Spassky,B. 254
 – Sveshnikov,E. **44**
 Tolush,A. – Geller,E. 166
 – Keres,P. 166
 – Klovans,J. **108**
 – Sokolsky,A. 234
 Tomas – Markwell 15
 Tomilin – Goldstein **140**
 Topalov,V. – Kasparov,G. **237**
 Torre,E. – Andersson,U. **76**
 – Beliavsky,A. **71**
 Treybal,K. – Capablanca,J. **19**
 Tringov,G. – Matulovic,M. **210**
 Trubnikov – Radchenko 16
 Tseshkovsky,V. – Miles,A. 103
 – Sax,G. **62**
 Tulin – Zilberstein,V. **209**

 Uhlmann,W. – Gulko,B. 61
 – Kholmov,R. 40
 – Liebert,H. 174
 Unzicker,W. – Perrosian,T. **29**

 Vaganian,R. – Karpov,A. 255, 256
 Vajda,A. – Bronstein,D. **204**
 – Nimzowitsch,A. 28
 Vallejo Pons,F. – Epishin,V. 164
 Van der Wiel,J. – Sax,G. **173**
 Vasiukov,E. – Djurasevic,B. 168
 – Furman,S. **88**
 – Kholmov,R. 16
 – Smyslov,V. 275
 – Taimanov,M. 12
 Veroci Petronic,Z. – Epstein,E. **140**
 Vistanetskis,I. – Kholmov,R. 40
 Vlad – Rotariu,G. **272**
 Von Bardeleben,C. – Steinitz,W. **8**
 Von Holzhausen,W. – Tarrasch,S. 276
 Vukic,M. – Kontic,D. **137**

 Wegener,W. – Carty,P. **259**
 West,A. – Alekhine,A. **242**
 Westerinen,H. – Larsen,B. 205
 Williams,E. – Harrwitz,D. 164

- Williams,L. – Hebden,M. 197
Wood,G. – Rossolimo,N. 28
- Yates,F. – Reti,R. 71
Yudovich,M. – Botvinnik,M. 66
– Chekhover,V. 88
- Yusupov,A. – Anand,V. 177
– Azmaiparashvili,Z. 73
– Bauert,R. 255
– Beitar,H. 22
– Benjamin,J. 118
– Bischoff,K. 199
– Chekhov,V. 28
– Chernyshov,K. 275
– Christiansen,L. 119
– Cmilyte,V. 180
– Cramling,P. 117
– Dizdar,G. 255
– Döttling,F. 83
– Ftacnik,L. 118
– Gelfand,B. 156
– Granda Zuniga,J. 118, 119
– Gulko,B. 117
– Heimann,A. 260
– Hmadi,S. 200
– Illescas,M. 50
– Ionov,S. 117
– Kamsky,G. 61
– Karpov,A. 110, 112
– Khalifman,A. 92
– Konstantinov 191
– Lalic,B. 95
– L'Ami,E. 260
– Lobron,E. 117
– Lutz,C. 118
– Mainka,R. 273
– Panchenko,A. 256
– Papa,S. 276
– Popovic,P. 275
– Renet,O. 145
– Salov,V. 158
– Shyraj,C. 84
– Siegel,G. 80
– Tal,M. 220
– Zaid,L. 274
- Zagoriansky,E. – Lisitsin,G. 202
Zaid,L. – Yusupov,A. 274
Zaitsev,I. – Spassky,B. 186
Zavernyaev – Paromov 174
Zheliantdinov,V. – Mikhalkishin,A. 174
Zhivzov – Blumenfeld,B. 159
Zhukhovitsky,S. – Kofman 15
Zhuravlev – Borissenkov 102
– Kapanadse 108
Zhuravliov,V. – Kliavinsh,J. 209
Zilberstein,V. – Tulin 209
Zinn,L. – Sveshnikov,E. 210
Zollner – Heywood 274
Zubarev,N. – Capablanca,J. 10
– Rubinstein,A. 99
Zvjaginsev,V. – Bologan,V. 113
– Cifuentes,R. 243